VISIT…

LANZAROTE Caliente.COM

250 ESSENTIAL CHINESE CHARACTERS

FOR EVERYDAY USE

by Philip Yungkin Lee

Vol 1

通用汉字

Tuttle Language Library

Language

250 Essential Chinese Characters for Everyday Use: Volume I introduces the basic vocabulary and writing skills needed when learning Chinese. The second volume (ISBN 0-8048-3360-5) covers a further 250 essential characters. There are also two sets of flashcards, *Chinese in a Flash: Volume I* (ISBN 0-8048-3361-3) and *Chinese in a Flash: Volume 2* (ISBN 0-8048-3362-1), which aid memorization and allow self-testing of character recognition.

This book not only provides ample space for writing practice, but also gives the meaning of each character, its derivation, and its components—including the radical—and provides a range of compounds and sample sentences specifically designed to increase the user's active vocabulary.

In addition to the reference and practice material, there are 25 quizzes based on each set of 10 characters learned, and 5 more substantial review sections based on every 50 characters learned. An answer key to all of this material, including the five challenging Word Puzzles, is given at the back of the book. There are also alphabetical and radical indexes for quick reference to all the characters and compounds covered.

Philip Lee is an applied linguist with 30 years of practical experience in teaching Mandarin Chinese to foreign learners. He is currently a Senior Lecturer in the School of Modern Language Studies of the University of New South Wales, in Sydney, Australia.

TUTTLE PUBLISHING
Tokyo • Rutland, Vermont • Singapore

www.tuttlepublishing.com
Printed in Singapore

Distributed by Tuttle Publishing
ISBN-13: 978-0-8048-3359-2
ISBN-10: 0-8048-3359-1
US $24.95
52495
9 780804 833592

Published by Tuttle Publishing, an imprint of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.,
with editorial offices at 364 Innovation Drive, North Clarendon, VT 05759
and 130 Joo Seng Road #06-01, Singapore 368357

Copyright © 2003 by Philip Yungkin Lee

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher.

LCC Card No. 2004297990
ISBN-10: 0-8048-3359-1
ISBN-13: 978-0-8048-3359-2

Distributed by:

North America, Latin America & Europe
Tuttle Publishing
364 Innovation Drive
North Clarendon, VT 05759-9436
Tel: (802) 773 8930; Fax: (802) 773 6993
Email: info@tuttlepublishing.com
Website: www.tuttlepublishing.com

Japan
Tuttle Publishing
Yaekari Bldg., 3F, 5-4-12 Osaki, Shinagawa-ku
Tokyo 141-0032
Tel: (03) 5437 0171; Fax: (03) 5437 0755
Email: tuttle-sales@gol.com

Asia Pacific
Berkeley Books Pte. Ltd.
130 Joo Seng Road, #06-01, Singapore 368357
Tel: (65) 6280 1330; Fax: (65) 6280 6290
Email: inquiries@periplus.com.sg
Website: www.periplus.com

Indonesia
PT Java Books Indonesia
Kawasan Industri Pulogadung
Jl. Rawa Gelam IV No. 9,
Jakarta 14240, Indonesia
Tel: (62-21) 4682 1088; Fax: (62-21) 461 0207
Email: cs@javabooks.co.id

10 09 08 07 06
10 9 8 7 6 5

Printed in Singapore

TUTTLE PUBLISHING® is a registered trademark of Tuttle Publishing,
a division of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

Contents

Introduction *v*
Students' Guide *vii*

Characters 1–10 1–10
Quiz 1 11
Characters 11–20 12–21
Quiz 2 22
Characters 21–30 23–32
Quiz 3 33
Characters 31–40 34–43
Quiz 4 44
Characters 41–50 45–54
Quiz 5 55
Character Building 1 56
Review 1 **58**
Word/Sentence Puzzle 1 59
Characters 51–60 60–69
Quiz 6 70
Characters 61–70 71–80
Quiz 7 81
Characters 71–80 82–91
Quiz 8 92
Characters 81–90 93–102
Quiz 9 103
Characters 91–100 104–13
Quiz 10 114
Character Building 2 115
Review 2 **117**
Word/Sentence Puzzle 2 118
Characters 101–110 120–29
Quiz 11 130
Characters 111–120 131–40
Quiz 12 141
Characters 121–130 142–51
Quiz 13 152
Characters 131–140 153–62
Quiz 14 163
Characters 141–150 164–73
Quiz 15 174
Character Building 3 175
Review 3 **177**
Word/Sentence Puzzle 3 178
Characters 151–160 180–89
Quiz 16 190
Characters 161–170 191–200
Quiz 17 201
Characters 171–180 202–11
Quiz 18 212
Characters 181–190 213–22
Quiz 19 223
Characters 191–200 224–33
Quiz 20 234
Character Building 4 235
Review 4 **237**

Word/Sentence Puzzle 4 238
Characters 201–210 240–49
Quiz 21 250
Characters 211–220 251–60
Quiz 22 261
Characters 221–230 262–71
Quiz 23 272
Characters 231–240 273–82
Quiz 24 283
Characters 241–250 284–93
Quiz 25 294
Character Building 5 295
Review 5 **297**
Word/Sentence Puzzle 5 298

Alphabetical Index 300
Radical Index 316
Key 320

Introduction

One of the questions most frequently asked by beginning learners of Chinese is how many characters are needed to gain a basic knowledge of the written language. There is no simple answer to this question. Excluding specific characters which are often found in shop signs, street names, restaurant menus etc., the number of characters a beginning learner needs to know ranges from 250 to 500. The lower figure is needed for the construction of simple sentences and the higher figure to construct more complex sentences and utilize them to express oneself meaningfully in everyday contexts.

The first volume of *250 Essential Chinese Characters for Everyday Use* introduces the basic skills involved in writing Chinese characters. Each unit presents ten new characters which are shown in simplified form (*jiantizi*) along with Pinyin romanization and their English meaning. Just over a third of the selection also have traditional forms (*fantizi*) which are listed side by side after the respective simplified forms. Short notes relating to the origin of the character, how the simplified form is constructed, and in some cases a guide to pronunciation all aim to de-mystify each character and make the task of learning them less arduous.

As well as the basic meaning of each character, several examples are given of its use in combination with other characters to form compounds, and each of these compounds is contextualized in an example sentence to illustrate its use. In these example sentences the characters are lined up with their Pinyin romanization to allow you to identify the words and pronounce them if you wish. Please note that the English translation is given as a general guide to meaning only.

The book is arranged in 25 units of 10 characters, each of which is followed by a quiz in both characters and Pinyin romanization so that you can monitor you own progress.

At the end of each group of 5 units or 50 characters, there is a Character Building section in which characters are grouped together based on their meaningful parts known as the radicals, showing how character components are recycled to form other characters; a Review of characters and compounds arranged according to parts of speech to help you build up your skills in sentence formation; and a Word/Sentence Puzzle utilizing all the characters so far introduced which challenges you to pick out characters in meaningful combinations. Don't hesitate to use the Key whose purpose is to guide you in your efforts to solve the puzzle.

If you need a quick reference on the whereabouts in this book of a particular character and its example compounds and sentences, consult either the Alphabetical Index or the Radical Index, which is based on the number of strokes of the radicals.

Your job as a self-paced learner is to focus intently on the character at hand as you write it. Each character should be written stroke by stroke, following the correct stroke order. Note the stroke order and the number of strokes as you practice writing each character in the boxes provided. There is a short note to remind what you should bear in mind as you write each character.

Unlike the letters of the roman alphabet, Chinese characters are all squarish in shape, with their components conforming to a rule of symmetry and balance. They should not be written too rectangular or even roundish because that will destroy their visual integrity. In other words, you cannot practice writing the characters in just any shapes and sizes that you like, as you will need the visual images of your own handwriting to assist in recalling them. For this reason, this book provides you with a clear model for each character and a proper grid of squares in which to copy it over and over again until the habit is formed.

After you have practiced writing each character in its square grid, you will have learned to reproduce it yourself, corresponding very closely to the model character provided. To do this, you cannot rush each character since you must refer to the model character each time and follow the correct stroke order as you write it. When you do that, you will find that you get twice the result with half the effort.

Students' Guide

Chinese Characters

One of the great fascinations of learning Chinese lies in the Chinese writing system. Each character looks like a square-shaped box written in various strokes. Learners who are used to the alphabetical writing system find characters difficult to recognize, time consuming to write and near impossible to remember. In this book we teach 250 characters with a view to demonstrate how the large number of components you are learning both as visual and phonetical elements can be recycled and used in different combinations to form new characters. Through remembering the pronunication or meaning of these components, you will gain a basic knowledge on the compositions of Chinese characters — the radicals, the phonetic components and their configurations. This will establish a relationship between form, pronunciation and meaning in characters and will enable you to transfer what you already know when you learn new characters.

Structurally there are two types of characters: those that exist as an integral unit, and those that can be divided into radical and phonetic components. Integral characters are often radicals themselves. Thus some basic knowledge of a radical is desirable not just for learning a certain character but for using the radical index when looking up a character in a Chinese dictionary.

It is often said that radicals are categories of thought which the ancient Chinese used to describe the world around them. A combination of a radical and a sound element gives specific meaning under a certain category of meaning. As you come across radicals in this book you will learn to classify characters under these categories or radicals. *The Chinese-English Dictionary* (published in 1995 by the Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press in Beijing) uses 189 radicals to organize the characters contained in the dictionary. That dictionary is probably the most widely used Chinese-English Dictionary in the world and is deemed likely to be the dictionary most often consulted by users of this book. You will learn 90 radicals in this book. Of these about 50 are the most common radicals. We believe that the knowledge you gained from these radicals will enable you to guess the meaning of many common Chinese characters.

The Basic Strokes

Chinese characters are written in various strokes. Although we can identify over 30 different strokes, only 8 are basic ones and all the others are their variants. Certain arrangements of strokes form components or the building blocks for characters.

The strokes that make up a component of a character and by extension the whole character are given names. Below are the 8 basic strokes:

[一] The *héng* or 'horizontal' stroke is written from left to right.

[丨] The *shù* or 'vertical' stroke is written from top to bottom.

[丿] The *piě* or 'downward-left' stroke is written from top-right to bottom-left.

[㇏] The *nà* or 'downward-right' stroke is written from top-left to bottom-right.

[丶] The *diǎn* or 'dot' stroke is written from top to bottom-right, finishing firmly. It can also be finished to bottom-left, depending on how the dot is written.

[㇕] The *zhé* or 'turning' stroke can begin with a horizontal stroke with a downward turn, or it can be a vertical stroke with a horizontal turn to the right.

[亅] The *gōu* or 'hook' stroke is written by a quick flick of the pen or Chinese brush. There are five types of *gōu* 'hook' strokes. They are:

[㇖] the *hénggōu* or 'horizontal hook',

[亅] the *shùgōu* or 'vertical hook',

[㇄] the *wān'gōu* or 'bending hook',

[㇂] the *xiégōu* or 'slanting hook',

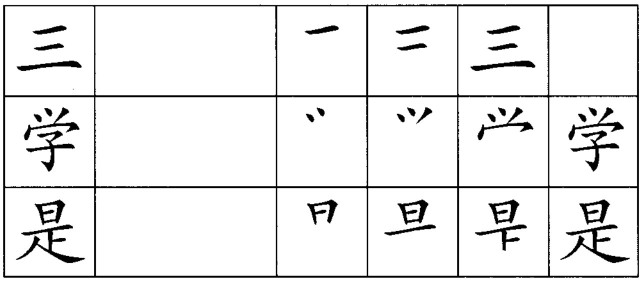
[㇃] the *pínggōu* or 'level hook',

[㇀] The *tí* or 'upward stroke to the right' is written from bottom-left to top-right.

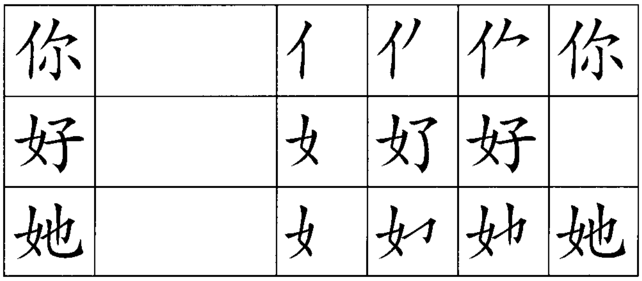
Stroke Order

It is important to remember that the components in a character are written according to some fixed rules or stroke order. The same stroke order should be used every time you write a character. If you write a character according to the prescribed order, you will find it easier to remember as repetition will develop muscular cues in your fingers which will assist in the recall of the character, much like remembering a figure in dancing. Thus, when writing a character, the following rules should be observed:

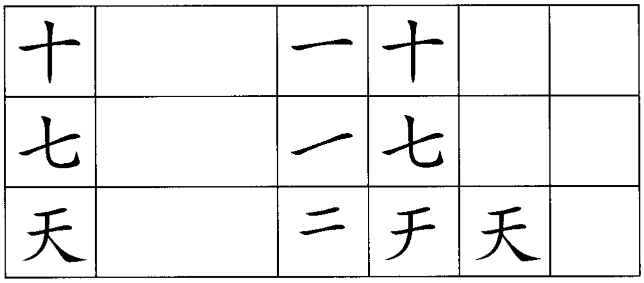
1. From top to bottom:



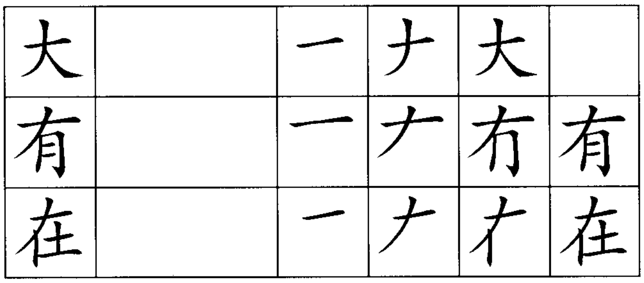
2. From left to right:



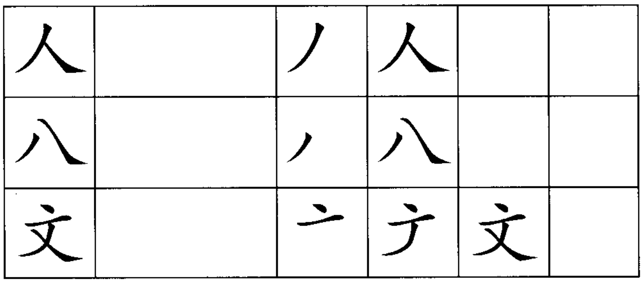
3. The horizontal before the vertical:



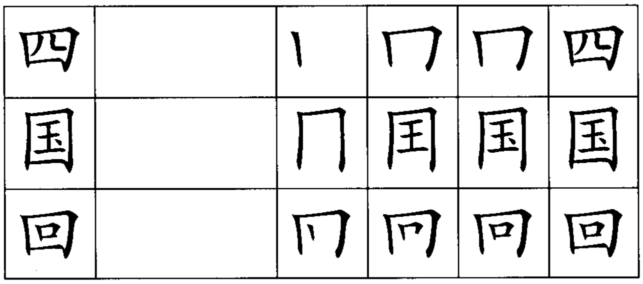
4. The horizontal before the down stroke to the left:


大
一
大
有
一
冇
有
在
一
在

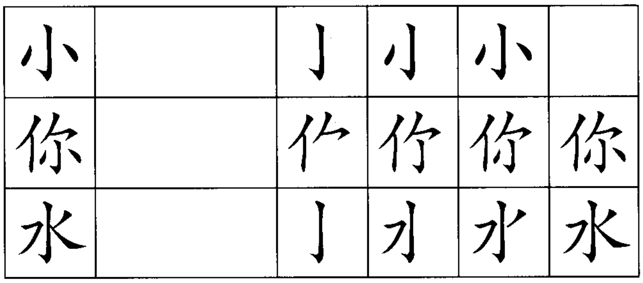
5. The down stroke to the left before that to the right:



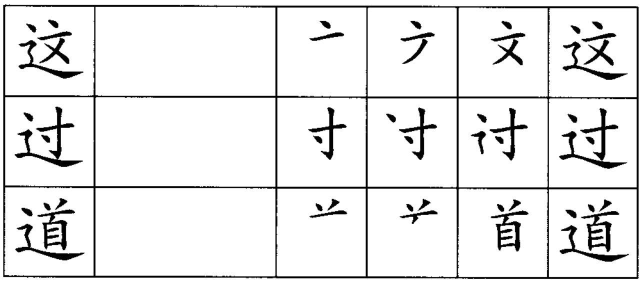
6. The enclosing strokes first, then the enclosed and finally the sealing stroke:


四
丨
冂
冂
四
国
冂
国
回
冋
冋
回

7. The middle stroke before those on both sides:

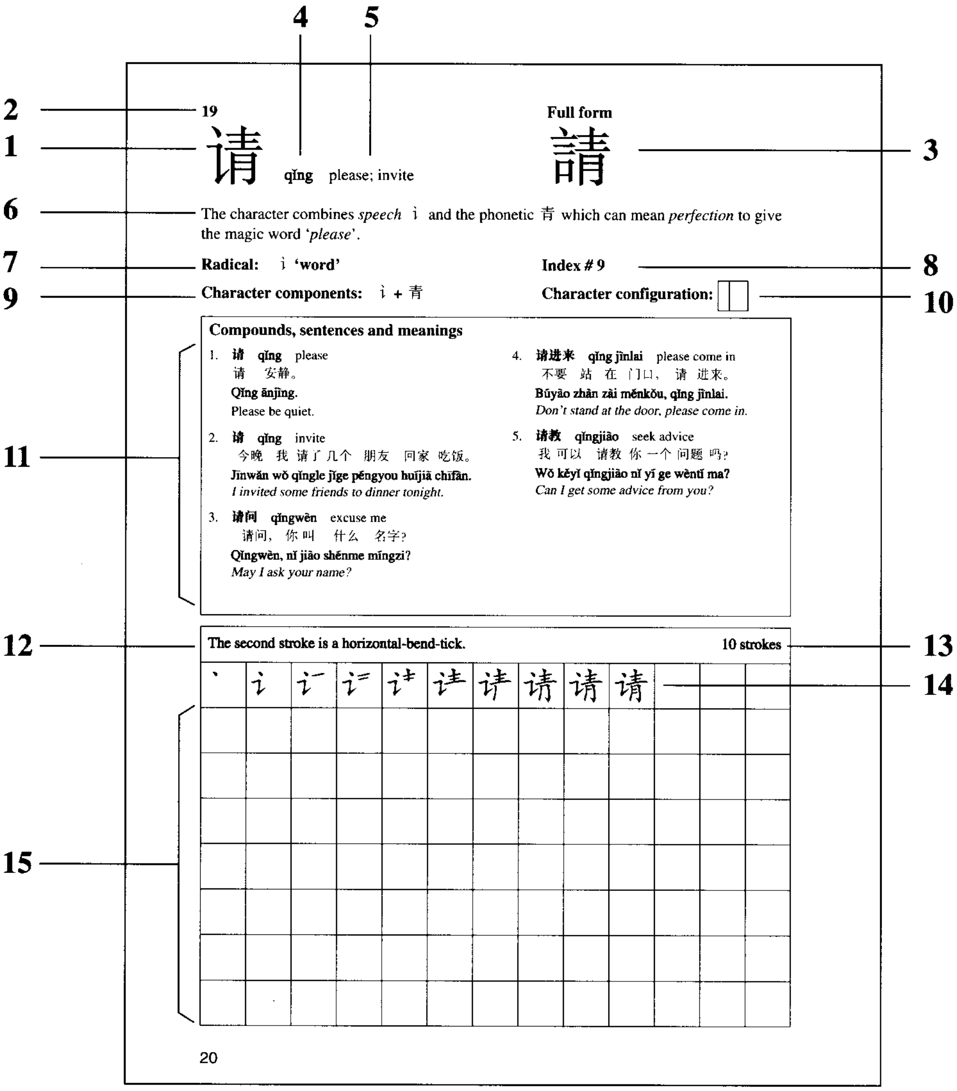


8. Inside stroke before side stroke:



Explanatory Notes for Character Entries

Below is an annotated character entry. It has been reduced to show the full range of information:


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15

19

请 qǐng please; invite

Full form

請

The character combines *speech* 讠 and the phonetic 青 which can mean *perfection* to give the magic word '*please*'.

Radical: 讠 **'word'**

Index # 9

Character components: 讠 + 青

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **请** **qǐng** please
请 安静。
Qǐng ānjìng.
Please be quiet.

2. **请** **qǐng** invite
今晚 我 请了 几个 朋友 回家 吃饭。
Jīnwǎn wǒ qǐngle jǐge péngyou huíjiā chīfàn.
I invited some friends to dinner tonight.

3. **请问** **qǐngwèn** excuse me
请问，你 叫 什么 名字？
Qǐngwèn, nǐ jiào shénme míngzi?
May I ask your name?

4. **请进来** **qǐng jìnlai** please come in
不要 站 在 门口，请 进来。
Bùyào zhàn zài ménkǒu, qǐng jìnlai.
Don't stand at the door, please come in.

5. **请教** **qǐngjiào** seek advice
我 可以 请教 你 一个 问题 吗？
Wǒ kěyǐ qǐngjiào nǐ yí ge wèntí ma?
Can I get some advice from you?

The second stroke is a horizontal-bend-tick. **10 strokes**

20

KEY:

1. the character
2. character serial number as sequenced in this book
3. full form of the character
4. pronunciation and tone
5. character definition
6. character explanation and points to note on the use of the character.
7. radical information
8. radical index number (based on *The Chinese-English Dictionary 1995*)
9. character components
10. character configuration
11. character combinations and example sentences with pronunciation and meaning
12. points to note when writing out the character.
13. total number of strokes of the character
14. stroke order
15. space to practice writing out the character

Simplified characters versus full characters

Out of the 250 characters studied in this book, 83 are simplified. This is under one-third which is generally the number of characters simplified for common usage. Where a simplified form exists, the full form is given as a reference. It is useful to know how the full form looks like as it is often used to illustrate how the character came to evolve to its present form.

Simplified characters have existed long before the Communist Chinese Government sanctioned their use with an official list in 1986. For example, the characters *cóng* 从 (from), *wàn* 万 (ten thousand) and *bǐ* 笔 (writing brush) existed side by side with their full forms 從, 萬 and 筆 in classical Chinese. The official sanction only means the abolition of the complex forms.

Several techniques were employed to create simplified characters. One was to replace the original component of a character with a component of fewer strokes but which had the same sound as the given character. For example, the simplified character for 'recognize' is *rèn* 认. The component 人 is pronounced as *rén* which is also the pronunciation for *rěn* 忍 in the full form (despite their different tones). Other examples are *shí* 识, *yàng* 样, *zhōng* 钟, *kuài* 块, *bāng* 帮, *yuán* 园, *yuǎn* 远 and *jí* 极 .

Another technique used was simply to take one section of a complex character and used it as the simplified one. Compare the full form for 'kin' 親 *(qīn)* and its simplified form 亲 which uses only the left component in simplification. Other examples in this collection are *ér* 兒 (son), *yī* 醫 (doctor), *xí* 習 (practice), *tiáo* 條 (classifier), *lǐ* 裡 (inside) and *qì* 氣 (gas, vapor) with their respective simplified forms 儿, 医, 习, 条, 里 and 气 .

Some characters are simplified on the basis of having adopted the cursive forms and in the process losing some of their strokes. For example, the radical 言 (speech) is simplified to 讠 by the adoption of its cursive form. Other radicals in this collection simplified on the same basis are 纟 (silk), 钅 (metal), 门 (door), 车 (vehicle) and 饣 (food). Note that simplification involving the radicals are responsible for many simplified forms being created as it is often the case that only the radicals are simplified. Examples are ***shuō*** 说 , ***huà*** 话, ***yǔ*** 语, ***shéi/shuí*** 谁, ***xiè*** 谢, ***qǐng*** 请, ***cí*** 词, ***dú*** 读 for 讠 (word), ***gěi*** 给, ***liàn*** 练, ***jīng*** 经 for 纟 (silk), ***qián*** 钱, ***tiě*** 铁, ***zhōng*** 钟 for 钅 (metal), ***wèn*** 问, ***jiān*** 间 for 门 (door), ***jiào*** 较 for 车 (vehicle), and ***fàn*** 饭 for 饣 (food). Other cursive characters adopted as simplified forms are *ài* 爱, *dōng* 东, *jiàn* 见, *huì* 会, *xiě* 写, *shū* 书, *lái* 来, *jué/jiào* 觉, *lè/yuè* 乐, *cháng/zhǎng* 长 and *chē* 车.

Some cursive forms use an arbitrary form created for the sake of writing a character quickly. These are used to replace some complicated phonetic components. One common stereotype is *yòu* 又 made up of only two strokes. It is used in the characters *huān* 欢, *hàn* 汉, and *duì* 对 replacing 歡, 漢, and 對 respectively. Another such stereotype is *yūn* 云 made up of only four strokes. It is used in the characters *yún* 云, *yùn* 运, and *dòng* 动 replacing 雲, 運, and 動 respectively.

The Pinyin System of Romanization

The system used in this book to write Chinese with Roman letters is the *Hanyu Pinyin* system which is standard in mainland China and is the system now used almost everywhere else in the world. The imitated pronunciation should be read as if it were English, bearing in mind the following main points:

Consonants

b, d, f, g, h, k, l, m, n, p, s, t, w, y as in English

c	like English **ts** in **its**
j	like English **j** in **jeep**
q	like English **ch** in **ch**eer, with a strong puff of air
r	like English **ur** in leis**ur**e, with the tongue rolled back
x	like English **see** (whole word)
z	like English **ds** in ki**ds**
ch	like English **ch** in **ch**urch, with the tongue rolled back and a strong puff of air
sh	like English **sh** in **sh**e, with the tongue rolled back
zh	like English **j**, with the tongue rolled back

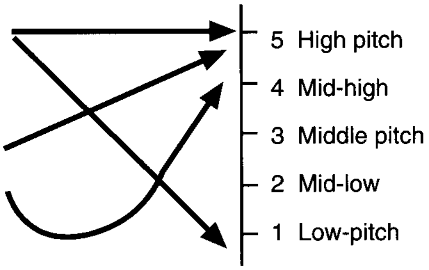
Vowels

a	like English **ar** in f**ar**
e	like English **ur** in f**ur**
i	like English **ee** in f**ee**
o	like English **or** in f**or**
u	like English **ue** in s**ue**
ü	like French **u**

Tones

A tone is a variation in pitch by which a syllable can be pronounced. In Chinese, a variation of pitch or tone changes the meaning of the word. There are four tones each marked by a diacritic. In addition there is a neutral tone which does not carry any tone marks. Below is a tone chart which describes tones using the 5-degree notation. It divides the range of pitches from lowest (1) to highest (5). Note that the neutral tone is not shown on the chart as it is affected by the tone that precedes it.

Tone chart



The first tone is a high-level tone represented by a level tone mark (–).

The second tone is a high-rising tone represented by a rising tone mark (ˊ).

The third tone is a low-dipping tone represented by a dish-like tone mark (ˇ).

The fourth tone is a high-falling tone represented by an falling tone mark (ˋ).

In addition to the above tones, there is a neutral tone which is pronounced light and soft in comparison to other tones. A neutral tone is not marked by any tone mark. A syllable is said to take on a neutral tone when it forms part of a word or is placed in various parts of a sentence.

How to use the Alphabetical Index

The words and phrases collected in the Chinese-English Glossary (approximately 1200 items) are arranged alphabetically according to the *Hanyu Pinyin* system of romanization. In this system each syllable (represented by a character) is a unit. The first character in a word or phrase is the head character. Each word or phrase is ordered in the first instance according to the phonetic value of this character. In a succession of entries having the same head character, alphabetical order is then determined by the phonetic value of the second character. This arrangement has the advantage of enhancing meaning by grouping together words which share a common character root, even though it is done at the expense of a straight alphabetical ordering.

The ordering of characters is affected by two other considerations. Firstly, in the case of characters represented by the same roman letters, alphabetization is determined by the tone of each character (represented in *Hanyu Pinyin* by diacritics), in the order first, second, third, fourth and neutral tone. Secondly, in the case of characters represented by the same Roman letters which also have the same tone, alphabetization follows the principle that simpler characters (those composed of fewer strokes) are listed before more complex characters (those composed of more strokes).

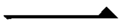
For example, the first 17 entries under Q have as their head character variations of the syllable 'qi' (pronounced like *chee* in English). These entries are *qī* — first tone (5 instances of a 2-stroke character, 1 of a 7-stroke character, 2 of a 12-stroke character); *qí* — second tone (1 instance); *qǐ* — third tone (4 instances of the same character); *qì* — fourth tone (1 instance of a 4-stroke character and 5 instances of a 7-stroke character). The neutral tone *qi*, written without any tone mark, is absent in this collection.

In the case of a character taking more than one tone, e.g. '*bu* 不' which can take on *bŭ*, *bù* or *bu*, the words or phrases sharing the head character are also arranged in the descending order of the tones.

How to use the Radical Index

The radical index is based on the 189 radicals used by *The Chinese-English Dictionary 1995,* published by the Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press in Beijing. When you look up a character, first determine which part of the character constitutes the radical and then count the remaining number of strokes to locate the character under that radical. Where a character is made up of two components which can function as radicals, it is sometimes classified under both radicals. For example, the character *mĕi* 美 'beautiful', is classified under both components which are treated as radicals: *yăng* 羊 'sheep' and *dà* 大 'big' in the same way as found in the *Chinese-English Dictionary 1995.*

1



yī / yí / yì one

The character is pronounced in the 1st tone as *yī* when it is used in counting; in the 2nd tone as *yí* before a syllable in the 4th tone; and in 4th tone as *yì* before syllables in 1st, 2nd or 3rd tones.

Radical: 一 **'horizontal stroke'** **Index # 2**

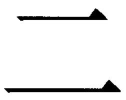
Character component: 一 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **一 yī** one
   一二三
   yī èr sān
   one two three
2. **一个 yí ge** one (general objects, usually roundish)
   请 给 我一个 面包。
   Qǐng gěi wǒ yí ge miànbāo.
   Please give me a bread roll.
3. **一本(书) yì běn (shū)** one (book)
   我 买了 一本 书。
   Wǒ mǎile yì běn shū.
   I bought a book.
4. **一次 yí cì** once
   我 来过 北京 一次。
   Wǒ láiguo Běijīng yí cì.
   I've been to Beijing once.
5. **第一 dìyī** first
   这 是第一次。
   Zhè shì dìyī cì.
   This is the first time.

Begin boldly and end firmly. **1 stroke**

一												



èr two

The character, represented by two horizontal lines, indicates the number *two*.

Radical: 二 **'two'**

Index # 10

Character components: 一 **+** 一

Character configuration: ⊟

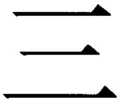
Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 二 **èr** two
   一加一 等于 二
   Yī jiā yī děngyú èr.
   One plus one equals two.
2. 二哥 **èrgē** second older brother
   我 二哥是 中学 老师。
   Wǒ èrgē shì zhōngxué lǎoshī.
   My second oldest brother is a high school teacher.
3. 二月 **Èryuè** February
   北京 二月 还 很 冷。
   Běijīng Èryuè hái hěn lěng.
   Beijing is still quite cold in February.
4. 二等 **èrděng** second class
   我 买了 二等 舱 的 票。
   Wǒ mǎile èrděng cāng de piào.
   I've brought a second class cabin ticket.
5. 独一无二 dúyī-wú'èr unique
   她的 想法 独一无二。
   Tāde xiǎngfǎ dúyī-wú'èr.
   Her way of thinking is unique.

The bottom stroke is longer. **2 strokes**

一	二											

3



sān three

The character, represented by three horizontal lines, indicates the number *three.*

Radical: 一 **'horizontal stroke'**

Index # 2

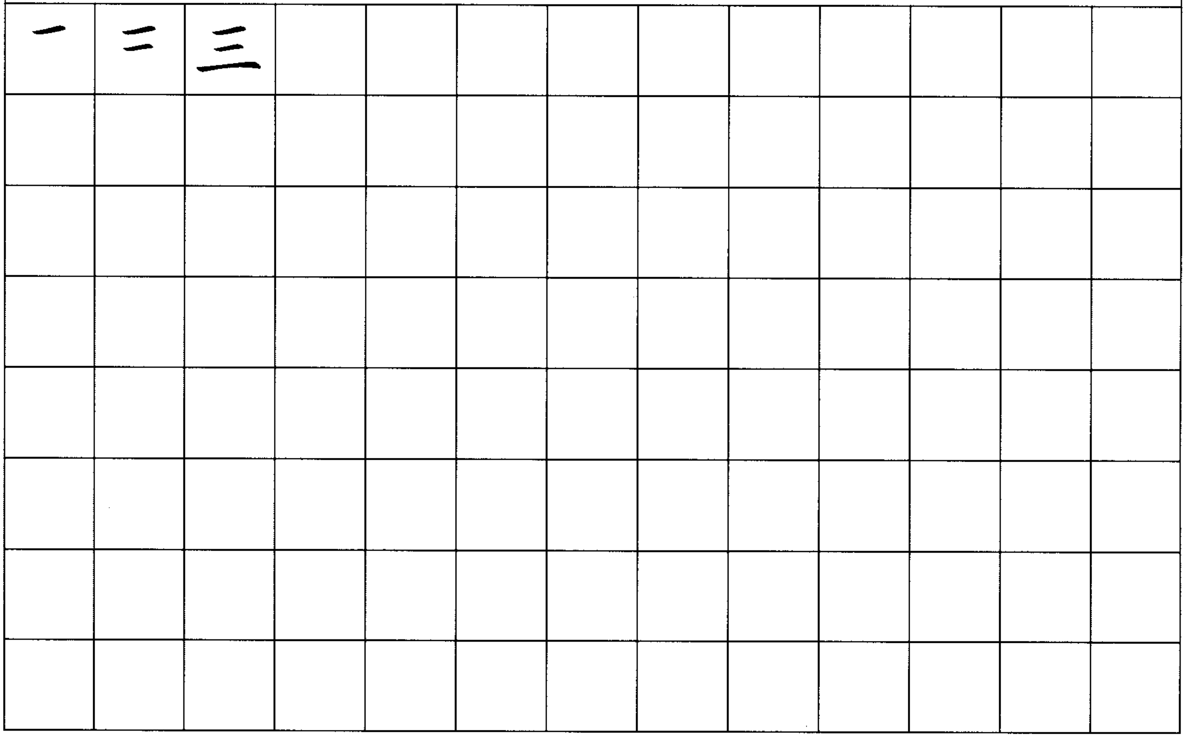
Character components: 一 + 一 + 一

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 三 **sān** three
   一不离二，二不离三。
   Yī bù lí èr, èr bù lí sān.
   Things don't happen once; they come in twos and threes.
2. 三角形 **sānjiǎoxíng** triangle
   这 是 个 三角形。
   Zhè shì ge sānjiǎoxíng.
   This is a triangle.
3. 三个月 **sān ge yuè** three months
   我 来了 中国 三 个 月。
   Wǒ láile Zhōngguó sān ge yuè.
   I've been in China for three months.
4. 星期三 **Xīngqīsān** Wednesday
   今天 是 星期三。
   Jīntiān shì Xīngqīsān.
   Today is Wednesday.
5. 三心二意 **sānxīn-èryì** undecisive
   就 这样 吧，别 再 三心二意 了。
   Jiù zhèyàng ba, bié zài sānxīn-èryì le.
   That settles it, don't be indecisive. (literally, three hearts, two minds)

The strokes are equally spaced, the middle stroke is the shortest. **3 strokes**



4

四 sì four

The character originally depicted breath coming out of a mouth. It was suggested that the meaning of *four* came from breath spreading out in the *four* directions.

Radical: 囗 **'4-sided frame'**

Index # 51

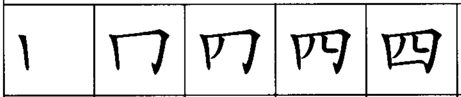
Character components: 囗 + 儿

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **四 sì** four
   二二得四
   Èr èr dé sì.
   Two times two equals four.
2. **四方 sìfāng** square
   我 家 有 一个 四方 的盒子。
   Wǒ jiā yǒu yí ge sìfāng de hézi.
   I have a square box at home.
3. **四季 sìjì** four seasons
   这里 的 气候 四季如春。
   Zhèlǐ de qìhòu sìjì-rúchūn.
   The climate here is like spring in all seasons.
4. **四川 Sìchuān** Sichuan (province; literally, four rivers, referring to the four tributaries of the Yangzi which flow through the province).
   四川菜 很 好吃。
   Sìchuāncài hěn hǎochī.
   Sichuan food is delicious.
5. **四通八达 sìtōng-bādá** in all directions
   美国 的 公路 四通八达。
   Měiguó de gōnglù sìtōng-bādá.
   Highways of the United States go in all directions.

The inner strokes do not touch the frame. **5 strokes**



5

五 **wǔ** five

The character originally depicted the shape of a hand. The meaning of *five* comes from the *five* fingers.

Radical: 一 **'horizontal stroke'** **Index # 2**
or 二 **'two'** **Index # 10**
Character component: 五 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **五 wǔ** five
   五路 公共 汽车。
   Wǔlù gōnggòng qìchē
   No. 5 bus

2. **五月 Wǔyuè** May
   五月 一号 是 劳动节。
   Wǔyuè-yīhào shì Láodòngjié.
   The first of May is Labor Day.

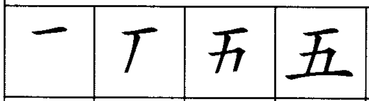
3. **五个月 wǔ ge yuè** five months
   他的 汽车 买了 五个 月。
   Tāde qìchē mǎile wǔ ge yuè.
   He bought his car five months ago.

4. **五体投地 wǔ tǐ tóu dì** prostrate oneself before someone (literally, the five extremities of the body).
   他 为人 正直， 让 我 佩服得 五体 投 地。
   Tā wéirén zhèngzhí , ràng wǒ pèifúde wǔ tǐ tóu dì.
   I admire his uprightness greatly.

5. **五颜六色 wǔyán-liùsè** multi-colored
   五颜六色 的 云霞 真 美丽。
   Wǔyán-liùsè de yúnxiá zhēn měilì.
   The multi-colored clouds are really pretty.

There is equal spacing between the 3 horizontal strokes.
The bottom stroke is longer than the ones above.

4 strokes

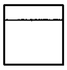


六 liù six

The character is romanized as *liù* with the tone mark placed on the main vowel *u*. This is because the pronunciation of *i* is unaffected by the tone change.

Radical: 亠 'the top of 六 ' **Index # 6**

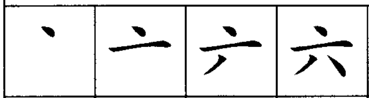
Character components: 亠 + 八 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **六 liù** six
   二 三 得 六。
   Èr sān dě liù
   Two times three equals six.
2. **六月 Liùyuè** June
   六月 十二号 是 我的 生日。
   Liùyuè-shí'èrhào shì wǒde shēngrì.
   The 12th of June is my birthday.
3. **星期六 Xīngqīliù** Saturday
   星期六 我 不 上班。
   Xīngqīliù wǒ bú shàngbān.
   I don't go to work on Saturday.
4. **六一 Liùyī** June 1st
   六一 是 国际 儿童节。
   Liùyī shì Guójì ěrtóngjiě.
   June 1st is International Children's Day.
5. **三头六臂 sāntóu-liùbì** super-human
   (literally, three heads and six arms)
   你 别 怕，他 没有 三头六臂。
   Nǐ bié pà, tā měiyǒu sāntóu-liùbì.
   Don't be scared, he's not super-human.

End the last stroke firmly. **4 strokes**



7

七 **qī** seven

The character represented a bent finger under a fist, an ancient way of signalling *seven.*

Radical: 一 ‘horizontal stroke’

Index # 2

Character components: 一 + 乚

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **七 qī** seven
   七七四十九。
   Qī qī sìshíjiǔ.
   Seven times seven equals forty-nine.

2. **七天 qī tiān** seven days
   一个 星期 有 七 天。
   Yí ge xīngqī yǒu qī tiān.
   There are seven days a week.

3. **七月 Qīyuè** July
   北京 七月 很 热。
   Běijīng Qīyuè hěn rè.
   Beijing is very hot in July.

4. **七七八八 qīqībābā** miscellaneous
   这里七七八八的 事情 很多。
   Zhèlǐ qīqībābā de shìqing hěnduō.
   There are plenty of odd jobs to do here.

5. **七上八落 qīshàng-bāluō** be agitated (literally, like 15 buckets, 7 going up and 8 going down)
   我的 心头 如同 十五个 吊桶
   Wǒde xīntóu rútóng shíwǔ ge diàotǒng,
   七上八落， 静不下来。
   qīshàng-bāluō, jìngbuxiàlai.
   My heart was racing erratically.

The second stroke ends with a hook. **2 strokes**

一	七											

8

八 **bā** eight

The character signifies something that can *easily be divided into two.*

Radical: 八 **'eight'**

Index # 17

Character component: 八

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **八** **bā** eight
   我 家离 市区 八 公里。
   Wŏ jiā lĭ shîqū bā gōnglĭ.
   My house is 8 km from the city.
2. **八成** bāchéng 80 per cent
   事情 有了 八成 了。
   Shîqing yŏule bāchĕng le.
   It's as good as settled.
3. **八折** **bāzhĕ** 20% discount
   八折 优惠 顾客。
   Bāzhĕ yōuhuî gûkè.
   80% discount.
4. **胡说八道** **hŭshuō-bādâo** nonsense
   别 胡说八道。
   Biĕ hŭshuō-bādâo.
   Don't talk nonsense.
5. **乱七八糟** **luânqībāzāo** in great disorder
   他的 屋子 乱七八糟 的。
   Tāde wūzi luânqībāzāo de.
   His room is in a mess.

Leave a gap at the top. **2 strokes**

ノ	八											

9

九 jiǔ nine

The character depicted a bent elbow, an ancient way of indicating the number *nine*.

Radical: 丿 **'downward-left stroke'**

Index # 4

Character component: 九

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **九** **jiǔ** nine
   三 三 得 九。
   Sān sān dé jiǔ.
   Three times three equals nine.

2. **九九表** **jiǔjiǔbiǎo** multiplication table
   你的 九九表 背熟 了 吗?
   Nǐde jiǔjiǔbiǎo bèishú le ma?
   Did you learn the multiplication table?

3. **九级风** **jiǔjífēng** force 9 wind
   今天 吹 九级风。
   Jīntiān chuī jiǔjífēng.
   A strong gale is blowing today.

4. **九宫格儿** **jiǔgōnggér** 9-grid paper
   九宫格儿 是 用 来 写 汉字 的。
   Jiǔgōnggér shì yòng lái xiě Hànzì de.
   A 9-grid squared paper is used for writing characters.

5. **九一一** **Jiǔyīyī** September 11
   美国人 难忘 九一一。
   Měiguórén nánwàng Jiǔyīyī.
   Americans will never forget what happened on September 11.

The second stroke ends with a hook. **2 strokes**

丿	九											

10

十 **shí** ten

The character signifies *all directions.*

Radical: 十 **'ten'**

Character component: 十

Index # 11

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **十 shí** ten
   我 妹妹 今年 十 岁。
   Wǒ mèimei jīnnián shí suì.
   My younger sister is ten years old.
2. **十分 shífēn** fully
   你 康复了，我 十分 高兴。
   Nǐ kāngfùle, wǒ shífēn gāoxìng.
   I'm very pleased that you've recovered.
3. **十足 shízú** 100 per cent
   这 个 小伙子 干劲 十足。
   Zhè ge xiǎohuǒzi gànjìng shízú.
   This young man is full of energy.
4. **十字路口 shízì lùkǒu** intersection
   前面 有 个 十字 路口。
   Qiánmiàn yǒu ge shízì lùkǒu.
   There's an intersection further ahead.
5. **十全十美 shíquán-shíměi** be perfect in every way (literally, complete and beautiful)
   人生 很 难 会 有 十全十美 的。
   Rénshēng hěn nán huì yǒu shíquán-shíměi de.
   It's very hard to find perfection in life.

The lower part of the vertical stroke is longer. **2 strokes**

一	十											

Quiz 1 (1–10)

A. Join groups of 3 consecutive numbers in the 9-character grids below. They should be grouped together vertically, horizontally or diagonally.

一	九	七
二	三	六
三	四	五

七	二	三
五	六	四
七	六	五

八	七	六
四	九	五
八	九	十

B. Match characters with numbers by drawing lines.

(i)

十四	12
十二	15
十一	13
十五	11
十三	14

(ii)

五十九	65
三十七	48
二十六	59
四十八	37
六十五	26

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

dì 一	third
dì 三	first
dì 一 cì	third time
dì 三 cì	first time
dì 五 cì	fifth time

(ii)

二 yuè	four directions
六 ge yuè	fully
四 fāng	20% discount
八 zhé	six months
十 zú	February

D. Fill in the missing numbers with characters.

(i)

1.	seventh	dì 七
2.	four seasons	_______ jì
3.	70%	_______ chéng
4.	100%	_______ zú
5.	second class	_______ děng

(ii)

6.	Thursday	xīngqī _______
7.	10% discount	_______ zhé
8.	multiplication table	_____ _____ biǎo
9.	multi-colored	_____ yán _____ sè
10.	undecisive	_____ xīn _____ yì

11 **Full form**

叫 jiào be called 呌

The full form combines *mouth* 口 and the phonetic 斗 which can mean *struggle*. It may be that it's a struggle to *yell out* someone's name to catch his or her attention. The simplified form uses a similar phonetic 丩 which joins the two dots to the horizontal stroke.

Radical: 口 'mouth' **Index # 50**

Character components: 口 + 丩 **Character configuration: ⿰**

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **叫** **jiào** be called
   她 叫 什么 名字?
   Tā jiào shénme míngzi?
   What's her name?

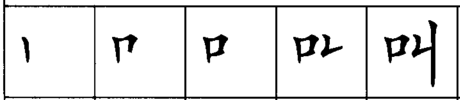
2. **叫做** **jiàozuò** be called
   这 种 汽油 叫做 含铅 汽油。
   Zhè zhǒng qìyóu jiàozuò hánqiān qìyóu.
   This type of petrol is called leaded petrol.

3. **叫门** **jiàomén** call at the door
   有 人 在 叫门。
   Yǒu rén zài jiàomén.
   Someone is at the door.

4. **叫喊** **jiàohǎn** shout
   请 别 在 这里 高声 叫喊。
   Qǐng bié zài zhèlǐ gāoshēng jiàohǎn.
   Please don't shout here.

5. **叫座** **jiàozuò** draw a large audience
   这 个 电影 很 叫座。
   Zhè ge diànyǐng hěn jiàozuò.
   This movie is a box-office hit.

Write 口 half-way down the left strokes of 丩. **5 strokes**



12

什 **shén** what?

Full form

甚

The simplified form must be used with the particle *me* 么 to give the meaning '*what?*'.

Radical: 亻 **'upright person'**

Index # 19

Character components: 亻 + 十

Character configuration: ⿰

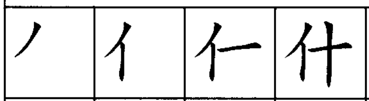
Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **什么** **shénme** what
   你 叫 什么 名字?
   Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi?
   What's your given name?

2. **什么?** **shénme** Pardon me?
   什么? 请 再 说 一 遍。
   Shénme? Qǐng zài shuō yí biàn.
   Pardon? Please say that again.

3. **什么的** **shénmede** etc
   我 要 买 鱼、肉、鸡蛋、什么的。
   Wǒ yào mǎi yú, ròu, jīdàn, shénmede.
   I have to buy fish, meat, eggs etc.

The left and right components do not join up. **4 strokes**



13

么 **me** [particle]

Full form

麼

The character does not exist by itself but is used mostly after demonstrative pronouns and a few verbs.

Radical: 丿 **'downward-left stroke'** **Index # 4**
or 厶 **'private'** **Index # 56**
Character components: 丿 + 厶
Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **这么** **zhème** so, such
这么 做 就 行 了。
Zhème zuò jiù xíng le.
It should be fine if you do it this way.

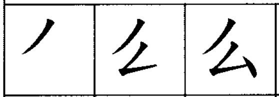
2. **那么** **nàme** in that way
别 走得 那么 快， 好不好?
Bié zǒude nàme kuài, hǎobuhǎo?
Don't walk so fast, okay?

3. **怎么** **zěnme** how
这 个词儿英语 怎么 说?
Zhè ge cír Yīngyǔ zěnme shuō?
How do you say this word in English?

4. **多么** **duōme** to what extent
多么 新鲜 的 水果 啊!
Duōme xīnxiān de shuǐguǒ a!
What fresh fruits!

5. **要么** **yàome** either or
要么 他来，要么 我 去， 我们 总 得 见 个 面。
Yàome tā lái, yàome wǒ qù, wǒmen zǒng děi jiàn ge miàn.
Either he comes here or I go there; either way we've got to meet.

The first stroke only comes halfway down. **3 strokes**



14

名 **míng** name

The character combines *mouth* 口 and *evening* 夕 which signifies that people at night identify themselves to others by calling out their *names*.

Radical: 口 **'mouth'** **Index # 50**
or 夕 **'sunset'** **Index # 56**
Character components: 夕 + 口 **Character configuration:** ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **名** **míng** name
   他 名 叫 王 刚。
   Tā míng jiāo Wāng Gāng.
   His name is Wang Gang

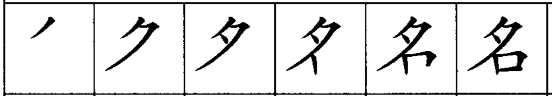
2. **名字** **míngzì** name
   我 有 中文 名字。
   Wǒ yǒu Zhōngwén míngzi.
   I have a Chinese name.

3. **名牌** **míngpāi** brand name
   北京 大学 是 名牌 大学。
   Běijīng Dàxuē shī míngpāi dàxuē.
   Peking University is a prestigious university.

4. **名片** **míngpiān** business card
   这 是 我的 名片。
   Zhè shī wǒde míngpiàn.
   This is my business card.

5. **名胜** **míngshèng** famous scenic spot
   南京 有 很多 名胜。
   Nānjīng yǒu hěnduō míngshèng.
   Nanjing has many famous scenic spots.

The third stroke does not cross through the second stroke. **6 strokes**



15

字

zì character

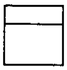
The character combines *roof* or *house* 宀 with *child* 子 which by inference means a child is studying *characters* inside a house.

Radical: 宀 **'roof'**

Index # 34

Character components: 宀 + 子

Character configuration:

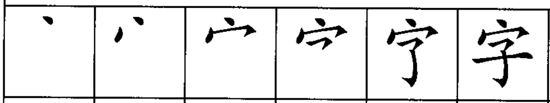


Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **字** **zì** character, word
   你 这 个 字 写得 不对。
   Nǐ zhè ge zì xiěde búduì.
   You wrote this character incorrectly.
2. **字典** **zìdiǎn** dictionary
   你 有 汉英 字典 吗?
   Nǐ yǒu Hàn-yīng zìdiǎn ma?
   Do you have a Chinese–English dictionary?
3. **字母** **zìmǔ** alphabet
   汉语 拼音 用 的 是 拉丁 字母。
   Hànyǔ Pīnyīn yòng de shì Lādīng zìmǔ.
   Pinyin uses the Latin alphabet.
4. **字幕** **zìmù** subtitles, captions
   这 个 电影 有 中文 字幕。
   Zhè ge diànyǐng yǒu Zhōngwén zìmù.
   This movie has Chinese subtitles.
5. **汉字** **Hànzì** characters
   我 学了 十五 个 汉字。
   Wǒ xuéle shíwǔ ge Hànzì.
   I've learnt 15 Chinese characters.

The fifth stroke ends with a hook.

6 strokes



16

你 **nǐ** you

The right part of the character 尔 is the old form for *you*. The new form retains the same idea with the additional meaning of *person* 亻.

Radical: 亻 **'upright person'** **Index # 19**

Character components: 亻 + 尔 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **你 nǐ** you
   你 想 买 什么?
   Nǐ xiǎng mǎi shénme?
   What would you like to buy?

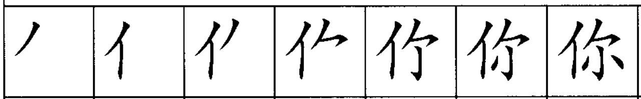
2. **你好 nǐ hǎo** hello
   你好! 认识 你, 我 很 高兴。
   Nǐ hǎo! Rènshi nǐ, wǒ hěn gāoxìng.
   Hi! I'm pleased to meet you.

3. **你们 nǐmen** you (plural)
   我 给 你们 介绍, 这是…, 这是…。
   Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào, zhè shì ..., zhè shì....
   Let me introduce, this is ..., this is ...

4. **你们好 nǐmen hǎo** hello everyone
   你们 好!
   Nǐmen hǎo!.
   Hi! Everyone!

5. **你们的 nǐmende** your, yours
   你们的 东西 放好 了吗?
   Nǐmende dōngxi fànghǎo le ma?
   Have you put away your things?

The fifth stroke is a vertical hook. **7 strokes**



17

好 **hǎo** good

The character signifies the old idea that being in possession of *woman* 女 and *child* 子 is *good.*

Radical: 女 **'female'**

Index # 65

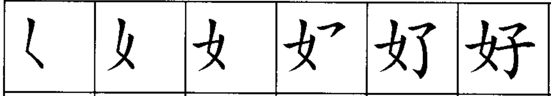
Character components: 女 + 子

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **好** **hǎo** good
   今天 天气 真 好。
   Jīntiān tiānqì zhēn hǎo.
   The weather is really lovely today.
2. **好办** **hǎobàn** easy to handle
   这 件 事 好办。
   Zhè jiàn shì hǎobàn.
   This matter can be settled.
3. **好吃** **hǎochī** delicious
   我 觉得 中餐 很 好吃。
   Wǒ juéde Zhōngcān hěn hǎochī.
   I think Chinese food is delicious.
4. **好处** **hǎochù** good points
   学 拼音 对 学 汉字 有 好处。
   Xué Pīnyīn duì xué Hànzì yǒu hǎochù.
   Learning pinyin helps you learn Chinese characters.
5. **好看** **hǎokàn** pretty
   你 说 这 条 裙子 好 不 好看?
   Nǐ shuō zhè tiáo qúnzi hǎo bu hǎokàn?
   Do you think this dress is pretty?

The first stroke travels down, turns and ends firmly. **6 strokes**



18

我 wŏ I, me

The character combines *grain* 扌 (written as 禾 in early sources) and *spear* 戈 to satisfy basic needs of food and security. From this the idea of *self* emerges.

Radical: 戈 **'spear'**

Index # 85

Character components: 扌 + 戈

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

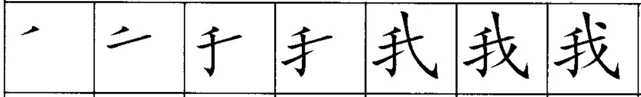
1. **我** **wŏ** I, me
   我 喜欢 学 汉字。
   Wŏ xǐhuan xuě Hànzì.
   I like learning Chinese characters.

2. **我们** **wŏmen** we, us
   我们 互相 帮助， 好 不好？
   Wŏmen hùxiāng bāngzhū, hăo buhăo?
   Let's help each other, shall we?

3. **我们的** **wŏmende** our, ours
   我们的 将来 是 美好 的。
   Wŏmende jiānglāi shì mĕihăo de.
   Our future is bright.

4. **自我** **zìwŏ** self
   我 建议 大家 自我 介绍 一下儿。
   Wŏ jiànyì dàjiā zìwŏ jièshào yíxiàr.
   I suggest that we introduce ourselves.

The fourth stroke comes up, the sixth stroke sweeps down. **7 strokes**



19

请 qǐng please; invite

Full form

請

The character combines *speech* 讠 and the phonetic 青 which can mean *perfection* to give the magic word '*please*'.

Radical: 讠 **'word'**

Index # 9

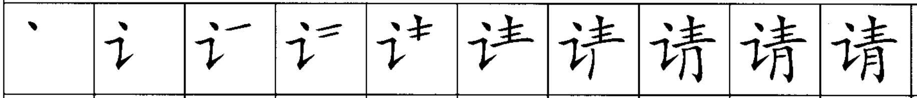
Character components: 讠 + 青

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **请 qǐng** please
   请　安静。
   Qǐng ānjìng.
   Please be quiet.
2. **请 qǐng** invite
   今晚　我　请了 几个　朋友　回家　吃饭。
   Jīnwǎn wǒ qǐngle jǐge péngyou huíjiā chīfàn.
   I invited some friends to dinner tonight.
3. **请问 qǐngwèn** excuse me
   请问，你 叫　什么　名字？
   Qǐngwèn, nǐ jiào shénme míngzi?
   May I ask your name?
4. **请进来 qǐng jìnlai** please come in
   不要　站　在　门口，　请　进来。
   Búyào zhàn zài ménkǒu, qǐng jìnlai.
   Don't stand at the door, please come in.
5. **请教 qǐngjiào** seek advice
   我 可以　请教 你 一个 问题 吗？
   Wǒ kěyǐ qǐngjiào nǐ yí ge wèntí ma?
   Can I get some advice from you?

The second stroke is a horizontal-bend-tick. **10 strokes**



20

问 **wèn** ask

Full form

問

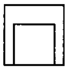
The character signifies that one has to use the *mouth* 口 to ask a *question* and this usually takes place outside one's *door* 门 .

Radical: 门 **'door'**

Index # 37

Character components: 门 + 口

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **问** **wèn** ask
   不 懂 就 问。
   Bù dǒng jiù wèn.
   Ask when you don't understand.

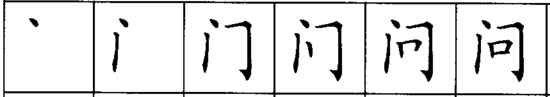
2. **问答** **wèndá** questions and answers
   我 现在 做 问答 练习。
   Wǒ xiànzài zuò wèndá liànxí.
   I'm doing questions and answers drills at present.

3. **问题** **wèntí** question
   没有 问题。
   Méiyǒu wèntí.
   There are no problems.

4. **问好** **wènhǎo** say hello to
   请 代 我 向 你父亲 问好。
   Qǐng dài wǒ xiàng nǐ fùqin wènhǎo.
   Please give my regards to your father.

5. **学问** **xuéwèn** learning
   他 是一 位 学问 高深 的 人。
   Tā shì yí wèi xuéwèn gāoshēn de rén.
   He is a very learned person.

The first stroke is a downward dot. **6 strokes**



Quiz 2 (11–20)

A. Look at the 9-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally from left to right or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

你	好	什
请	叫	么
问	名	字

	Word or phrase			Pinyin	Translation
(i)	你	好		Nǐ hǎo!	Hello!
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 9-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters. You may like to check their English meaning in the Key. You might also need to refresh your memory on how to write the character wǒ 'I, me'.

(i)	Wǒ wèn nǐ.									
(ii)	Nǐ wèn wǒ shénme?									
(iii)	Wǒ jiào shénme míngzi?									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)		(ii)	
好 kàn	Come in	xuē 问	question
好 chī	characters	问 tí	etc.
Hàn 字	dictionary	叫 hǎn	say hello to
yǒu 名	delicious	问 hǎo	what
字 diǎn	alphabet	请 jiào	shout
请 jìnlai	business card	什么	seek advice
字 mǔ	pretty	什么 de	how
名 piān	famous	zěn 么	learning

21

您 **nín** you (polite)

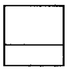
The character combines *you* 你 with *heart* 心 to express the *polite form* of *'you'*.

Radical: 心 **'heart'**

Index # 76

Character components: 你 **+** 心

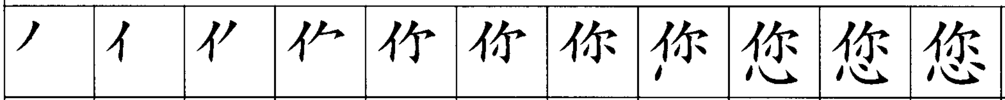
Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **您 nín** you (polite)
   您 贵姓?
   Nín guìxìng?
   May I ask your name (surname)?
2. **您好 Nín hǎo!** How are you!
   老师, 您好!
   Lǎoshī, nín hǎo!
   How are you, sir/ma'am (teacher)?
3. **您早 Nín zǎo!** Good morning!
   老师, 您早!
   Lǎoshī, nín zǎo!
   Good morning, sir/ma'am (teacher)!

Note the position of the three dots in 心. 11 strokes



22

贵 **guì** expensive

Full form

貴

When used as an honorific, the character means *your*. By itself, it means *expensive*. This comes from the time when shells were used as a form of money.

Radical: 贝 **'seashell'**

Index # 92

Character components: 中 + 一 + 贝

Character configuration: ⊟

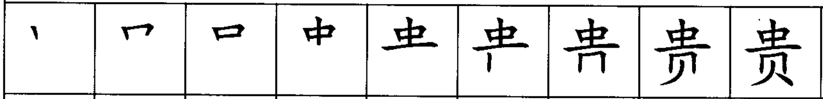
Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **贵** **guì** expensive
   这 本 书 很 好, 也 不 贵。
   Zhè běn shū hěn hǎo, yě bú guì.
   This book is good and is not expensive.

2. **贵姓** **guìxìng** your name (honorific)
   您 贵姓?
   Nín guìxìng?
   What's your surname, please?

3. **贵国** **guìguó** your country (honorific)
   贵国 是 哪国?
   Guìguó shì nǎguó?
   What nationality (polite form) are you?

The last stroke finishes firmly. **9 strokes**



23

姓 **xìng** surname

The character combines *woman* 女 and *birth* 生 to give the idea of *surname* inherited from the mother, which was the case in matriarchical societies.

Radical: 女 **'female'**

Index # 65

Character components: 女 + 生

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **姓** **xìng** to be surnamed
   我 姓 李，名 叫 恩华。
   Wǒ xìng Lǐ, míng jiào Ēnhuá.
   My surname is Li, my given name is Enhua.

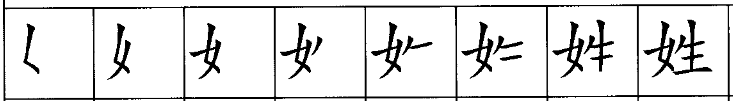
2. **姓名** **xìngmíng** full name
   请 写下 你的 姓名。
   Qǐng xiěxià nǐde xìngmíng.
   Please write down your full name.

3. **姓氏** **xìngshì** surname
   以 姓氏 笔划 为 序。
   Yǐ xìngshì bǐhuà wéi xù.
   Arranged by surname in the order of the number of strokes.

4. **老百姓** **lǎobǎixìng** common people (literally, the 100 old names)
   中国 一般 老百姓 很 穷。
   Zhōngguó yìbān lǎobǎixìng hěn qióng.
   In general, people in China are poor.

5. **同姓** **tóngxìng** having the same surname
   以前 中国人 同姓 不 通婚。
   Yǐqián Zhōngguórén tóngxìng bù tōnghūn.
   In the past, people would not marry someone with the same surname.

The bottom horizontal stroke on the right-hand side is longer. **8 strokes**



24

是 shì be

Swearing under the *sun* 日 that something is true signifies the idea of certainty. Thus the character means *to be*.

Radical: 日 **'sun'**

Index # 90

Character components: 日 **+** 疋

Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **是 shì** to be
   她 是 日本人。
   Tā shì Rìběnrén.
   She is Japanese.

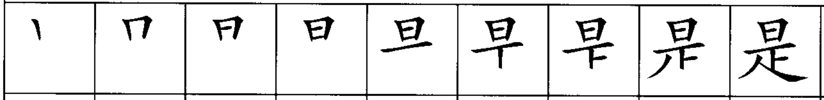
2. **是的 shìde** yes
   是的， 日本人 也 用 汉字。
   Shìde, Rìběnrén yě yòng Hànzì.
   Yes, Japanese people also use Chinese characters.

3. **不是 búshì** not to be
   他 不是 日本人。
   Tā búshì Rìběnrén.
   He's not Japanese.

4. **是不是 shìbushì** to be or not to be
   他 是不是 日本人?
   Tā shìbushì Rìběnrén?
   Is he Japanese?

5. **还是 háishi** or
   她 是 日本人，还是 韩国人?
   Tā shì Rìběnrén, háishi Hánguórén?
   Is she Japanese or Korean?

Make sure that the last stroke is not too flat. **9 strokes**



25

哪 **nǎ** which

The character combines *mouth* 口 with the phonetic 那 gives the character the sound element. By itself, it means *which*; with 儿, it means *where*.

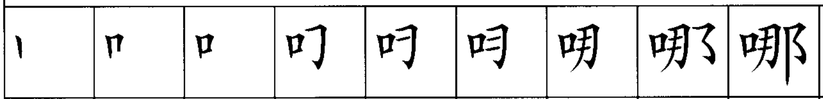
Radical: 口 **'mouth'** **Index # 50**

Character components: 口 + ⺼ + 阝 **Character configuration:** ⿲

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **哪** **nǎ** which one?
   你 喜欢 哪个 玩具?
   Nǐ xǐhuan nǎ ge wánjù?
   Which toy would you like?
2. **哪儿** **nǎr** where?
   你 上 哪儿去?
   Nǐ shàng nǎr qù?
   Where are you going?
3. **哪里** **nǎli** where?
   你 上 哪里去?
   Nǐ shàng nǎli qù?
   Where are you going?
4. **哪些** **nǎxiē** which ones?
   你 去过 北京 哪些 地方?
   Nǐ qùguo Běijīng nǎxiē dìfang?
   Where have you been to in Beijing?
5. **哪国人** **nǎguórén** which country?
   你 是 哪国人?
   Nǐ shì nǎguórén?
   What nationality are you?

The eighth stroke is written like the figure 3. **9 strokes**



26

国 **guó** country

Full form

國

The simplified character signifies that when the best in the country as represented by *jade* 玉 is protected by a *wall* or *boundary* 囗, nationhood comes into being.

Radical: 囗 **'*4-sided frame*'**

Index # 51

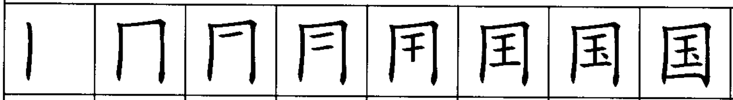
Character components: 囗 **+** 玉

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **国 guó** nation
   《一国 两 制》 这 个 政策 是
   <Yī guó liǎng zhì> zhè ge zhèngcè shì
   邓 小平 提出的。
   Dēng Xiǎopíng tíchū de.
   It was Deng Xiaoping who proposed the policy of "One country, two systems."
2. **国家 guójiā** nation
   美国 是 民主 国家。
   Měiguó shì mínzhǔ guójiā.
   The United States is a democratic country.
3. **德国 Déguó** Germany
   德国 在 欧洲。
   Déguó zài Ōuzhou.
   Germany is in Europe.
4. **国庆 guóqìng** National Day
   十月 一号 是 中国 国庆节。
   Shíyuè-yīhào shì Zhōngguó Guóqìngjié.
   October 1st is Chinese National Day.
5. **国际 guójì** international
   中国 的 国际 地位提高了。
   Zhōngguó de guójì dìwèi tígāo le.
   China's international status has improved.

The last stroke seals the enclosure. **8 strokes**



27

人 **rén** person, people

The character is a pictograph of a *person* standing with his/her feet apart.

Radical: 人 **'person'** **Index # 18**

Character component: 人 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **人** **rén** person, people
   房间 里 没有 人。
   Fánjiān li méiyǒu rén.
   There is no one in the room.

2. **人们** **rénmen** people
   人们 都 说 她 不错。
   Rénmen dōu shuō tā búcuò.
   People all speak well of her.

3. **中国人** **Zhōngguórén** Chinese (person)
   中国人 跟 日本人 不 一样
   Zhōngguórén gēn Rìběnrén bù yíyàng.
   Chinese people are different from Japanese.

4. **人口** **rénkǒu** population
   中国 的 人口 众多。
   Zhōngguó de rénkǒu zhòngduō.
   China has a large population.

5. **人山人海** **rénshān-rénhǎi** sea of people (literally, a mountain of people, a sea of people)
   广场 上 人山人海。
   Guǎngchǎng shang rénshān-rénhǎi.
   The square was crowded with many people.

Note the difference between 人 and 入. **2 strokes**

ノ	人											

28

中 **zhōng** middle

The character signifies the idea of an arrow hitting the bull's eye right in the *center.*

Radical: 丨 **'vertical stroke'** **Index # 3**

Character components: 口 + 丨 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **中 zhōng** middle
   我 穿 中 号 的。
   Wǒ chuān zhōng hào de.
   I wear medium size.
2. **中级 zhōngjí** intermediate level
   这 是 中级 课程。
   Zhè shì zhōngjí kèchéng.
   This is an intermediate course.
3. **中国 Zhōngguó** China
   中国 是 世界 第三 大国。
   Zhōngguó shì shìjiè dìsān dàguó.
   China is the world's third largest country.
4. **中文 Zhōngwén** Chinese language
   我 看不懂 中文 报。
   Wǒ kànbudǒng Zhōngwén bào.
   I can't read Chinese newspapers.
5. **中餐 Zhōngcān** Chinese food
   我 爸爸 喜欢 吃 中餐。
   Wǒ bāba xǐhuan chī Zhōngcān.
   My father loves Chinese food.

The vertical stroke is in the middle of the rectangle. **4 strokes**

丨	冂	口	中									

29

美 **měi** beautiful

The character combines *lamb* 羊 and *big* 大 to give the idea of *perfection* or *beauty.*

Radical: 羊 **'sheep'** **Index # 133**

or 大 **'big'** **Index # 43**

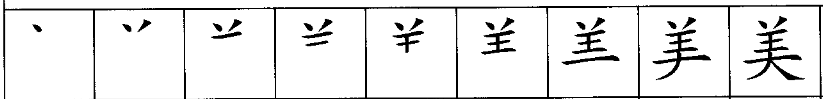
Character components: 羊 **+** 大

Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **美 měi** good, satisfactory
   这里的 东西 物美 价廉。
   Zhèlǐ de dōngxi wùměi-jiālián.
   The things here are good and inexpensive.
2. **美丽 měilì** beautiful
   这里的 风景 很 美丽。
   Zhèlǐ de fēngjǐng hěn měilì.
   The scenery here is beautiful.
3. **美好 měihǎo** fine, happy
   我的 童年 是一个 美好 的 回忆。
   Wǒde tóngnián shì yí ge měihǎo de huíyì.
   I have good memories of my childhood.
4. **美化 měihuà** beautify
   我们 应该 尽 可能 美化 环境。
   Wǒmen yīnggāi jǐn kěnéng měihuà huánjìng.
   We should try our best to beautify the environment.
5. **美国 Měiguó** USA
   美国 在 北 美洲。
   Měiguó zài Běi Měizhōu.
   The United States is in North America.

The last two strokes taper off. **9 strokes**



30 **Full form**

吗 **ma** [particle] 嗎

The character combines *mouth* 口 which signifies *asking*, while the phonetic 马 gives the sound *ma*. Note that 吗 is always pronounced in the neutral tone.

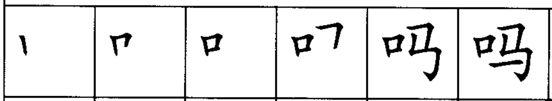
Radical: 口 **'mouth'** **Index # 50**

Character components: 口 **+** 马 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **吗** **ma** question particle
   你 找 我 吗?
   Nǐ zhǎo wǒ ma?
   Are you looking for me?
2. **好吗** **hǎo ma** good?
   你 好 吗?
   Nǐ hǎo ma?
   How are you?
3. **忙吗** **máng ma** busy?
   你 忙 吗?
   Nǐ máng ma?
   Are you busy?
4. **干吗** **gàn ma** what are you doing?
   你 晚上 干 吗?
   Nǐ wǎnshang gàn ma?
   What will you be doing in the evening?

马 **should be upright.** **6 strokes**



Quiz 3 (21–30)

A. Look at the 9-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally from left to right or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

您	哪	贵
中	国	姓
是	人	美

	Word or phrase		Pinyin	Translation
(i)	贵	姓	Guìxìng	What's your name?
(ii)				
(iii)				

B. Refer to the characters in the 9-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin sentences into characters. You might like to check their English meaning in the Key. Look up the characters you have learnt in previous sets.

(i)	Qǐngwèn, nín guìxìng?									
(ii)	Qǐngwèn, guìguó shì nǎguó?									
(iii)	Qǐngwèn, nǐ shì nǎguórén?									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)		(ii)	
哪 ge	fine, happy	中 wén	population
国 qìng	which one	是 de	Chinese food
哪 xiē	beautiful	hái 是	name
美 lì	country	人 kǒu	Chinese language
美好	which ones	姓名	or
国 jiā	National Day	中 cān	yes

31

他 **tā** he

The character combines *person* 亻 and *also* 也 to suggest the idea of 'that male person also.' Thus it means *the third person.*

Radical: 亻 **'upright person'** **Index # 19**

Character components: 亻 **+** 也 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **他 tā** he
   他 是 我的 老朋友。
   Tā shì wǒde lǎopéngyou.
   He's an old friend of mine.

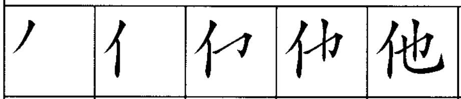
2. **他们 tāmen** they
   他们 是 法国人， 不是 美国人。
   Tāmen shì Fǎguórén, búshì Měiguórén.
   They're French, not American.

3. **他人 tārén** others
   别 吵， 这样 会 影响 他人。
   Bié chǎo, zhèyàng huì yǐngxiǎng tārén.
   Don't make so much noise as this will disturb people.

4. **他妈的 tāmāde** damn it!
   他妈的，你 怎么 走路 看 也不看！
   Tāmāde, nǐ zěnme zǒulù kàn yě bùkàn!
   Damn you, why don't you watch where you're going!

5. **其他 qítā** other
   还有 什么 其他 事情 要 我们 做 吗？
   Háiyǒu shénme qítā shìqing yào wǒmen zuò ma?
   Is there anything else you want us to do?

The third stroke ends with a hook. **5 strokes**



32

她 **tā** she

The character is a modern version of the pronoun 他 *he*, using the idea of *female* 女 and *also* 也 to suggest the idea of ‘that female person also.’ Thus it means *she*.

Radical: 女 **‘female’**

Index # 65

Character components: 女 **+** 也

Character configuration: ◫

Compounds, sentences and meanings

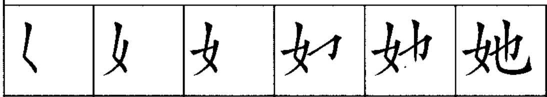
1. **她** **tā** she
   她 说 汉语 说得 很 好。
   Tā shuō Hânyŭ shuōde hĕn hăo.
   She speaks Chinese very well.

2. **她的** **tāde** her, hers
   她的 汉语 说得 很 地道。
   Tāde Hânyŭ shuōde hĕn dĭdao.
   Her spoken Mandarin is very idiomatic.

3. **她们** **tāmen** they, them (female)
   你认得 她们 是 谁 吗?
   Nĭ rènde tāmen shì shéi/shuí ma?
   Do you know who these girls/women are?

4. **她们的** **tāmende** their, theirs (female)
   她们的 衣服 都 很 时髦。
   Tāmende yīfu dōu hĕn shímáo.
   The clothes they are wearing are very fashionable.

The fourth stroke ends with a hook. **6 strokes**



33 **Full form**

谁 **shuí/shéi** who 誰

The full character expresses the idea of asking for the identity of a *person,* or *who,* with the combination of the idea of *speech* 言 and the phonetic 隹, which contains *person.*

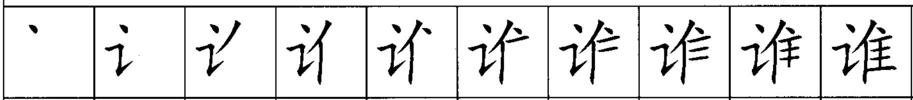
Radical: 讠 **'word'** **Index # 9**

Character components: 讠 + 隹 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **谁** **shuí/shéi** who
   有 谁 能 帮助 我 就 好了!
   Yǒu shuí/shéi néng bāngzhù wǒ jiù hǎo le!
   If only someone could help me!
2. **谁的** **shuí/shéi'de** whose
   这 是 谁的 中文 课本?
   Zhè shì shuí/shéi'de Zhōngwén kèběn?
   Whose Chinese textbook is this?
3. **谁知道** **shuí/shéi zhīdao** no one knows
   我 本 是 跟 她 开 玩笑, 谁 知道 她 生气 了。
   Wǒ běn shì gēn tā kāi wánxiào, shéi zhīdao tā shēngqì le.
   I was only joking with her, I didn't expect her to get angry.

There is equal spacing between the horizontal lines. **10 strokes**



34

的 **de** [particle]

Pronounced in the neutral tone. This particle, often indicating ownership, is the most frequently used character in Chinese.

Radical: 白 **'white'** **Index # 125**

Character components: 白 + 勺 **Character configuration:** ◫

Compounds, sentences and meanings

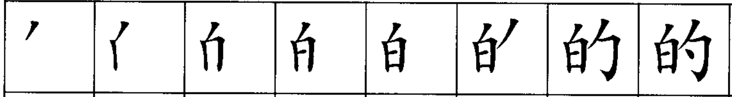
1. **的** **de** particle
   她 有 一 双 大大 的 眼睛。
   Tā yǒu yī shuāng dàdà de yǎnjing.
   She has big eyes (literally, a pair of big eyes).

2. **辣的** **là de** chilli hot
   我 爱 吃 辣的。
   Wǒ ài chī là de.
   I love spicy food.

3. **昨天的** **zuótiān de** yesterday's
   这 是 昨天 的 报。
   Zhè shì zuótiān de bào.
   This is yesterday's newspaper.

4. **有的** **yǒude** some
   有的 是 新 的，有的 是 旧 的。
   Yǒude shì xīn de, yǒude shì jiù de.
   Some are new, some are old.

Write the final stroke firmly. **8 strokes**



35

朋 **péng** friend

The character signifies two *friends* standing side by side.

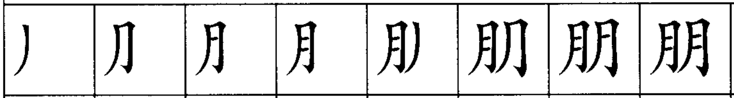
Radical: 月 **'flesh/moon'** **Index # 103**

Character components: 月 **+** 月 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **朋** **péng** friend
   昨晚 亲朋 戚友 聚 在 一起 真 高兴。
   Zuówǎn qīn-péng qī-yǒu jù zài yìqǐ zhēn gāoxìng.
   It was very happy to have relatives and friends gathered together last night.
2. **朋友** **péngyou** friend
   你 有 中国 朋友 吗?
   Nǐ yǒu Zhōngguó péngyou ma?
   Do you have any Chinese friends?
3. **男朋友** **nánpéngyou** boy friend
   她 跟 男朋友 住 在一起。
   Tā gēn nánpéngyou zhù zài yìqǐ.
   She lives with her boy friend.
4. **女朋友** **nǚpéngyou** girl friend
   你 有 女朋友 了 没有?
   Nǐ yǒu nǚpéngyou le měiyou?
   Do you have a steady girl friend?
5. **老朋友** **lǎopéngyou** old friend
   难得 有 机会 跟 老朋友 聚 在 一起。
   Nándě yǒu jīhuì gēn lǎopéngyou jù zài yìqǐ.
   Old friends don't often get the chance to meet.

The right component is written slightly wider. **8 strokes**



36

友 **yǒu** friend

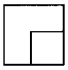
The character depicts two hands, a symbol of *friendship*.

Radical: 又 **'again'**

Index # 24

Character components: 𠂇 + 又

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **友** **yǒu** friend
   他是我十多年的好友。
   Tā shì wǒ shí duō nián de hǎo yǒu.
   He has been my good friend for over ten years.

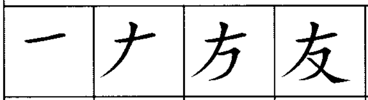
2. **友情** **yǒuqíng** friendship
   他很重友情。
   Tā hěn zhòng yǒuqíng.
   He values friendship greatly.

3. **友谊** **yǒuyì** friendship
   友谊第一，比赛第二。
   Yǒuyì dìyī, bǐsài dì'èr.
   Friendship first, competition second.

4. **友好** **yǒuhǎo** friendly
   他对人很友好。
   Tā duì rén hěn yǒuhǎo.
   He's a friendly person.

5. **走亲访友** **zǒu-qīn fǎng-yǒu** visiting relatives and friends
   中国普通的老百姓走亲访友都是骑自行车。
   Zhōngguó pǔtōng de lǎobǎixìng zǒu-qīn fǎng-yǒu dōu shì qí zìxíngchē.
   Ordinary people in China use bicycles to visit their relatives and friends.

The long horizontal stroke covers 又 . **4 strokes**



37

学 **xuē** learn

Full form

學

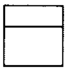
The character combines a *child* 子 studying under a *roof* 𭕄 to suggest *learning*.

Radical: 子 **'child'**

Index # 67

Character components: 𭕄 + 子

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **学** **xuē** study, learn
   只要 努力，一定 能 学会。
   Zhǐyāo nǔlī, yídīng néng xuēhuì.
   If you work hard, you will master it.

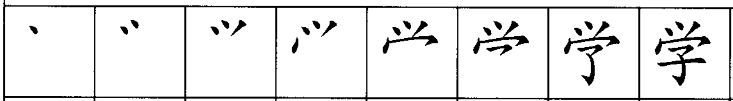
2. **学生** **xuēsheng** student
   中国 学生 很 认真 学习。
   Zhōngguō xuēsheng hěn rènzhēn xuēxí.
   Chinese students are very studious.

3. **学习** **xuēxí** learn
   应该 学习 别人 的 长处。
   Yīnggāi xuēxí biéren de chāngchù.
   One should learn from others' strong points.

4. **学校** **xuēxiào** school
   这 个 学校 有 点儿 名气。
   Zhè ge xuēxiào yǒu diǎnr míngqì.
   This school has a good reputation.

5. **学费** **xuēfèi** tuition fees
   念 大学 一 年 的 学费 是 多少？
   Niān dàxuē yì niān de xuēfèi shì duōshao?
   How much are the annual university tuition fees?

The first two dots slant to the right. **8 strokes**



38

不 **bù / bú** not

The character is usually pronounced in the 4th tone except when it is followed by another 4th tone syllable, which changes it into the 2nd tone.

Radical: 一 **'horizontal stroke'** **Index # 2**

Character component: 不 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **不 bù** not
   昨天 他 说 今天 不 来了。
   Zuótiān tā shuō jīntiān bù lái le.
   He said yesterday that he won't be coming today.

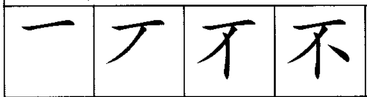
2. **不多不少 bùduō bùshǎo** just right
   你 买 的 水果 不多 不少， 正 好。
   Nǐ mǎi de shuǐguǒ bùduō bùshǎo, zhèng hǎo.
   You bought just the right amount of fruit — not too much, not too little.

3. **不错 búcuò** quite good
   这 个 字 写得 不错。
   Zhè ge zì xiěde búcuò.
   This character is quite well written.

4. **不好意思 bùhǎo yìsi** embarrassed
   让 你久 等 了，真 不 好意思。
   Ràng nǐ jiǔ děng le, zhēn bù hǎo yìsi.
   I'm sorry to have kept you waiting.

5. **不久 bùjiǔ** not for a long time
   你 走了 不久，他 就 来 了。
   Nǐ zǒule bùjiǔ, tā jiù lái le.
   He came soon after you left.

The last stroke ends firmly. **4 strokes**



39

英 yīng hero

The character originally meant *flower*, it combines the grass radical 艹 and the phonetic 央. It means *outstanding.*

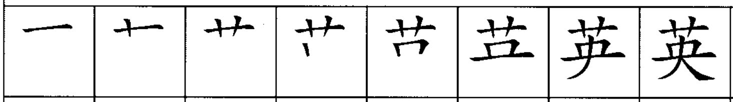
Radical: 艹 **'grass'** **Index # 42**

Character components: 艹 **+** 央 **Character configuration:** ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **英** **yīng** hero
   学校 开了一个 群英会 庆祝
   Xuéxiào kāile yí ge qúnyīnghuì qìngzhù
   运动会 的结束。
   yùndònghuì de jiéshù.
   The school organized a celebration for the participants at the end of the sports carnival.
2. **英俊** **yīngjùn** handsome
   这 个 小伙子 长得 很 英俊。
   Zhè ge xiǎohuǒzi zhǎngde hěn yīngjùn.
   This young lad is quite handsome.
3. **英国** **Yīngguó** England
   每年 去 英国 的 人 很多。
   Měinián qù Yīngguó de rén hěnduō.
   Many people travel to the UK every year.
4. **英语** **Yīngyǔ** English language
   中国 有 很多 人 学 英语。
   Zhōngguó yǒu hěnduō rén xué Yīngyǔ.
   Many people in China study English.
5. **英里** **yīnglǐ** mile
   美国 还 用 英里， 不用 公里。
   Měiguó hái yòng yīnglǐ, búyòng gōnglǐ.
   The United States still uses miles, not kilometers.

The seventh stroke crosses the fifth stroke. **8 strokes**



40

文 **wēn** script, language

The character represents a pattern used on ancient earthenware. It took on the meaning of character or *writing*.

Radical: 文 **'script'**

Index # 73

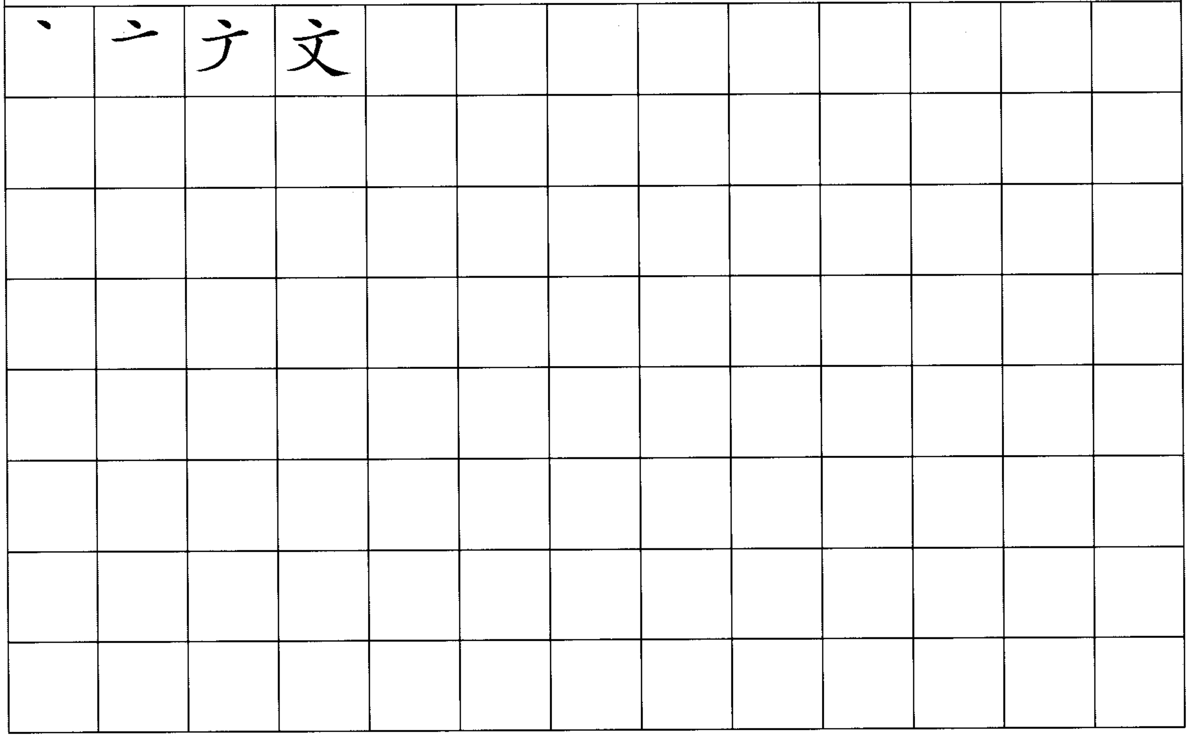
Character components: 亠 + 乂

Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **文 wēn** language, script
   这 篇 文章 写得 文 不 对题。
   Zhè piān wēnzhāng xiěde wēn bǘ duì tí.
   This essay was irrelevant to the topic.
2. **英文 Yīngwēn** English language
   你的 英文 说得 很 好。
   Nǐde Yīngwēn shuōde hěn hǎo.
   You speak English very well.
3. **文字 wēnzì** written language
   这 是 有 文字 可考 的历史。
   Zhè shì yǒu wēnzī kěkǎo de lìshǐ.
   This is a documented history.
4. **文化 wēnhuà** civilization
   我 想 研究 中国 文化。
   Wǒ xiǎng yánjiū Zhōngguō wēnhuà.
   I want to study Chinese civilization.
5. **文学 wēnxuē** literature
   我 想 研究 中国 文学。
   Wǒ xiǎng yánjiū Zhōngguō wēnxuē.
   I want to study Chinese literature.

The third stroke sweeps left. **4 strokes**



Quiz 4 (31–40)

A. Look at the 9-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be found horizontally from left to right or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

				Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
她	朋	友	(i)					
学	英	文	(ii)					
不	谁	的	(iii)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 9-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin sentences into characters. You might like to check their English meaning in the Key. Note that the pronouns for *he* or *she* have the same pronunciation *tā* but are written with different characters. Check the character for *‘he.’*

(i)	Shuí/shéi’de péngyou?									
(ii)	Tā xué buxué Zhōngwén?									
(iii)	Bù, tā xué Yīngwén.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

中文
文 huà
là 的
yǒu 的
zuótiān 的
英 guó
英 lǐ
英文

the United Kingdom
spicy (chilli hot)
English language
Chinese language
yesterday’s
civilization
some
mile

(ii)

nǚ 朋友
lǎo 朋友
友好
学 sheng
学 xí
学 xiào
不 jiǔ
不 shǎo

study
girl friend
school
a short time
old friend/s
quite a few
friendly
student

41

会 **huì** able to

Full form

會

The simplified form of the character combines *person* 人 with *speak* 云 to give the idea of people speaking in a *meeting*.

Radical: 人 **'person'**

Index # 18

Character components: 人 + 云

Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **会** **huì** be able to
   我 会 英语，不会 法语。
   Wǒ huì Yīngyǔ, bùhuì Fǎyǔ.
   I speak English but I don't speak French.

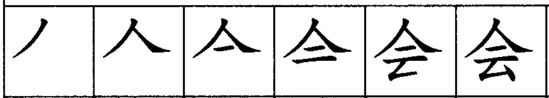
2. **会** **huì** be likely to
   明天 会 下雨 吗？
   Míngtiān huì xiàyǔ ma?
   Will it rain tomorrow?

3. **一会儿** **yīhuìr** a moment
   请 你 等 一会儿。
   Qǐng nǐ děng yīhuìr.
   Please wait for a while.

4. **会话** **huìhuà** conversation
   学 语言 应该 多 听 会话。
   Xué yǔyán yīnggāi duō tīng huìhuà.
   You should listen to lots of conversation when learning a language.

5. **会议** **huìyì** meeting
   会议 进行 中， 请 勿 打搅。
   Huìyì jìnxíng zhōng, qǐng wù dǎjiǎo.
   Meeting in progress, please do not disturb.

The last stroke ends firmly. **6 strokes**



42

写 **xiě** write

Full form

寫

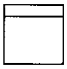
The simplifed form combines *flat roof* 冖 with the character 与 and in the process loses the dot on the top. It means *to write.*

Radical: 冖 **'flat roof'**

Index # 8

Character components: 冖 + 与

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **写** **xiě** write
   这个字写得很好。
   Zhè ge zì xiěde hěn hǎo.
   This character is well-written.

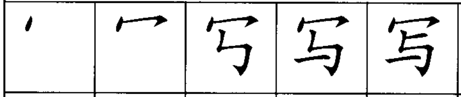
2. **写作** **xiězuò** writing
   我觉得写作最难学。
   Wǒ juéde xiězuò zuì nán xué.
   I think writing is the hardest thing to learn.

3. **大写** **dàxiě** upper case/capital letter
   名字缩写应该用大写。
   Míngzi suōxiě yīnggāi yòng dàxiě.
   Initials for names should be written in capital letters.

4. **小写** **xiǎoxiě** lower case
   一般的词应该用小写。
   Yībān de cí yīnggāi yòng xiǎoxiě.
   Ordinary words should be written in lower case.

5. **书写** **shūxiě** hand-written
   书写没有打印好看。
   Shūxiě méiyǒu dǎyìn hǎokàn.
   Handwriting doesn't look as good as printing.

The third stroke has two bends ending with a hook. **5 strokes**



43

多

duō many, much

The character combines two evenings or moons to mean *many*.

Radical: 夕 **'evening'**

Index # 56

Character components: 夕 **+** 夕

Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **多 duō** many
   里面 有 很多 人。
   Lǐmiàn yǒu hěnduō rén.
   There are many people inside.

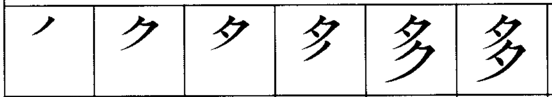
2. **多少 duōshao** how many
   你 认识 多少 汉字?
   Nǐ rènshi duōshao Hànzì?
   How many Chinese characters do you know?

3. **多半 duōbàn** more often than not
   星期天 他 多半 上 这儿来。
   Xīngqītiān tā duōbàn shàng zhèr lái.
   He comes over on Sundays quite often.

4. **多数 duōshù** majority
   我们 是 多数。
   Wǒmen shì duōshù.
   We are in the majority.

5. **多么 duōme** how, what
   多么 新鲜 的 水果 啊!
   Duōme xīnxiān de shuǐguǒ a!
   How fresh the fruit is!

The top component rides on top of the lower one. **6 strokes**



44

少

shǎo/shào few, less; young

The character combines *small* 小 with an added 丿 stroke representing a sword, cutting a small object even smaller. It means *few*.

Radical: 小 **'small'**

Index # 49

Character components: 小 + 丿

Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **少** shao few
上海 很少 下雪。
Shànghǎi hěnshǎo xiàxuě.
It seldom snows in Shanghai.

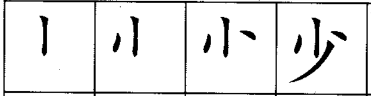
2. **不少** bùshǎo quite a lot
这 次 旅行 花了 不少 钱。
Zhè cì lǚxíng huāle bùshǎo qián.
I spent quite a lot of money on this trip.

3. **少数** shǎoshù minority
少数 服从 多数。
Shǎoshù fúcóng duōshù.
The minority is subordinate to the majority.

4. **多少** duōshao how many
你 认识 多少 汉字?
Nǐ rènshi duōshao Hànzì?
How many Chinese characters do you know?

5. **少年** shàonián juvenile
西方 国家 的 少年 犯罪 比较 多。
Xīfāng guójiā de shàonián fànzuì bǐjiào duō.
Juvenile delinquency is more common in Western countries.

The last stroke tapers off. **4 strokes**



45

个 **ge** [classifier]

Full form

個

This character is pronounced in the neutral tone when used as *a general classifier* for most nouns. When used in the 4th tone, 个 means *individual.*

Radical: 人 **'person'**

Index # 18

Character components: 人 + 丨

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **个** **ge** classifier
   洗个 澡，休息 休息。
   Xǐ ge zǎo, xiūxi xiūxi.
   Have a shower and then rest.
2. **两个** **liǎng ge** a couple of
   请 给 我 两 个。
   Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎng ge.
   Please give me two.
3. **个个** **gègè** each
   你的 孩子 个个 都 很 聪明。
   Nǐde háizi gègè dōu hěn cōngmíng.
   All your children are very bright.
4. **个人** **gèrén** individual
   我 个人 认为 这样 做 不对。
   Wǒ gèrén rènwéi zhèyàng zuò búduì.
   In my opinion this is not the way to do it.
5. **个别** **gèbié** individual (adjective)
   我 喜欢 个别 辅导。
   Wǒ xǐhuan gèbié fǔdǎo.
   I prefer individual tuition.

The second stroke joins the first stroke at the top. **3 strokes**

丿	人	个										

46

汉 **Hàn** ethnic Han Chinese

Full form

漢

The full form combines *water* 氵 with the phonetic 莫 to mean *the dominant ethnic group in China*. The phonetic is replaced by the stereotype 又 in simplification.

Radical: 氵 '3 drops of water'

Index # 32

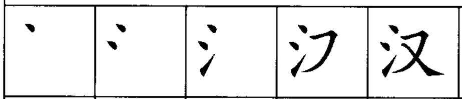
Character components: 氵 + 又

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **汉 hàn** person
   不 到 长城 非 好汉。
   Bú dào Chángchéng fēi hǎohàn.
   You are not a true person if you haven't been to the Great Wall of China.
2. **汉语 Hànyǔ** Chinese language
   你的 汉语 说得 很 不错。
   Nǐde Hànyǔ shuōde hěn búcuò.
   You speak Chinese very well.
3. **汉字 Hànzì** Chinese characters
   我 觉得 汉字 很 有 意思。
   Wǒ juéde Hànzì hěn yǒu yìsi.
   I think Chinese characters are very interesting.
4. **汉族 Hànzú** ethnic Han Chinese
   汉族 在 新疆 占 少数。
   Hànzú zài Xīnjiāng zhàn shǎoshù.
   Ethnic Hans are in the minority in Xīnjiāng.
5. **汉学 Hànxué** Chinese studies
   她 研究 汉学。
   Tā yánjiū Hànxué.
   She is doing research in Chinese studies.

The third stroke simply lifts with no bend. **5 strokes**



47

认 **rèn** recognize

Full form

認

The full form combines *speech* 言 and the phonetic 忍 to suggest the idea of *recognition.* The simplified form is 认 .

Radical: 讠 **‘word’**

Index # 9

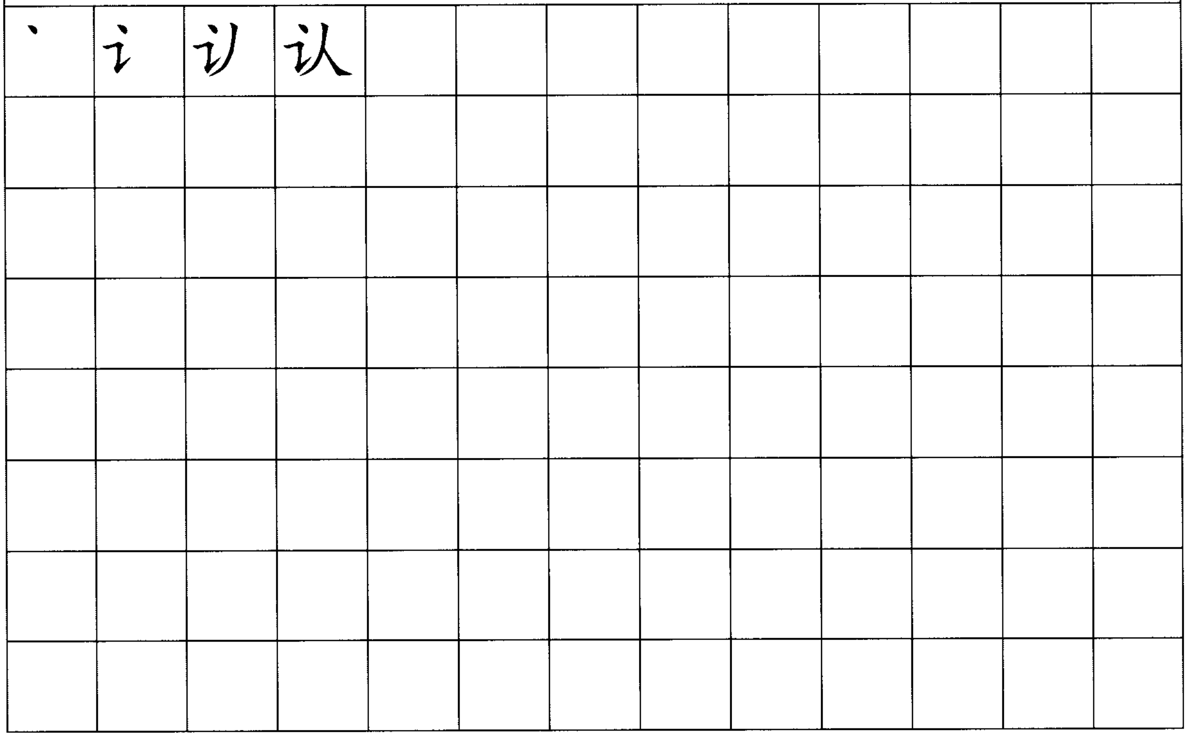
Character components: 讠 + 人

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **认** **rèn** recognize
   你 变 多了，都 认不出 你了。
   Nǐ biàn duō le, dōu rènbuchū nǐ le.
   You’ve changed so much that I hardly recognized you.
2. **认识** **rènshi** be acquainted with
   认识 你，很 高兴。
   Rènshi nǐ, hěn gāoxìng.
   I’m pleased to meet you.
3. **认字** **rènzì** read characters
   我 现在 学 认字。
   Wǒ xiànzài xué rènzì.
   I’m learning to read characters.
4. **认得** **rènde** know, recognize
   你 还 认得 我 吗？
   Nǐ hái rènde wǒ ma?
   Do you still recognize me?
5. **认真** **rènzhēn** conscientious
   她 工作 很 认真。
   Tā gōngzuò hěn rènzhēn.
   She is conscientious in her work.

The last stroke joins the previous stroke mid-way down. **4 strokes**



48

识 **shí** know

Full form

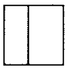
識

The full form combines *speech* 言 and the component 戠 to suggest the idea of *knowledge*. The simplified form is 识.

Radical: 讠 **'word'**

Index # 9

Character components: 讠 + 只

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **识** **shí** know
   这 个 农民 一字不识。
   Zhè ge nóngmín yīzì-bùshí.
   This peasant is completely illiterate (literally, knows not one word).

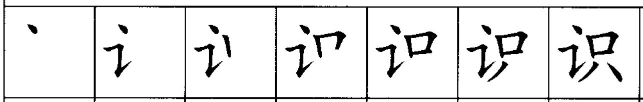
2. **识别** **shíbié** distinguish
   他 不能 识别 真假 朋友。
   Tā bùnéng shíbié zhēnjiǎ péngyou.
   He cannot distinguish true friends from false ones.

3. **识货** **shíhuò** able to tell value in goods
   买 东西 要 识货。
   Mǎi dōngxi yào shíhuò.
   You need to know the value of things when shopping.

4. **识字** **shízì** become literate
   这 是 识字 课本。
   Zhè shì shízì kèběn.
   This is a reading primer.

5. **学识** **xuéshí** knowledge
   这 位 老先生 的 学识 很 广。
   Zhè wèi lǎoxiānsheng de xuéshí hěn guǎng.
   This old gentleman is very learned.

The last stroke finishes firmly. **7 strokes**



49

说 **shuō** speak

Full form

說

The character combines *speech* 讠 and *exchange* 兑 to give the idea of oral communication between people. It means *to speak.*

Radical: 讠 **'word'**

Index # 9

Character components: 讠 + 兑

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **说 shuō** speak
   请 听 我 说。
   Qǐng tīng wǒ shuō.
   Please listen to what I have to say.

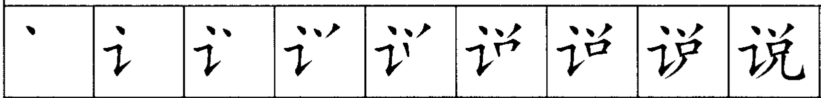
2. **说话 shuōhuà** speak
   我 爸爸不 太爱 说话。
   Wǒ bàba bú tài ài shuōhuà.
   My father doesn't like to talk much.

3. **说谎 shuōhuǎng** tell a lie
   小孩子 不要 学 说谎。
   Xiǎoháizi búyào xué shuōhuǎng.
   Children should learn not to tell lies.

4. **说不定 shuōbudìng** maybe
   说不定 他 已经 走 了。
   Shuōbudìng tā yǐjīng zǒu le.
   Maybe he's already left.

5. **说服 shuōfú** convince
   她 说服了 我。
   Tā shuōfúle wǒ.
   She has convinced me.

The last stroke ends with a hook. **9 strokes**



50 **Full form**

语 **yǔ** language 語

The character combines *speech* 讠, *mouth* 口 and *five* 五 to mean *talking* or *language.*

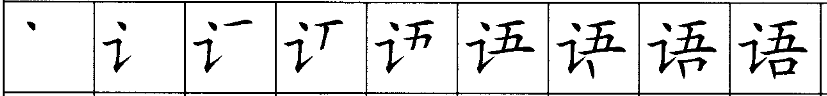
Radical: 讠 **'word'** **Index # 9**

Character components: 讠 **+** 五 **+** 口 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **语 yǔ** language
   你的 法语 说得 很 好。
   Nǐde Fǎyǔ shuōde hěn hǎo.
   You speak French very well.
2. **外语 wàiyǔ** foreign language
   我 没 学过 外语。
   Wǒ méi xuéguo wàiyǔ.
   I have never studied a foreign language.
3. **语法 yǔfǎ** grammar
   中文 语法不 太 难。
   Zhōngwén yǔfǎ bú tài nán.
   Chinese grammar is not too difficult.
4. **语言 yǔyán** language
   北京 语言 文化 大学。
   Běijīng Yǔyán Wénhuà Dàxué
   Beijing Language and Culture University
5. **语气 yǔqì** manner of speaking
   她 用 婉转 的 语气 说。
   Tā yòng wǎnzhuǎn de yǔqì shuō.
   She speaks in a tactful manner.

语 is easily confused with 话. **9 strokes**



Quiz 5 (41–50)

A. Look at the 9-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally from left to right or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

				Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
多	少	说	(i)					
写	会	汉	(ii)					
认	识	语	(iii)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 9-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin sentences into characters and check their English meaning in the Key. Look up characters you have learnt in previous sets.

(i)	Nǐ huì shuō Hànyǔ ma?									
(ii)	Nǐ huì buhuì xiě Hànzì?									
(iii)	Nǐ huì xiě duōshao Hànzì?									
(iv)	Tā bùhuì xiě Hànzì.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)		(ii)	
多 shù	minority	一会儿	become literate
少 shù	speak	会 huà	Chinese language
说 huà	English language	写 zuò	a moment
说不 dìng	maybe	大写	writing
说 fú	majority	个人	conversation
wài 语	convince	认 de	capital letters
英语	grammar	识字	individual
语 fǎ	foreign language	汉语	recognize

CHARACTER BUILDING 1 (1–50)

A. Memorize the following radicals and their English names. As a review exercise, write the pinyin and meaning of each example:

1. [一] ‘horizontal stroke’

一 (yi) one ; 三 (____) ____ ;
五 (____) ____ ; 七 (____) ____ ;
不 (____) ____ .

2. [丿] ‘downward-left stroke’

九 (____) ____ ; 么 (____) ____ ;

3. [讠] ‘word’

请 (____) ____ ; 谁 (____) ____ ;
认 (____) ____ ; 识 (____) ____ ;
语 (____) ____ ; 说 (____) ____ .

4. [人] ‘person’

人 (____) ____ ; 个 (____) ____ ;
会 (____) ____ .

5. [亻] ‘upright person’

你 (____) ____ ; 他 (____) ____ ;
什 (____) ____ .

6. [口] ‘mouth’

叫 (____) ____ ; 哪 (____) ____ ;
名 (____) ____ ; 吗 (____) ____ .

7. [囗] ‘4-sided frame’

四 (____) ____ ; 国 (____) ____ ;

8. [女] ‘female’

好 (____) ____ ; 她 (____) ____ ;
姓 (____) ____ .

B. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters classified under the following radicals.

1. [丨] 'vertical stroke' 中 (________) ______________
2. [八] 'eight' 八 (________) ______________
3. [冖] 'flat roof' 写 (________) ______________
4. [二] 'two' 二 (________) ______________
5. [亠] 'top of 六' 六 (________) ______________
6. [十] 'ten' 十 (________) ______________
7. [又] 'again' 友 (________) ______________
8. [氵] '3 drops of water' 汉 (________) ______________
9. [艹] 'grass' 英 (________) ______________
10. [小] 'small' 少 (________) ______________
11. [夕] 'sunset' 多 (________) ______________
12. [文] 'script' 文 (________) ______________
13. [心] 'heart' 您 (________) ______________
14. [戈] 'spear' 我 (________) ______________
15. [日] 'sun' 是 (________) ______________
16. [贝] 'sea shell' 贵 (________) ______________
17. [白] 'white' 白 (________) ______________
18. [羊] 'sheep' 美 (________) ______________

C. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters which share the following components. (Note that these components are not necessarily used as radicals.)

1. [夕] 名 (________) ______________; 多 (________) ______________.
2. [口] 名 (________) ______________; 问 (________) ______________.
3. [中] 中 (________) ______________; 贵 (________) ______________.
4. [子] 好 (________) ______________; 学 (________) ______________.
字 (________) ______________;
5. [又] 汉 (________) ______________; 友 (________) ______________.
6. [也] 他 (________) ______________; 她 (________) ______________.
7. [人] 人 (________) ______________; 认 (________) ______________.
8. [小] 你 (________) ______________; 少 (________) ______________.

REVIEW 1 (1–50)

The following are words and phrases classified under parts of speech. Write the pinyin and meaning for each word/phrase.

Pronouns
我 (wǒ) I, me ; 我的 (________) ____________ :
你 (________) ____________ ; 你的 (________) ____________ ;
他 (________) ____________ ; 他的 (________) ____________ ;
她 (________) ____________ ; 她的 (________) ____________ .

Interrogative pronouns
什么 (________) ____________ ; 哪 (________) ____________ ;
谁 (________) ____________ ; 多少 (________) ____________ ;

Nouns
人 (________) ____________ ; 朋友 (________) ____________ ;
中文 (________) ____________ ; 英文 (________) ____________ ;
汉语 (________) ____________ ; 英语 (________) ____________ ;
汉字 (________) ____________ ; 中国 (________) ____________ ;
英国 (________) ____________ ; 美国 (________) ____________ .

Verbs
叫 (________) ____________ ; 姓 (________) ____________ ;
是 (________) ____________ ; 问 (________) ____________ ;
学 (________) ____________ ; 写 (________) ____________ ;
会 (________) ____________ ; 认识 (________) ____________ ;

Numbers
一 (________) ____________ ; 二 (________) ____________ ;
三 (________) ____________ ; 四 (________) ____________ ;
五 (________) ____________ ; 六 (________) ____________ ;
七 (________) ____________ ; 八 (________) ____________ ;
九 (________) ____________ ; 十 (________) ____________ ;

Classifiers
个 (________) ____________ .

Noun phrases
中文名字 (________________) ________________________ ;
英文名字 (________________) ________________________ ;
中国朋友 (________________) ________________________ ;
英国朋友 (________________) ________________________ ;
美国朋友 (________________) ________________________ ;
谁的朋友 (________________) ________________________ ;
哪国人 (________________) ________________________ .

WORD/SENTENCE PUZZLE 1

Find and CIRCLE words, phrases or sentences hidden in the puzzle. They can be found horizontally from left to right or vertically . The lines across and down are indicated by numbers. Write the meaning next to the pinyin. The first one is done for you.

ACROSS (left to right)

2. (i) Zhōngguō pēngyou *Chinese friend/s*
(ii) huì xiĕ ______
3. bù shuō ______
4. Nĭ rènshi duōshao Hànzì? ______
8. Guìguō shì năguō? ______

DOWN

1. Nĭ shì năguōrēn? ______
2. Yīngguō ______
3 (i) shízì ______
(ii) Nín guìxìng? ______
5 (i) bùshăo ______
(ii) shìde ______
6. Nĭ huì shuō Hànyŭ ma? ______
7. Mĕiguōrēn ______

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1	六	英	友	一	三	你	八
2	中	国	朋	友	叫	会	写
3	名	哪	写	您	不	说	十
4	你	认	识	多	少	汉	字
5	是	会	字	我	名	语	么
6	哪	七	五	英	多	吗	她
7	国	四	您	二	谁	他	美
8	人	的	贵	国	是	哪	国
9	问	请	姓	学	的	九	人

51

们 **men** [plural suffix]

Full form

們

The plural suffix is always pronounced in the neutral tone. It is mainly added to pronouns but occasionally used after nouns as a form of address for more than one person.

Radical: 亻 **'upright person'**

Index # 19

Character components: 亻 **+** 门

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **你们** **nǐmen** you (plural)
   请 你们 等 一下，我 马上 回来。
   Qǐng nǐmen děng yīxià, wǒ mǎshàng huílai.
   Please wait a moment, I'll be right back.

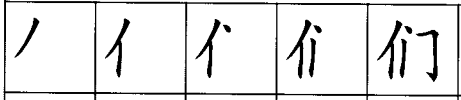
2. **咱们** **zánmen** we, us (referring to those spoken to)
   咱们 商量 一下。
   Zánmen shāngliang yīxià.
   Let's talk it over.

3. **女士们** **nǚshìmen** ladies
   女士们 先生们， 你们 好！
   Nǚshìmen, xiānshengmen, nǐmen hǎo!
   Ladies and gentlemen! Greetings!

4. **男士们** **nánshìmen** gentlemen
   通常 是 男士们 邀请 女士们 跳舞。
   Tōngcháng shì nánshìmen yāoqǐng nǚshìmen tiàowǔ.
   Generally it is the men who ask the ladies for a dance.

5. **哥儿们** **gērmen** buddies
   朋友 之间 分得 太 清 就 不够 哥儿们了。
   Péngyou zhījiān fēnde tài qīng jiù búgòu gērmen le.
   If friends become too calculating, then there's not much friendship between them.

The last stroke ends with a hook. **5 strokes**



52

有 yǒu have

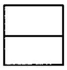
The character combines the pictograph 𠂇 , the figure of a *hand*, and *flesh* 月 to signify *flesh* in *hand*, thus giving the meaning of *to have* or *to exist*.

Radical: 月 'flesh/moon'

Index # 103

Character components: 𠂇 + 月

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **有** **yǒu** have, has
   我 有 一个 哥哥。
   Wǒ yǒu yí ge gēge.
   I have an older brother.

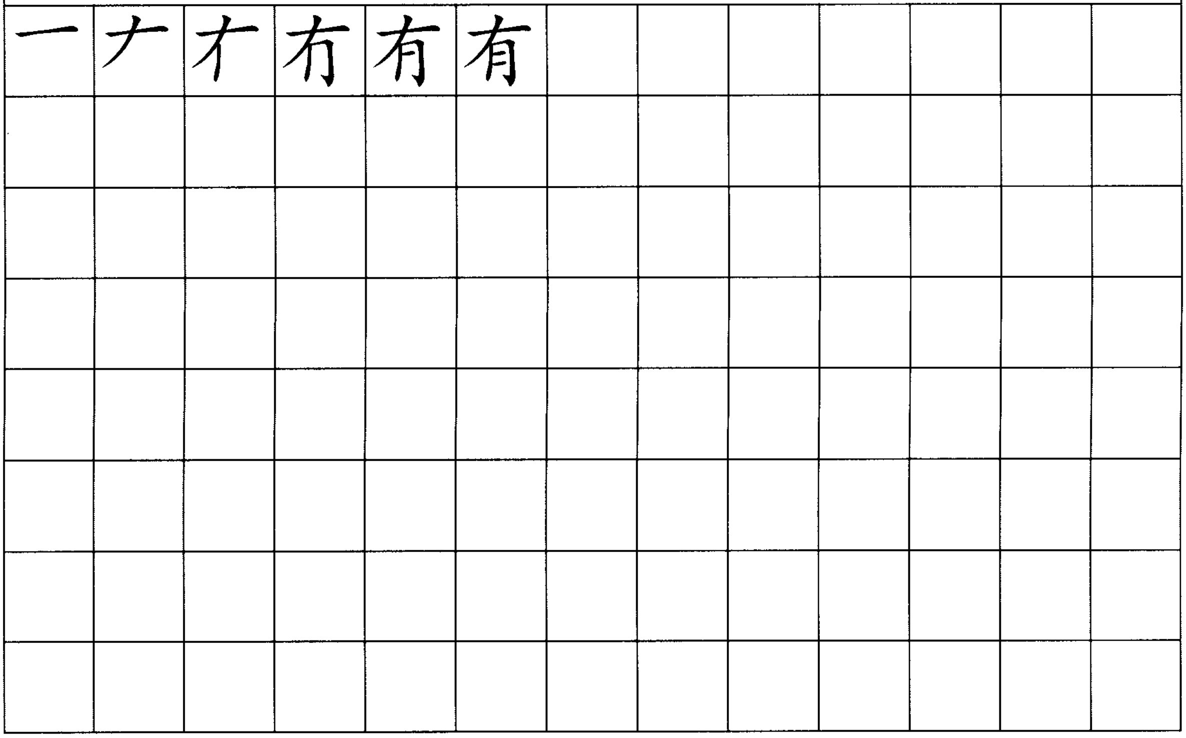
2. **有名** **yǒumíng** famous
   这 个 演员 很有名。
   Zhè ge yǎnyuán hěn yǒumíng.
   This actor is very famous.

3. **有钱** **yǒuqián** rich
   很多 有钱 人 住 在 这里。
   Hěnduō yǒuqián rén zhù zài zhèlǐ.
   Many rich people live here.

4. **有意思** **yǒu yìsi** interesting
   今天 的 晚会 很 有 意思。
   Jīntiān de wǎnhuì hěn yǒu yìsi.
   The performance tonight was enjoyable.

5. **有害** **yǒuhài** harmful
   吸烟 对 身体 有害。
   Xīyān duì shēntǐ yǒuhài.
   Smoking is harmful to one's health.

The stroke ends with a hook. **6 strokes**



53

没 **mēi** not have

Full form

沒

The full form combines *water* 氵 with the phonetic 殳 to give the idea of *death by drowning*, or *not have*.

Radical: 氵 **'3 drops of water'**

Index # 32

Character components: 氵 + 殳

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **没** **mēi** not have, did not
   昨天 银行 没 开门。
   Zuótiān yínháng mēi kāimēn.
   The bank was closed yesterday.

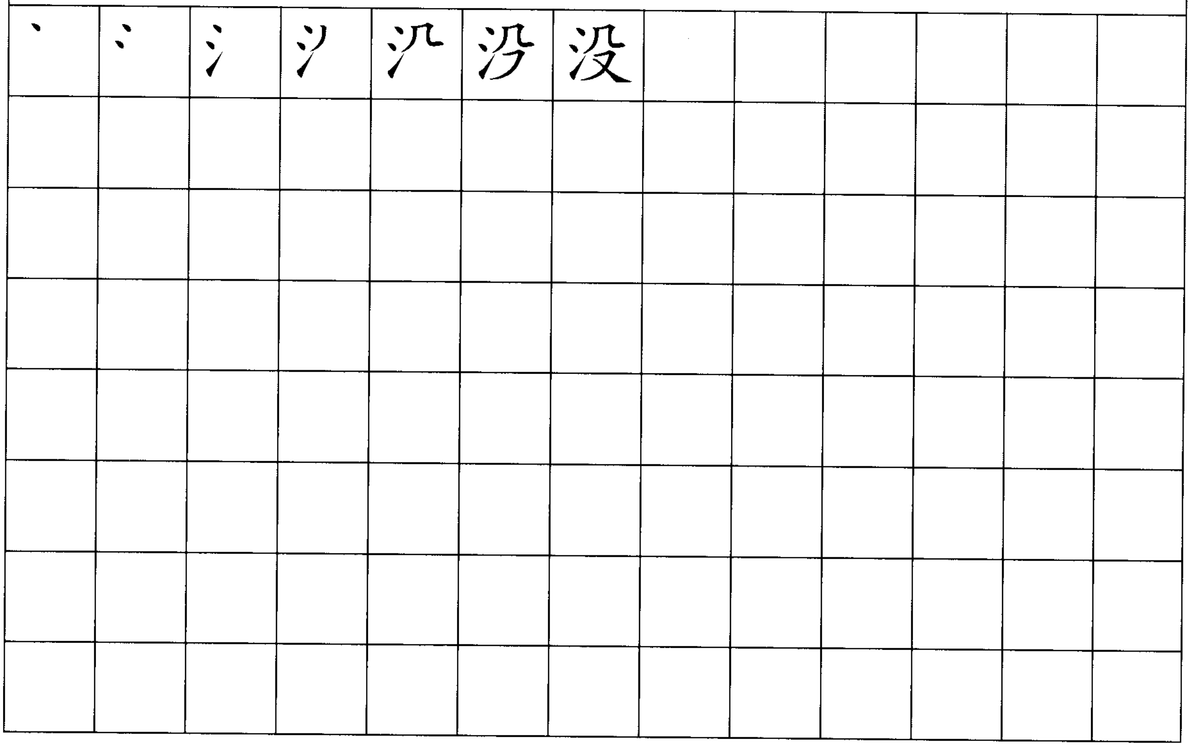
2. **没有** **mēiyǒu** not have
   里面 没有 人。
   Lǐmiàn mēiyǒu rēn.
   There's no one inside.

3. **没关系** **mēi guānxi** it doesn't matter
   他 来 不 来 都 没 关系。
   Tā lāi bu lāi dōu mēi guānxi.
   It doesn't matter if he comes or not.

4. **没意思** **mēiyìsi** boring
   这 本 书 没意思。
   Zhè běn shū mēiyìsi.
   This book is boring.

5. **没完没了** **mēiwān-mēiliǎo** endless
   她 这么 没完没了 的 唠叨，烦死 人 了。
   Tā zhème mēiwān-mēiliǎo de lāodao, fānsǐ rēn le.
   Her endless chattering is really driving me up the wall.

The third stroke lifts with no bend. **7 strokes**



54

和 **hē** and

The character combines *grain* 禾 and *mouth* 口 to suggest the idea of negotiating for *peace*.

Radical: 口 **'mouth'** **Index # 50**
or 禾 **'grain'** **Index # 124**
Character components: 禾 + 口
Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **和** **hé** and
   他和 我 一样 高。
   Tā hé wǒ yíyàng gāo.
   He's as tall as me.

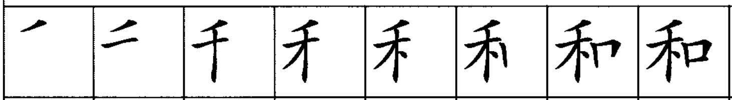
2. **和好** **héhǎo** become reconciled
   他们 吵过架， 现在 和好了。
   Tāmen chǎoguojià, xiànzài héhǎo le.
   They had a quarrel, but had made it up now.

3. **和平** **hépíng** peace
   我们 应该 和平 解决 问题。
   Wǒmen yīnggāi hépíng jiějué wèntí.
   We should resolve problems peacefully.

4. **和睦** **hémù** harmonious
   我们 一家 人 和睦 相处， 是 个 幸福 的 家庭。
   Wǒmen yì jiā rén hémù xiāngchǔ, shì ge xìngfú de jiātíng.
   My family gets on well together, ours is a happy family.

5. **和气** **héqì** amiable
   父亲 对 人 很 和气。
   Fùqin duì rén hěn héqì.
   My father is very friendly.

口 is slightly larger when written on the right. **8 strokes**



55

哥 **gē** older brother

The character signifies *older brother* carrying a sibling on his back.

Radical: 一 **'horizontal stroke'** **Index # 2**

or 口 **'mouth'** **Index # 50**

Character components: 可 **+** 可 **Character configuration:** ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **哥** **gē** older brother
   我 哥 去年 结婚 了。
   Wǒ gē qùnián jiēhūn le.
   My older brother married last year.

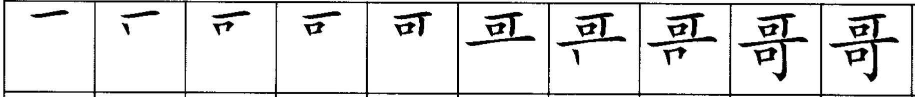
2. **哥哥** **gēge** older brother
   我 有 两 个哥哥。
   Wǒ yǒu liǎng ge gēge.
   I have two older brothers.

3. **大哥** **dàgē** eldest brother
   今天 是 我 大哥的 生日。
   Jīntiān shì wǒ dàgē de shēngrì.
   Today is my oldest brother's birthday.

4. **二哥** **èrgē** second eldest brother
   二哥 出国 读书 了。
   Èrgē chūguó dúshū le.
   My second older brother has gone abroad to study.

5. **哥儿们** **gērmen** buddies
   朋友 之间 分得太 清 就 不够 哥儿们了。
   Péngyou zhījiān fēnde tài qīng jiù búgòu gērmen le.
   If friends become too calculating, then there's not much mateship between them.

The bottom vertical stroke ends with a hook. **10 strokes**



56

姐 jiě older sister

The character combines *female* 女 and the phonetic 且 to give the idea of *older sister*.

Radical: 女 **'female'**

Index # 65

Character components: 女 **+** 且

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **姐 jiě** older sister
   我 姐 快 三十 岁了。
   Wǒ jiě kuài sānshí suì le.
   My older sister is nearly thirty.

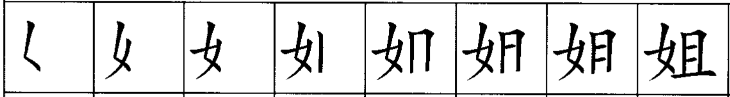
2. **二姐 èrjiě** second oldest sister
   我 二姐 大学 快 毕业了。
   Wǒ èrjiě dàxué kuài bìyè le.
   My second oldest sister will soon graduate from university.

3. **姐姐 jiějie** older sister
   我 姐姐 比 我 大十 岁。
   Wǒ jiějie bǐ wǒ dà shí suì.
   My older sister is 10 years older than me.

4. **姐夫 jiěfu** older sister's husband, brother-in-law
   我 姐夫 很 照顾 我。
   Wǒ jiěfu hěn zhàogu wǒ.
   My brother-in-law looks after me very well.

5. **小姐 xiǎojie** Miss
   王 小姐 今天 休假。
   Wáng xiǎojie jīntiān xiūjià.
   Miss Wang is off work today.

The last horizontal stroke is longer. **8 strokes**



57

弟 **dì** younger brother

The character depicts stakes bound with twine. The inverted eight 丷 represents *low*, and from this came *younger brother*, who is low in position and short in height.

Radical: 丷 **'eight'** **Index # 17**

Character components: 丷 **+** 弔 **Character configuration:** ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **弟 dì** younger brother
   三弟 今年 刚 进 中学。
   Sāndì jīnnián gāng jìn zhōngxué.
   My third youngest brother has just started secondary school.

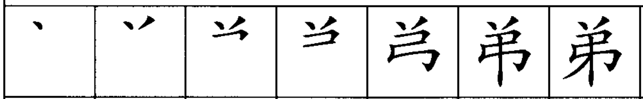
2. **弟弟 dìdi** younger brother
   你 有 没有 弟弟？
   Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu dìdi?
   Do you have a younger brother?

3. **弟兄 dìxiōng** brothers
   他就 弟兄 一 个。
   Tā jiù dìxiōng yí ge.
   He's the only son of the family.

4. **弟媳 dìxí** wife of younger brother, sister-in-law
   我 弟媳是 中国人。
   Wǒ dìxí shì Zhōngguórén.
   My younger brother's wife is Chinese.

5. **徒弟 túdì** disciple, follower
   他们 是 师父徒弟 关系。
   Tāmen shì shīfu túdì guānxi.
   Theirs is a master – disciple relationship.

The fifth stroke ends with a hook. **7 strokes**



58

妹 **mèi** younger sister

The character combines *immature* 未 and *female* 女 to mean *younger sister.*

Radical: 女 **'female'**

Index # 65

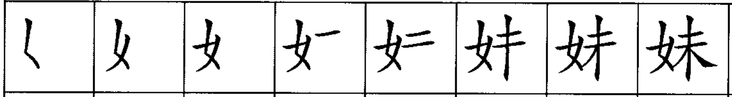
Character components: 女 **+** 未

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **妹 mèi** younger sister
   我 妹 还 很 小。
   Wǒ mèi hái hěn xiǎo.
   My younger sister is still quite small.
2. **三妹 sānmèi** third youngest sister
   我 三妹 在 中学 学习。
   Wǒ sānmèi zài zhōngxué xuéxí.
   My third youngest sister is in high school.
3. **小妹 xiǎomèi** youngest sister
   我 小妹 在 小学 学习。
   Wǒ xiǎomèi zài xiǎoxué xuéxí.
   My youngest sister is in primary school.
4. **妹夫 mèifu** younger sister's husband, brother-in-law
   我 妹夫 在 小学 教书。
   Wǒ mèifu zài xiǎoxué jiāoshū.
   My younger sister's husband teaches in a primary school.
5. **姐妹 jiěmèi** sisters
   她 没有 姐妹，只 有 一 个 哥哥。
   Tā méiyǒu jiěmèi, zhǐ yǒu yí ge gēge.
   She has no sisters, only an older brother.

The horizontal stroke on the right-hand side is longer than the one above. **8 strokes**



59

还 **hái/huán** still, return

Full form

還

The full form combines *movement* 辶 with the phonetic *cycle* 睘. Thus, it means to *return*. Another meaning is *still*.

Radical: 辶 **'movement'**

Index # 38

Character components: 不 + 辶

Character configuration: ⿺

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **还** **hái** still
   他 还 在 睡觉。
   Tā hái zài shuìjiào.
   He's still sleeping.

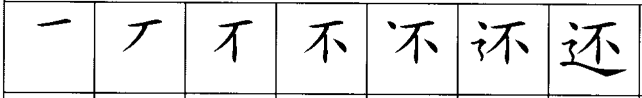
2. **还有** **hái yǒu** still more
   我 有 一 个姐姐, 还 有 一个 妹妹。
   Wǒ yǒu yí ge jiějie, hái yǒu yí ge mèimei.
   I have an older sister and a younger sister.

3. **还是** **háishi** or
   他 是 日本人 还是 韩国人?
   Tā shì Rìběnrén háishi Hánguórén?
   Is he Japanese or Korean?

4. **还** **huán** return
   下 个 月 我 就 还 你 钱。
   Xià ge yuè wǒ jiù huán nǐ qián.
   I'll repay the money next month.

5. **还价** **huánjià** counter-offer, bid
   如果 你 不 想 买 就 别 还价。
   Rúguǒ nǐ bù xiǎng mǎi jiù bié huánjià.
   Don't bid if you don't intend to buy.

Write the middle component before 辶. 7 strokes



60

两 liǎng two

Full form

兩

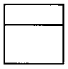
The character represents two people inside a room. It came to mean *a couple*.

Radical: 一 **'horizontal stroke'**

Index # 2

Character components: 一 + 冂 + 人 + 人

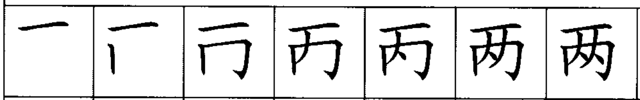
Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **两** **liǎng** two
   这件事过两天再说。
   Zhē jiān shī guō liǎng tiān zāi shuō.
   Let's leave this matter for a couple of days.
2. **两个** **liǎng ge** two (of something)
   那两个人是谁?
   Nā liǎng ge rēn shī shēi?
   Who are those two people?
3. **两次** **liǎng cī** twice
   我去过两次中国。
   Wǒ qūguo liǎng cī Zhōngguō.
   I've been to China twice.
4. **两岁** **liǎng suī** two years (age)
   我姐姐比我大两岁。
   Wǒ jiějie bī wǒ dā liǎng suī.
   My older sister is 2 years older than me.
5. **两半儿** **liǎngbānr** two halves
   把苹果切成两半儿。
   Bǎ pīngguǒ qiēchēng liǎngbānr.
   Cut the apple into halves.

从 joins the horizontal stroke. **7 strokes**



Quiz 6 (51–60)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally from left to right or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

姐	个	妹	弟
美	她	们	和
国	还	是	两
人	没	有	哥

	Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
(i)	美	国	人	Měiguórén	American/s
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and then check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Wǒ yǒu liǎng ge mèimei.									
(ii)	Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu jiějie?									
(iii)	Tāmen shì Měiguórén. (all females)									
(iv)	Tā yǒu gēge hé dìdi.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

dà 姐
二妹
dà 哥
xiǎo 姐
姐妹
xiǎo 妹
弟 xí
tú 弟

second younger sister
younger brother's wife
oldest sister
sisters
youngest sister
Miss
disciple
oldest brother

(ii)

没 guānxi
和 qì
还有
有 yìsi
两 cì
没 yìsi
有名
和 píng

twice
it doesn't matter
interesting
famous
peace
boring
still more
amicable

61

兄 **xiōng** older brother

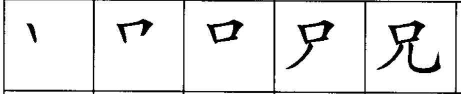
The character combines *mouth* 口 and *son* 儿 to refer to the *first son*.

Radical: 口 **'mouth'** **Index # 50**
or 儿 **'son'** **Index # 21**
Character component: 口 **+** 儿 **Character configuration:**

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **兄** **xiōng** older brother
   你 听过 "长 兄 当 父" 这 句 话 吗?
   Nǐ tīngguo "Zhǎng xiōng dāng fù" zhè jù huà ma?
   Have you heard of the saying that the "oldest brother assumes the authority of the father?"
2. **兄弟** **xiōngdì** brothers
   你 有 几个 兄弟 姐妹?
   Nǐ yǒu jǐ ge xiōngdì jiěmèi?
   How many brothers and sisters do you have?
3. **老兄** **lǎoxiōng** brother (polite form of address between males)
   老兄, 火车站 在 哪儿?
   Lǎoxiōng, huǒchēzhàn zài nǎr?
   Excuse me, brother, where's the railway station?
4. **大兄弟** **dàxiōngdì** title for younger man (polite form)
   大兄弟, 这 件 事 就 托 你了。
   Dàxiōngdì, zhè jiàn shì jiù tuō nǐ le.
   And so, brother, I'll leave the matter in your hands.

The last stroke finishes with a hook. **5 strokes**



62

家 **jiā** family

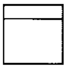
The character combines *roof* 宀 with *pig* 豕, suggesting a place where pigs and humans are together. It means *home.*

Radical: 宀 **'roof'**

Index # 34

Character components: 宀 **+** 豕

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **家** jiā family, home
我 今天 晚上 不 在 家。
Wǒ jīntiān wǎnshang bú zài jiā.
I won't be home tonight.

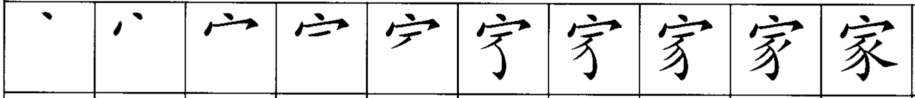
2. **家庭** **jiātíng** family
我 有 一个 幸福 的 家庭。
Wǒ yǒu yí ge xìngfú de jiātíng.
I have a happy family.

3. **家常菜** **jiāchángcài** home cooking
我 喜欢 吃 家常菜。
Wǒ xǐhuan chī jiāchángcài.
I'm fond of home cooking.

4. **家务事** **jiāwùshì** housework
家务事 总 做不完。
Jiāwùshì zǒng zuòbuwán.
Housework is never done.

5. **人家** **rénjia** other people
人家 的 事情 我们 用不着 管。
Rénjia de shìqing wǒmen yòngbuzhǎo guǎn.
We needn't concern ourselves with others' affairs.

The sixth stroke ends with a hook. **10 strokes**



63

几 **jǐ** how many?

Full form

幾

The full character originally meant uncertainty. This meaning is lost when the character was simplified.

Radical: 几 **'how many'**

Index # 22

Character component: 几

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **几 jǐ** how many (for a small number)
   几点了?
   Jǐ diǎn le?
   What's the time?

2. **几个 jǐ ge** how many
   你有几个中国朋友?
   Nǐ yǒu jǐ ge Zhōngguō péngyou?
   How many Chinese friends do you have?

3. **几次 jǐ cì** how many times
   你去过中国几次?
   Nǐ qùguo Zhōngguō jǐ cì?
   How many times have you been to China?

4. **几时 jǐshí** what time
   你们几时走?
   Nǐmen jǐshí zǒu?
   What time are you leaving?

5. **几分 jǐfēn** somewhat
   他说的有几分道理。
   Tā shuō de yǒu jǐfēn dàoli.
   There's something in what he said.

The character is closed at the top. **2 strokes**

丿	几											

64

口 **kǒu** mouth

The character 口 represents the shape of a *mouth.*

Radical: 口 **'mouth'**

Index # 50

Character component: 口

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **口** kǒu classifier
   你家 有 几 口 人?
   Nǐ jiā yǒu jǐ kǒu rén?
   How many are there in your family?
2. **口福** **kǒufú** gourmet's luck
   我 今天 口福 可 不浅。
   Wǒ jīntiān kǒufú kě bùqiǎn.
   I'm really in luck today where food is concerned.
3. **口味** **kǒuwèi** taste of food
   今天 换换 口味，吃 西餐吧。
   Jīntiān huànhuan kǒuwèi, chī Xīcān ba.
   Let's have a change today and have Western food.
4. **口气** **kǒuqì** tone of voice
   她 说话 有 埋怨 的口气。
   Tā shuōhuà yǒu máiyuàn de kǒuqì.
   There was a note of complaint in what she said.
5. **口音** **kǒuyīn** accent
   她 说 英语 带 美国 口音。
   Tā shuō Yīngyǔ dài Měiguó kǒuyīn.
   She speaks English with an American accent.

The last horizontal stroke travels from left to right. **3 strokes**

丨	冂	口										

65

爸 **bà** father

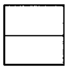
The character combines *father* 父 with the phonetic 巴 to give the sound, and the meaning *father*.

Radical: 父 **'father'**

Index # 94

Character components: 父 **+** 巴

Character configuration:



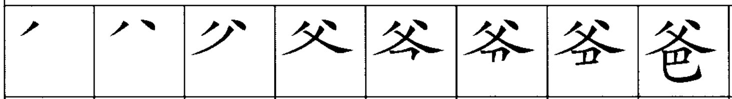
Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **爸** **bà** father
   我 爸 是 医生。
   Wǒ bà shì yīshēng.
   My father is a doctor.

2. **爸爸** bàba father
   我 爸爸 是 医生。
   Wǒ bàba shì yīshēng.
   My father is a doctor.

3. **后爸** **hòubà** stepfather
   后爸 也 叫 后爹。
   Hòubà yě jiào hòudiē.
   Another name for stepfather is hòudiē.

The last stroke ends with a hook. **8 strokes**



66

妈 **mā** mother

Full form

媽

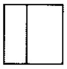
The character combines *woman* 女 with the sound element 马 giving the character the meaning of *mother*.

Radical: 女 **'female'**

Index # 65

Character components: 女 + 马

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **妈** **mā** mother
   妈最疼我。
   Mā zuì téng wǒ.
   Mum loves me most.

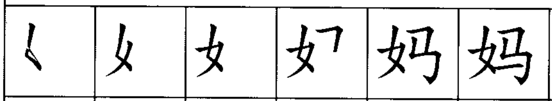
2. **妈妈** **māma** mother
   妈妈常常给我补衣服。
   Māma chángcháng gěi wǒ bǔ yīfu.
   Mum often mends my clothes.

3. **后妈** **hòumā** stepmother
   后妈也叫后母。
   Hòumā yě jiào hòumǔ.
   Another name for stepmother is hòumǔ.

4. **姨妈** **yímā** aunt (mother's married sister)
   姨妈是妈妈已婚的姐姐或妹妹。
   Yímā shì māma yǐhūn de jiějie huò mèimei.
   Yímā refers to a married maternal aunt.

5. **姑妈** **gūmā** aunt (father's married sister)
   姑妈是爸爸已婚的姐姐或妹妹。
   Gūmā shì bàba yǐhūn de jiějie huò mèimei.
   Gūmā refers to a married paternal aunt.

The fifth stroke ends with a hook. **6 strokes**



67

Full form

这 **zhè** this

這

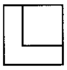
The full form combines *movement* 辶 with the phonetic 言 to suggest the idea of *this*. In simplification the phonetic 言 is changed to 文 for faster writing of the strokes.

Radical: 辶 **'movement'**

Index # 38

Character components: 文 + 辶

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **这** **zhè** this
   这 消息 我 知道 了。
   Zhè xiāoxi wǒ zhīdao le.
   I've already heard that news.

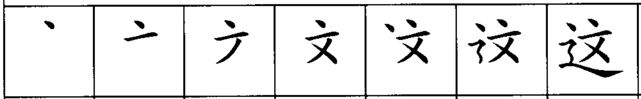
2. **这个** **zhè ge** this one
   我 就 买 这 个。
   Wǒ jiù mǎi zhè ge.
   I'll buy this one.

3. **这儿** **zhèr** here
   这儿 不准 停车。
   Zhèr bùzhǔn tíngchē.
   Parking is prohibited here.

4. **这些** **zhèxiē** these
   这些 日子 我们 特别 忙。
   Zhèxiē rìzi wǒmen tèbié máng.
   We've been really busy lately.

5. **这样** **zhèyàng** this way
   我 觉得 这样 做 会 快一点儿。
   Wǒ juéde zhèyàng zuò huì kuàiyìdiǎnr.
   I think this way is faster.

The fourth stroke finishes firmly. **7 strokes**



68

也 yě also

Not many characters contain this component 也. Certainly the pronoun 'he' has it and the pronoun 'she' also has it. It means *also*.

Radical: 𠃌 **'horizontal-bend-hook'** **Index # 5**

Character component: 也 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **也** **yě** also
   我 妈妈 也 是 老师。
   Wǒ māma yě shì lǎoshī.
   My mother is also a teacher.

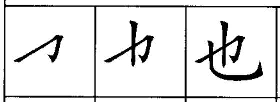
2. **也... 也** ... **yě ... yě** ...either ... or ...
   他 也 不 抽烟，也 不 喝酒。
   Tā yě bù chōuyān, yě bù hējiǔ.
   He neither smokes nor drinks.

3. **也许** **yěxǔ** perhaps
   也许 我 不 该 告诉她。
   Yěxǔ wǒ bù gāi gâosu tā.
   Perhaps I shouldn't have told her.

4. ... **也罢** ...**也罢** **...yěbâ ... yěbâ** whether ... or
   你 去也罢，不去 也罢， 反正 是 一样。
   Nǐ qù yěba, bú qù yěbâ, fǎnzhèng shì yíyàng.
   It makes no difference whether you go or not.

5. **也好** **yěhǎo** may as well
   你 说明 一下 也 好。
   Nǐ shuōmíng yíxiâ yě hǎo.
   Maybe you'd better give an explanation.

The first stroke is a horizontal-bend-hook. **3 strokes**



69

老 lǎo old

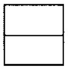
The character is a pictograph depicting a long-haired hunchback holding a walking stick. It means *old*.

Radical: 老 **'old'**

Index # 136

Character components: 土 + 丿 + 匕

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **老** **lǎo** old
   他 老 了, 走路 走 不 快 了。
   Tā lǎo le, zǒulù zǒu bú kuài le.
   He's getting old, he can no longer walk fast.

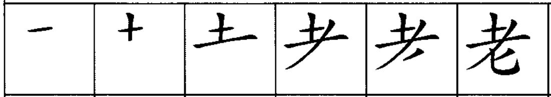
2. **老大** **lǎodà** oldest sibling
   我 家 三 兄弟, 我 是老大。
   Wǒ jiā sān xiōngdì, wǒ shì lǎodà.
   Of the three brothers in my family, I'm the eldest.

3. **老婆** **lǎopo** wife
   他 说 他老婆 不会 做饭。
   Tā shuō tā lǎopo bùhuì zuòfàn.
   He says his wife can't cook.

4. **老外** **lǎowài** foreigner
   很多 老外 说 汉语 都 说得 很 好。
   Hěnduō lǎowài shuō Hànyǔ dōu shuōde hěn hǎo.
   Many foreigners can speak Mandarin very well.

5. **老实** **lǎoshi** frank, honest
   老实 说, 我 不 赞成 这 个 意见。
   Lǎoshi shuō, wǒ bú zànchéng zhè ge yìjiàn.
   Frankly speaking, I don't like the idea at all.

The last stroke is a downward left stroke. **6 strokes**



70

师 **shī** teacher

Full form

師

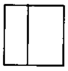
The full form combines *hill* 𠂤 with *going around* 帀 to give the idea of a leader who stands out from the rest of the crowd. It means *teacher.*

Radical: 丨 **'vertical stroke'** **Index # 3**

or 巾 **'napkin'** **Index # 52**

Character components: 刂 + 一 + 巾

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **师** **shī** teacher

   我们 是 师生 关系。

   Wǒmen shì shīshēng guānxi.

   We have a teacher–student relationship.

2. **老师** **lǎoshī** teacher

   他 以前 是 老师， 现在 退休 了。

   Tā yǐqián shì lǎoshī, xiànzài tuìxiū le.

   He used to be a teacher, now he has retired.

3. **师父** **shīfu** master/teacher

   他 是 我的 师父，我 是 他的徒弟。

   Tā shì wǒde shīfu, wǒ shì tā de túdì.

   He's my master, I'm his disciple.

4. **师母** **shīmǔ** wife of master/teacher

   师母 很 好客， 经常 请 学生 到 家里 吃饭。

   Shīmǔ hěn hàokè, jīngcháng qǐng xuésheng dào jiālǐ chīfàn.

   Our teacher's wife is very hospitable, she often invites students to dinner at her home.

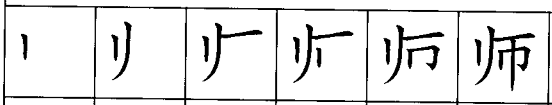
5. **律师** **lǜshī** lawyer

   她 是 一个 很 有名 的律师。

   Tā shì yí ge hěn yǒumíng de lǜshī.

   She's a very famous lawyer.

Note the difference between **师** and **帅**. **6 strokes**



Quiz 7 (61–70)

A. Find and CIRCLE words, phrases or sentences hidden in the puzzle. They can be found horizontally or vertically from left to right. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

家	口	姐	人
和	兄	妹	还
老	弟	爸	有
师	几	妈	哥

	Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
(i)	老	师		lǎoshī	teacher
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. CONVERT the following pinyin sentences into characters. Some of the characters you need can be found in the 16-character grid above. Check the English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Wǒ jiā yǒu sì kǒu rén.									
(ii)	Bàba, māma, jiějie hé wǒ.									
(iii)	Wǒ māma shì lǎoshī.									
(iv)	Nǐ yǒu jǐ ge xiōngdì jiěmèi?									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

家 tíng
老大
hòu 妈
师 fu
兄弟
gū 妈
老 po
hòu 爸

wife
master
oldest sibling
stepfather
family
stepmother
father's married sister
brother

(ii)

这 xiē
家 wùshì
这 yàng
人口
老 shi
也 xǔ
这 èr
口 yīn

honest
perhaps
these
in this way
housework
population
accent
here

71

很 **hěn** very

The character combines *crossroad* 彳 with the figure of *a person looking back* 艮 to express the idea of *very.*

Radical: 彳 **'double person'**

Index # 54

Character components: 彳 + 艮

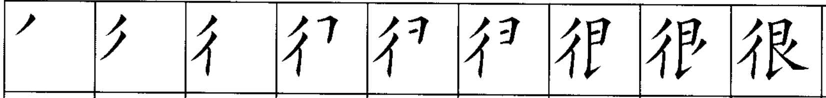
Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **很 hěn** very
   他 这 个 人 好得 很。
   Tā zhè ge rén hǎode hěn.
   He's a very good man.
2. **很好 hěn hǎo** very good/well
   这 个 汉字你 写得 很 好。
   Zhè ge Hànzì nǐ xiěde hěn hǎo.
   You've written this Chinese character very nicely.
3. **很坏 hěn huài** very bad
   当心，这 个 人 很 坏。
   Dāngxīn, zhè ge rén hěn huài!
   Look out! This person is no good.
4. **很多 hěnduō** a lot of
   你 认识 很多 汉字。
   Nǐ rènshi hěnduō Hànzì.
   You recognize lots of characters.
5. **很近 hěn jìn** very near
   我 家离 火车站 很近。
   Wǒ jiā lí huǒchēzhàn hěn jìn.
   I live quite near the train station.

The last stroke tapers off.

9 strokes



72

怎 **zěn** how?

The character combines *suddenly* 乍 and *heart* 心 to suggest the idea of an *instantaneous flash in the heart.* Thus it means *how* or *why.*

Radical: 心 **'heart'**

Index # 76

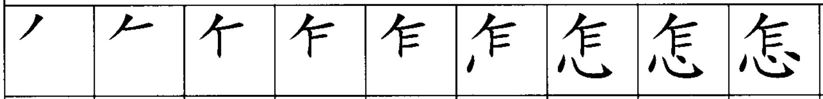
Character components: 乍 **+** 心

Character configuration: ⿱

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **怎** **zěn** why
   你 怎 不 早 说 呀?
   Nǐ zěn bù zǎo shuō ya?
   Why didn't you say so earlier?
2. **怎么** **zěnme** how
   这 个词儿英语 怎么 说?
   Zhè ge cír Yīngyǔ zěnme shuō?
   How do you say this word in English?
3. **怎样** **zěnyàng** how, what
   这 件 事 你 怎样 解释?
   Zhè jiàn shì nǐ zěnyàng jiěshì?
   How do you explain this matter?
4. **怎么样** **zěnmeyàng** what's it like?
   最近 怎么样, 忙 吗?
   Zuìjìn zěnmeyàng, máng ma?
   How have things been recently? Busy?

The top horizontal stroke is longer. **9 strokes**



73

样 **yàng** appearance

Full form

樣

The full form consists of 3 parts: *wood* 木, *sheep* 羊, and *permanent* 永. It was the name of a type of soft wood, resembling oak. Thus the idea of *like manner*.

Radical: 木 **'tree'**

Index # 81

Character components: 木 + 羊

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **样** **yàng** appearance
   儿 年 没 见面，他 还 是 那个 样。
   Jī nián méi jiànmiàn, tā hái shì nà ge yàng.
   It's years since I last saw him, but he still looks the same.

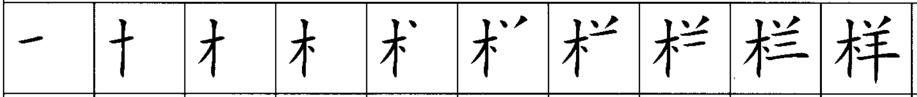
2. **怎么样** **zěnmeyàng** what's it like?
   最近 怎么样， 忙 吗？
   Zuìjìn zěnmeyàng, máng ma?
   How have things been recently? Busy?

3. **样子** **yàngzi** appearance
   这 件 大衣的 样子 很 好看。
   Zhè jiàn dàyī de yàngzi hěn hǎokàn.
   This coat is well cut.

4. **一样** **yīyàng** the same
   他们 兄弟 相貌 一样。
   Tāmen xiōngdì xiàngmào yīyàng.
   The brothers are alike in appearance.

5. **花样** **huāyàng** variety
   这 家 服装店 花样 很多。
   Zhè jiā fúzhuāngdiàn huāyàng hěnduō.
   There is a great variety of styles in this boutique shop.

The last stroke of 木 should be written firmly. **10 strokes**



74

父 **fù** father

The character was a pictograph of the right hand holding a cane. From this it came to mean the head of a family or *father*.

Radical: 父 **'father'** **Index # 94**

Character component: 父 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **父 fù** father
以前在中国，长兄当父。
Yǐqián zài Zhōngguó, zhǎngxiōng dāng fù.
Formerly in China, the oldest brother assumed the authority of the father.

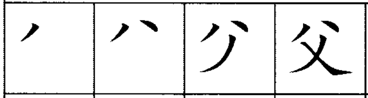
2. **父亲 fùqin** father
我父亲对中国很有兴趣。
Wǒ fùqin duì Zhōngguó hěn yǒu xìngqù.
My father is very interested in China.

3. **父母 fùmǔ**
下个月我父母要去旅行。
Xià ge yuè wǒ fùmǔ yào qù lǚxíng.
Next month my parents are going on a trip.

4. **祖父 zǔfù** paternal grandfather
他的祖父去世了。
Tāde zǔfù qùshì le.
His paternal grandfather has passed away.

5. **继父 jìfù** stepfather
他的继父对他不错。
Tāde jìfù duì tā búcuò.
His stepfather is quite nice to him.

The last stroke tapers off. **4 strokes**



75

母 **mǔ** mother

The character was derived from a pictograph of a seated woman. The two dots represent the breasts. It means *mother*.

Radical: 母 **'mother'**

Index # 108

Character component: 母

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **母** **mǔ** female (animal)
   你的 狗 是 公 的 还是 母 的?
   Nǐde gǒu shì gōng de háishi mǔ de?
   Is your dog male or female?

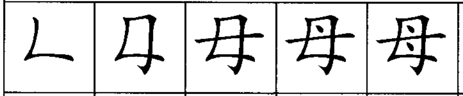
2. **母亲** **mǔqin** mother
   我 母亲 做 的 饭菜 最 好吃。
   Wǒ mǔqin zuò de fàncài zuì hǎochī.
   My mother cooks the best meals.

3. **父母** **fùmǔ** parents
   下 个 月 我 父母 要 去 旅行。
   Xià ge yuè wǒ fùmǔ yào qù lǚxíng.
   Next month my parents are going on a trip.

4. **母语** **mǔyǔ** mother tongue
   英语 是 我的 母语。
   Yīngyǔ shì wǒde mǔyǔ.
   English is my mother tongue.

5. **外祖母** **wàizǔmǔ** maternal grandmother
   他的 外祖母 每天 打 太极拳。
   Tāde wàizǔmǔ měitiān dǎ tàijíquán.
   His grandmother practices taichi every day.

The second stroke ends with a hook. **5 strokes**



76

亲 qīn kin

Full form

親

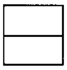
The full form contains 3 parts: *stand* 立, *tree* 木, and *see* 見. It signifies a person standing on a tree eager to see his *loved one*.

Radical: 立 **'erect'**

Index # 111

Character components: 立 + 朩

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **亲 qīn** close, intimate
   我 和 姐姐 最 亲。
   Wǒ hé jiějie zuì qīn.
   I'm very close to my older sister.

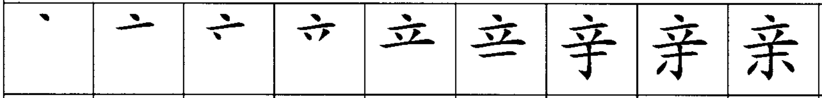
2. **亲人 qīnrén** kin
   你 在 中国 有 没有 亲人?
   Nǐ zài Zhōngguó yǒu méiyǒu qīnrén?
   Do you have any relatives in China?

3. **父亲 fùqin** father
   我 父亲 对 中国 很 有 兴趣。
   Wǒ fùqin duì Zhōngguó hěn yǒu xìngqù.
   My father is very interested in China.

4. **母亲 mǔqin** mother
   我 母亲 做 的 饭菜 最 好吃。
   Wǒ mǔqin zuò de fàncài zuì hǎochī.
   My mother cooks the best meals.

5. **亲戚 qīnqi** relatives
   我们 两 家 是 亲戚。
   Wǒmen liǎng jiā shì qīnqi.
   Our two families are related.

The middle horizontal stroke is the longest. **9 strokes**



77

谢 xiè thank

Full form

謝

The full character combines *speech* 言 with *bowed body* 射. It suggests the idea that one should thank people with bowed body. It means *to thank.*

Radical: 讠 **'word'**

Index # 9

Character components: 讠 + 射

Character configuration: ⿲

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **谢 xiè** thank
   不用 谢。
   Bùyòng xiè.
   Don't mention it. [literally, no need to thank]

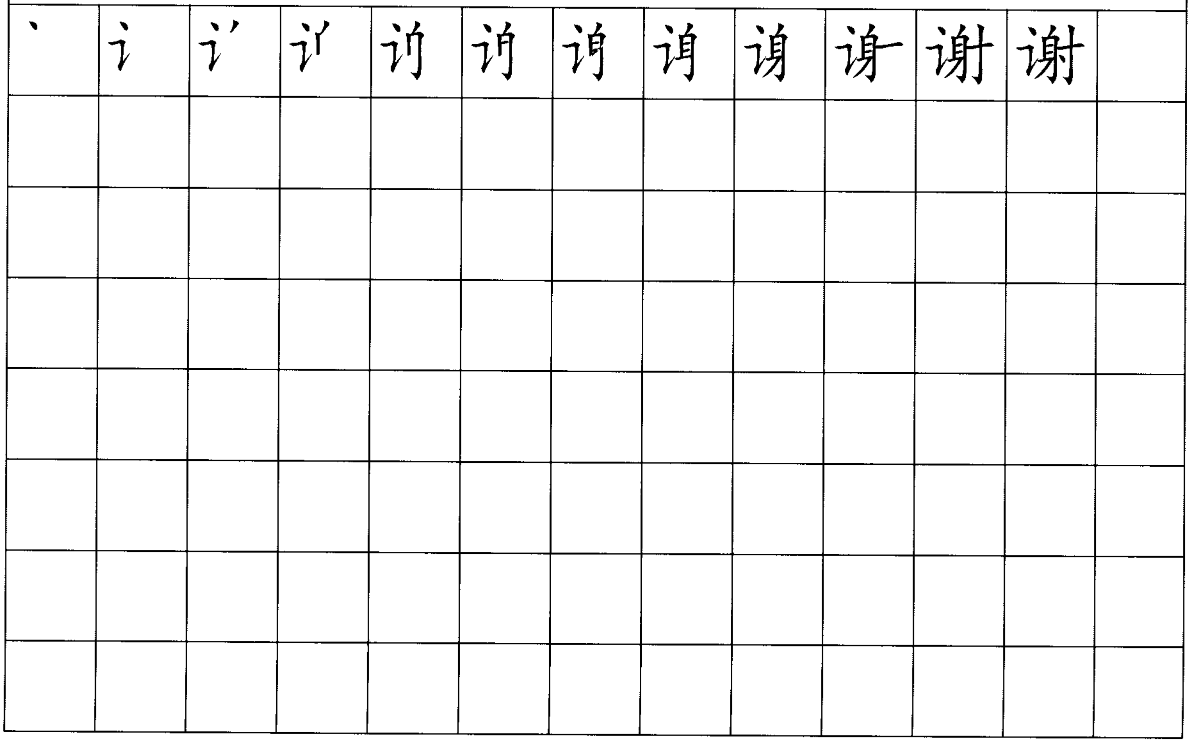
2. **谢谢 xièxie** thank
   谢谢 你。
   Xièxie nǐ.
   Thank you.

3. **多谢 duōxiè** many thanks
   多谢， 再见！
   Duōxiè, zàijiàn!
   Thanks a lot, good-bye!

4. **感谢 gǎnxiè** thank
   非常 感谢。
   Fēicháng gǎnxiè.
   Many thanks.

5. **谢天谢地 xiètiān-xièdì** thank heavens (literally, thank heaven and earth)
   谢天谢地， 没 发生 事故。
   Xiètiān-xièdì, méi fāshēng shìgù.
   Thank goodness, there was no accident.

The ninth stroke is downward-left. **12 strokes**



78

身 **shēn** body

The character is a pictograph depicting a man with a pot belly walking on his short legs. It means *body*.

Radical: 身 **‘body’** **Index # 168**

Character component: 身 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **身** **shēn** body, oneself
   身 在 福 中 不 知 福。
   Shēn zāi fū zhōng bù zhī fū.
   When you’re happy you don’t know it.

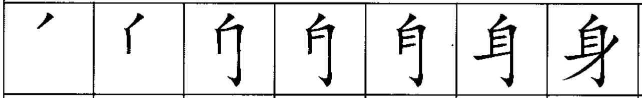
2. **身体** **shēntǐ** health
   跳舞 可以 锻炼 身体。
   Tiàowǔ kěyǐ duànliàn shēntǐ.
   Dancing can improve your physique.

3. **身上** **shēnshang** (carry something) on one
   你 身上 有 零钱 吗?
   Nǐ shēnshang yǒu língqián ma?
   Have you got any change on you?

4. **身材** **shēncāi** body line
   王 菲 的 身材 苗条。
   Wāng Fēi de shēncāi miāotiāo.
   Faye Wong has a slim figure.

5. **身高** **shēn’gāo** stature
   王 菲 身 高 一点六五 米。
   Wāng Fēi shēn’gāo yīdiǎnliùwǔ mǐ.
   Faye Wong is 1.65 meters tall.

The third stroke ends with a hook. **7 strokes**



79

体 tǐ body

Full form

體

The full form combines *bone* 骨 and the phonetic 豊 to suggest the idea of *body*. The simplified form uses *person* 亻 and *foundation* 本 to give the same meaning.

Radical: 亻 **'upright person'** **Index # 19**

Character components: 亻 + 本 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **体 tǐ** style of writing
   你 写 的 是 什么 体?
   Nǐ xiě de shì shénme tǐ?
   What style of calligraphy are you writing?

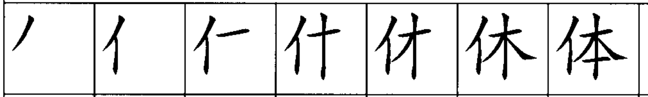
2. **身体 shēntǐ** health
   跳舞 可以 锻炼 身体。
   Tiàowǔ kěyǐ duànliàn shēntǐ.
   Dancing can improve your physique.

3. **体温 tǐwēn** body temperature
   你的 体温 是 39 度, 发烧 了。
   Nǐde tǐwēn shì sānshíjiǔ dù, fāshāo le.
   You have a fever, your temperature is 39 degrees.

4. **体力 tǐlì** bodily strength
   运动 能 增强 体力。
   Yùndòng néng zēngqiáng tǐlì.
   Sports can build up your strength.

5. **体贴 tǐtiē** considerate
   他 对妻子很 体贴。
   Tā duì qīzi hěn tǐtiē.
   He's very considerate to his wife.

The bottom horizontal stroke is shorter. **7 strokes**



80

都 **dōu/dū** all; city

The character combines *city* 阝 with *people* 者 to indicate a large *city* or *capital*. From the meaning of *general capital of all* '*dū*' is evolved the idea of *all* with a different pronunciation: '*dōu*'.

Radical: 阝 'right ear-lobe'

Index # 28

Character components: 者 + 阝

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

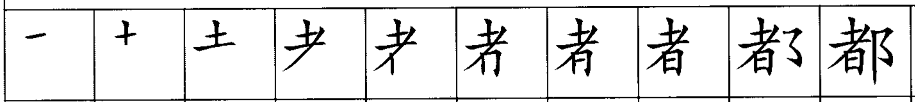
1. **都** **dōu** all
   大家 都 到 了 吗?
   Dàjiā dōu dào le ma?
   Is everybody here?

2. **都市** **dūshì** city
   上海 是 一个 大 都市。
   Shànghǎi shì yí ge dà dūshì.
   Shanghai is a big city.

3. **首都** **shǒudū** capital city
   北京 是 中国 的 首都。
   Běijīng shì Zhōngguó de shǒudū.
   Beijing is the capital of China.

The first stroke of 阝 looks like the figure 3.

10 strokes



Quiz 8 (71–80)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally from left to right or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

怎	很	都	谢
样	爸	身	这
父	母	体	家
语	亲	还	汉

	Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
(i)	怎	样		zěnyàng	how
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. CONVERT the following pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key. Some of the characters you need can be found in the 16-character grid above, the rest in the grid of the last character set.

(i)	Nǐ fùmǔ shēntǐ hǎo ma?									
(ii)	Tāmen dōu hěn hǎo, xièxie.									
(iii)	Nǐde Hànyǔ zěnmeyàng?									
(iv)	Hái hǎo, xièxie.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

怎么样
父母
母语
母的
一样
huā 样
亲 qi
样 zi

parents
variety
appearance
what's it like?
female (animal)
relatives
mother tongue
same

(ii)

都 shì
体 wēn
体 lì
身体
身 cái
身 gāo
谢谢
shǒu 都

health
thank-you
body temperature
strength
capital
city
body height
body shape

81

那 **nà** that

The character represented the state far in the west of Sichuan. Later it was borrowed to denote *thither*. It means *that*.

Radical: ⻏ **'right ear-lobe'** **Index # 28**

Character components: 冄 **+** ⻏ **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **那 nà** that
   那 是 谁？
   Nà shì shéi/shuí?
   Who is that?

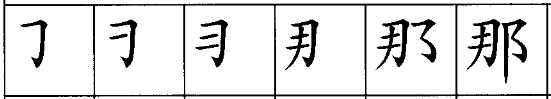
2. **那个 nà ge** that one
   那 个孩子 很 可爱。
   Nà ge háizi hěn kě'ài.
   That child is cute.

3. **那么 nàme** in that way
   别 走得 那么 快，好不好？
   Bié zǒude nàme kuài, hǎobuhǎo?
   Don't walk so fast, okay?

4. **那边 nàbian** over there
   请 把 东西 放 在 那边。
   Qǐng bǎ dōngxi fàng zài nàbian.
   Please put those things over there.

5. **从那儿起 cóng nàr qǐ** since then
   从 那儿起，他 就 用心 念书 了。
   Cóng nàr qǐ , tā jiù yòngxīn niànshū le.
   He's been studying hard since then.

The fifth stroke looks like the number 3. **6 strokes**



82

里 lǐ inside

Full form

裡 / 裏

There are two full forms of this character: 裡 and 裏 . Both forms combine *clothing* 衣 with *inside* 里 to suggest *lining* or *inside*. The simplified form uses only the latter component.

Radical: 里 **'inside'**

Index # 163

Character component: 里

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **里** **lǐ** inside
   家里没 人。
   Jiāli méi rén.
   There is no one home.

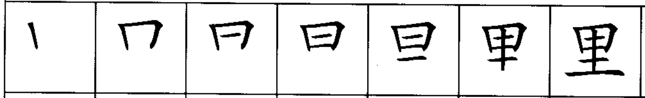
2. **哪里** **nǎli** where?
   你 上 哪里去?
   Nǐ shàng nǎli qù?
   Where are you going?

3. **这里** **zhèlǐ** here
   我们 这里 的 东西 很 便宜。
   Wǒmen zhèlǐ de dōngxi hěn piányi.
   Our merchandise is inexpensive.

4. **里边** **lǐbian** inside
   这 个 箱子 里边 有 什么?
   Zhè ge xiāngzi lǐbiān yǒu shénme?
   What's inside this box?

5. **里头** **lǐtou** inside
   这 个 箱子 里头 有 什么?
   Zhè ge xiāngzi lǐtou yǒu shénme?
   What's inside this box?

The bottom horizontal stroke is slightly longer. **7 strokes**



83 **Full form**

儿 ér son 兒

The full form comes with a head and two eyes 兒. In simplification, only the lower part of the body 儿 is retained.

Radical: 儿 'son' **Index # 21**

Character component: 儿 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **儿 ér** suffix (transcribed as r)
   你 去 哪儿?
   Nǐ qù nǎr?
   Where are you going?
2. **儿子 érzi** son
   我的 大儿子 今年 二十六 岁 了。
   Wǒde dà érzi jīnnián èrshíliù suì le.
   My eldest son is 26 this year.
3. **儿女 érnǚ** sons and daughters
   我的儿女 都 长大 成人 了。
   Wǒde érnǚ dōu zhǎngdà chéngrén le.
   My children have all grown up.
4. **儿歌 érgē** children's song
   今天 我 学了 一 首 儿歌。
   Jīntiān wǒ xuéle yì shǒu érgē.
   I learnt a nursery rhyme today.
5. **儿童 értóng** children
   这 是 儿童 医院。
   Zhè shì értóng yīyuàn.
   This is a children's hospital.

Note the difference between 儿 and 儿. **2 strokes**

丿	儿											

84

子 zǐ child

The character represents a *baby* with a large head and both arms extended. It means a *child.*

Radical: 子 **'child'**

Index # 67

Character component: 子

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **子 zǐ** noun suffix
   桌子 是 旧的，椅子是 新的。
   Zhuōzi shì jiùde, yǐzi shì xīnde.
   The desk is old but the chair is new.

2. **孩子 háizi** child
   这 个 孩子 很 淘气。
   Zhè ge háizi hěn táoqì.
   This kid is very naughty.

3. **子女 zǐnǚ** sons and daughters
   五十年代 的 人 大 都 子女 成群。
   Wǔshíniándài de rén dà dōu zǐnǚ chéngqún.
   In the 50s, most people had lots of children.

4. **子孙 zǐsūn** descendants
   中国人 叫 自己 炎黄 子孙。
   Zhōngguórén jiào zìjǐ Yánhuáng zǐsūn.
   The Chinese people call themselves descendants of the Yellow Emperor.

5. **妻子 qīzi** wife
   我 来 介绍，这 是 我 妻子。
   Wǒ lái jièshào, zhè shì wǒ qīzi.
   Let me introduce my wife.

The second stroke is a vertical hook. **3 strokes**

㇇	了	子										

85

女 nǚ female

The character was derived from the figure of a woman in a graceful pose. Thus the character came to mean *woman.*

Radical: 女 **'female'**

Index # 65

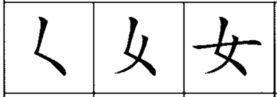
Character component: 女

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **女 nǚ** female
   中国 的 女 运动员 都 很 出色。
   Zhōngguō de nǚ yùndòngyuán dōu hěn chūsè.
   The female Chinese athletes are outstanding.
2. **女儿 nǚ'ér** daughter
   我 女儿 在 上海 教 英语。
   Wǒ nǚ'ér zài Shànghǎi jiāo Yīngyǔ.
   My daughter teaches English in Shanghai.
3. **女强人 nǚqiángrén** a strong woman
   现在 女孩子 喜欢 当 女强人。
   Xiànzài nǚháizi xǐhuan dāng nǚqiángrén.
   These days girls want to be strong women.
4. **女生 nǚshēng** female student
   学 语言 的 女生 比 男生 多。
   Xué yǔyán de nǚshēng bǐ nánshēng duō.
   Female language students outnumber male students.
5. **妇女 fùnǚ** woman
   我 母亲 是 家庭 妇女。
   Wǒ mǔqin shì jiātíng fùzǚ.
   My mother is a housewife.

End the first stroke firmly. **3 strokes**



86

男 **nān** male

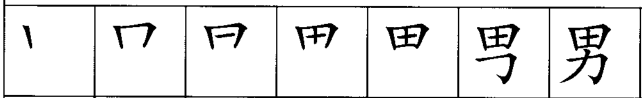
The character combines *field* 田 with *strength* 力 to express the idea that *men* do the strenuous work in the rice fields.

Radical: 田 **'field'** **Index # 119**
or 力 **'strength'** **Index # 31**
Character components: 田 **+** 力 **Character configuration:**

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **男** **nān** man
   我们 家里 男 女 平等。
   Wǒmen jiāli nān nǚ pīngděng.
   In our household, we have equality of the sexes.
2. **男孩儿** **nānhāir** boy
   男孩儿 比较 淘气。
   Nānhāir bǐjiāo tāoqī.
   Boys are more mischievous.
3. **男朋友** **nānpēngyou** boy friend
   她 跟 男朋友 住 在 一起。
   Tā gēn nānpēngyou zhū zāi yìqǐ.
   She lives with her boy friend.
4. **男高音** **nān'gāoyīn** tenor
   他的 声音 是 男 高音。
   Tāde shēngyīn shī nān'gāoyīn.
   He's a tenor.
5. **男厕所** **nāncēsuǒ** men's toilet
   那边 有 男厕所。
   Nābiān yǒu nāncēsuǒ.
   There's a men's toilet over there.

Finish the top component first. **7 strokes**



87

孩 **hái** child

The character combines *child* 子 with *cough* 亥 to suggest the presence of a *child* by the sound of coughing.

Radical: 子 **'child'** **Index # 67**

Character components: 子 **+** 亥 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **孩** **hái** child (usually used with suffix *zi* or *ér*)
   这 个孩子 很 淘气。
   Zhè ge háizi hěn táoqì.
   This child is very naughty.

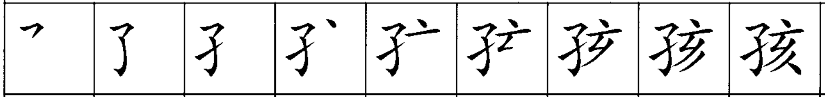
2. **男孩儿** **nánháir** boy
   男孩儿 比较 淘气。
   Nánháir bǐjiào táoqì.
   Boys are more mischievous.

3. **女孩子** **nǚháizi** girl
   这 个 女孩子 很 聪明。
   Zhè ge nǚháizi hěn cōngmíng.
   This girl is very clever.

4. **孩子气** **háiziqì** childish
   你 已经 十六 岁 了，别 那么 孩子气！
   Nǐ yǐjīng shíliù suì le, bié nàme háiziqì!
   You shouldn't be so childish, you're 16 now!

5. **孩子话** **háizihuà** childish talk
   你 已经 十六 岁 了，别 说 孩子话！
   Nǐ yǐjīng shíliù suì le, bié shuō háizihuà!
   You shouldn't talk like a child, you're 16 now!

The last stroke ends firmly. **9 strokes**



88

狗 **gǒu** dog

In this character, the animal radical 犭 combines with the phonetic 句 to give the idea of *dog*.

Radical: 犭 **'animal'** **Index # 58**

Character components: 犭 **+** 句 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **狗** **gǒu** dog
   我们 家 的 狗 是 公 的。
   Wǒmen jiā de gǒu shì gōng de.
   Our dog is a male.

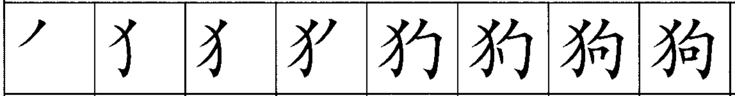
2. **小狗** **xiǎogǒu** puppy
   这 只 小狗 真 可爱。
   Zhè zhī xiǎogǒu zhēn kě'ài.
   This puppy is really cute.

3. **母狗** **mǔgǒu** female dog, bitch
   这 只 母狗 已经 很 老 了。
   Zhè zhī mǔgǒu yǐjīng hěn lǎo le.
   This female dog is quite old.

4. **狗熊** **gǒuxióng** black bear
   狗熊 有 时候 吃 人。
   Gǒuxióng yǒu shíhou chī rén.
   Black bears sometimes eat people.

5. **狗屁** **gǒupì** rubbish (literally, dog's fart)
   这 篇 文章 写得 狗屁 不通。
   Zhè piān wénzhāng xiěde gǒupì bùtōng.
   The article is mere rubbish.

The second stroke finishes with a hook. **8 strokes**



89

猫 **māo** cat

Full form

貓

In the simplified form, the animal radical 犭 combines with the phonetic 苗 to give the idea of *cat*. The word *māo* sounds like a cat miawing. Note the full form uses a different radical which also means 'animal'.

Radical: 犭 **'animal'**

Character components: 犭 **+** 苗

Index # 58

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **猫** **māo** cat
   这 只 猫 是 公 的。
   Zhè zhī māo shì gōng de.
   This is a tomcat.

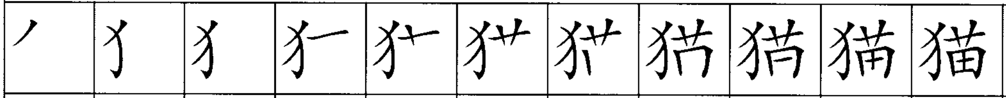
2. **母猫** **mǔmāo** female cat
   这 母猫 很 老 了。
   Zhè mǔmāo hěn lǎo le.
   This female cat is quite old.

3. **小猫** **xiǎomāo** kitten
   这些 小猫 太 可爱 了!
   Zhèxiē xiǎomāo tài kě'ài le!
   These kittens are so cute!

4. **大熊猫** **dàxióngmāo** panda
   我 要 去 中国 看 大熊猫。
   Wǒ yào qù Zhōngguó kàn dàxióngmāo.
   I want to go to China to see the panda.

5. **猫头鹰** **māotóuyīng** owl
   猫头鹰 吃 老鼠。
   Māotóuyīng chī lǎoshǔ.
   Owls eat rats.

The second stroke is a curving hook. **11 strokes**



90

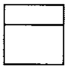
只 **zhī** [classifier]

Full form

隻

The full form combines *bird* 隹 and *again* 又 to represent the *classifier* for animals. In simplification, the phonetic 只 is used. See also *zhǐ* in character #200.

Radical: 口 **'mouth'** **Index # 50**
or 八 **'eight'** **Index # 17**
Character components: 口 + 八 **Character configuration:**



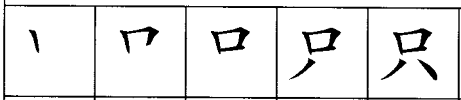
Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **只 zhī** classifier
这 只 猫 是 公 的。
Zhè zhī māo shì gōng de.
This is a tomcat.

两只老虎 **Liǎng zhī lǎohu** ("Two Tigers") is a well-known children's song.

两 只老虎， 两 只老虎；
Liǎng zhī lǎohu, liǎng zhī lǎohu;
Two tigers, two tigers;
跑得 快， 跑得 快，
Pǎode kuài, pǎode kuài;
They run fast, they run fast;
一 只 没有 眼睛，
Yī zhī méiyǒu yǎnjing,
One has no eyes,
一 只 没有 尾巴；
Yī zhī méiyǒu wěiba;
One has no tail;
真 奇怪！ 真 奇怪！
Zhēn qíguài! Zhēn qíguài!
It's really strange! It's really strange!

The last stroke finishes firmly. **5 strokes**



Quiz 9 (81–90)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally from left to right or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

猫	女	哥	两
男	孩	那	有
母	里	儿	没
只	狗	子	家

	Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
(i)	男	孩		nānhāi	boy
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Nĭ gēge yŏu mēiyŏu hāizi?									
(ii)	Wŏ gēge yŏu liăng ge nǚ'ěr.									
(iii)	Nĭ jiā yŏu mēiyŏu gŏu?									
(iv)	Mēiyŏu, wŏ jiā yŏu yì zhī māo.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

儿子	daughter
哪儿	strong woman
女儿	descendants
子 sūn	where
女 qiāng 人	son
女 shēng	boy friend
男孩儿	female student
男朋友	boy

(ii)

母狗	here
里 biān	female dog
孩子 qì	men's toilet
男 cèsuŏ	panda
xiăo 猫	over there
那 biān	childish
这里	inside
dàxiōng 猫	kitten

91

大 **dâ** big

The character depicts a person standing with arms outstretched, giving the idea of *big*.

Radical: 大 **'big'** **Index # 43**

Character component: 大 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **大** **dâ** big
   把 收音机 开 大一点。
   Bă shōuyīnjī kāi dâyīdiăn.
   Turn the volume of the radio up a bit.

2. **大声** **dâshēng** loudly
   请 别 大声 说话。
   Qĭng biĕ dâshēng shuōhuâ.
   Please don't speak so loudly.

3. **大家** **dâjiā** everybody
   请 大家 坐好。
   Qĭng dâjiā zuòhăo.
   Please be seated, everyone.

4. **大小** **dâxiăo** size (literally, big small)
   这 双 鞋 大小 正 合适。
   Zhè shuāng xiĕ dâxiăo zhèng héshì.
   These shoes fit me perfectly.

5. **大概** **dâgâi** in general
   我 只 知道 个 大概。
   Wŏ zhĭ zhīdao ge dâgâi.
   I have only a general idea.

The last stroke tapers off. **3 strokes**

一	ナ	大										

92

小 **xiǎo** small

The character represents a large object being divided into two *small* objects. It means *small*.

Radical: 小 **'small'**

Index # 49

Character component: 小

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **小** **xiǎo** little
   我 比你 小。
   Wǒ bǐ nǐ xiǎo.
   I'm younger than you.

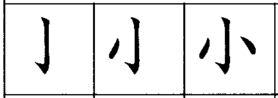
2. **小时** **xiǎoshí** hour
   我 每天 工作 八 个 小时。
   Wǒ měitiān gōngzuò bā ge xiǎoshí.
   I work eight hours every day.

3. **小时候** **xiǎoshíhou** in one's childhood
   这 是 她 小时候 的 照片。
   Zhè shì tā xiǎoshíhou de zhàopiàn.
   These are her childhood photos.

4. **小吃** **xiǎochī** snacks
   北京 的 小吃 很 出名。
   Běijīng de xiǎochī hěn chūmíng.
   Beijing is famous for its snacks.

5. **小心** **xiǎoxīn** be careful (literally, little heart)
   过 马路 要 小心。
   Guò mǎlù yào xiǎoxīn.
   Be careful when crossing the road.

The middle stroke ends with a hook. **3 strokes**



93

岁 **suì** age in years

Full form

歲

The simplified form combines *hill* 山 and *evening* 夕 to give the idea of *age in years.*

Radical: 山 **'hill'** **Index # 53**

or 夕 **'sunset'** **Index # 56**

Character components: 山 + 夕

Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

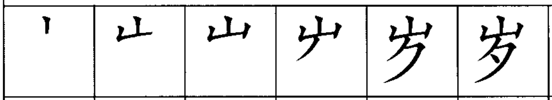
1. **岁** **suì** age in years
   李老师 今年 五十七 岁。
   Lǐ lǎoshī jīnnián wǔshíqī suì.
   Teacher Li is 57 years old.

2. **岁数** **suìshù** age (used in question)
   您 今年 多 大 岁数 了?
   Nín jīnnián duō dà suìshù le?
   How old are you? [question directed at older people as sign of respect]

3. **年岁** **niánsuì** age
   他 是 上了 年岁 的 人。
   Tā shì shàngle niánsuì de rén.
   He is a person who is getting on in years.

4. **岁月** **suìyuè** years
   岁月 不 居。
   Suìyuè bù jū.
   Time and tide wait for no one.

The dot is written last. **6 strokes**



94

比 **bǐ** compare

The character represents the figure of two persons standing side by side when comparing heights. It means *compare.*

Radical: 比 **'compare'**

Index # 86

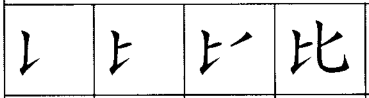
Character components: 𠤎 + 匕

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **比** **bǐ** compare to
   我 比我 哥哥 小 两 岁。
   Wǒ bǐ wǒ gēge xiǎo liǎng suì.
   I'm 2 years younger than my brother.
2. **比较** **bǐjiào** comparatively
   最近 我 比较 忙。
   Zuìjìn wǒ bǐjiào máng.
   I've been busy of late.
3. **比赛** **bǐsài** competition
   今晚 有 一个 足球比赛，你 看 吗？
   Jīnwǎn yǒu yí ge zúqiú bǐsài, nǐ kàn ma?
   Are you going to watch the soccer match tonight?
4. **比方** **bǐfāng** analogy
   可以 给 我 打个 比方 吗？
   Kěyǐ gěi wǒ dǎ ge bǐfāng ma?
   Can you give me an example?
5. **比不上** **bǐbushàng** not as good as
   我的 汉语 比不上 他。
   Wǒde Hànyǔ bǐbushàng tā.
   My Chinese is not as good as his.

The first stroke is a vertical lift. **4 strokes**



95

做 zuò do

The character combines *person* 亻 with *cause* 故 which signifies that a person causes something to happen by *doing* or *making*.

Radical: 亻 **'upright person'**

Index # 19

Character components: 亻 **+** 古 **+** 攵

Character configuration: ⿲

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **做** **zuò** do, make
   这 是 你自己做 的 吗?
   Zhè shì nǐ zìjǐ zuò de ma?
   Did you do/make this yourself?

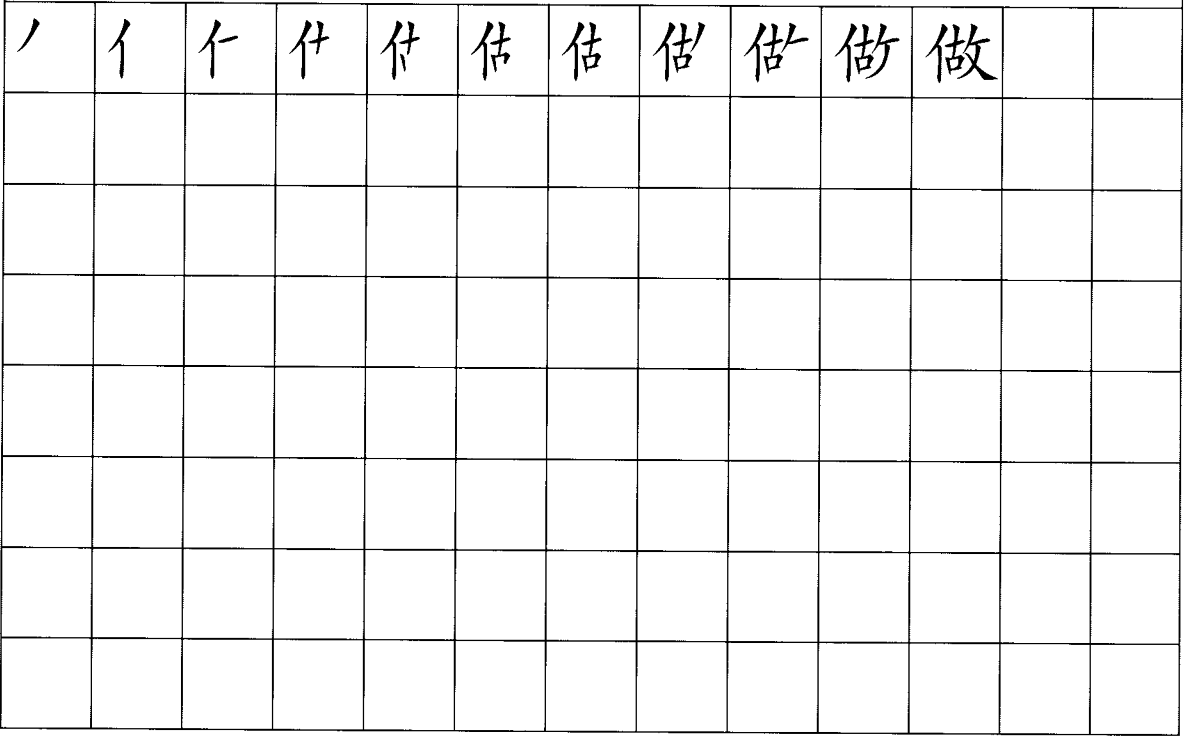
2. **做菜** **zuòcài** cook
   她 丈夫 很 会 做菜。
   Tā zhàngfu hěn huì zuòcài.
   Her husband is very good in cooking.

3. **做事** **zuòshì** work
   他 做事 做得 很 认真。
   Tā zuòshì zuòde hěn rènzhēn.
   He does his work conscientiously.

4. **做生意** **zuò shēngyì** do business
   我 爸爸 做 生意 的。
   Wǒ bàba zuò shēngyì de.
   My father is a businessman.

5. **做梦** **zuòmèng** dream
   昨晚 我 做了一个可怕的 梦。
   Zuówǎn wǒ zuòle yí ge kěpà de mèng.
   I had a terrible dream last night.

The last stroke tapers off. **11 strokes**



96

工 gōng work

The character depicts an ancient carpenter's square from which the meaning of *work* was derived.

Radical: 工 **'work'** **Index # 39**

Character component: 工 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 工 **gōng** work
   假期的 时候，他去 打工 挣 零花钱。
   Jiàqī de shíhou, tā qù dǎgōng zhèng línghuāqián.
   During the holidays, he does menial work to earn some pocket money.
2. 工作 **gōngzuò** work
   你 做 什么 工作？
   Nǐ zuò shénme gōngzuò?
   What work do you do?
3. 工资 **gōngzī** wage or salary
   一个 月 的 工资 有 多少？
   Yí ge yuè de gōngzī yǒu duōshao?
   What's the monthly wage?
4. 工业 **gōngyè** industry
   这里 工业 污染 很 严重。
   Zhèlǐ gōngyè wūrǎn hěn yánzhòng.
   Industrial pollution is quite serious here.
5. 工厂 **gōngchǎng** factory
   这 家 工厂 生产 运动鞋。
   Zhè jiā gōngchǎng shēngchǎn yùndòngxié.
   This factory manufactures sport shoes.

The second horizontal stroke is slightly longer. **3 strokes**

一	丅	工										

97

作 **zuō** do, make

The character combines *person* 亻 with 乍 which represents the idea of a cut being made by a person, and so means *to apply work to* or *make.*

Radical: 亻 **'upright person'** **Index # 19**

Character components: 亻 **+** 乍 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **作** **zuō** work
   这 本 小说 是她的 成名 之 作。
   Zhè běn xiǎoshuō shì tāde chéngmíng zhī zuō.
   This novel is the work that made her famous.

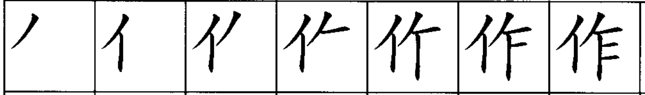
2. **作家** **zuòjiā** writer
   我 从小 就 想 当 作家。
   Wǒ cōngxiǎo jiù xiǎng dāng zuòjiā.
   I've wanted to be a writer since I was small.

3. **作文** **zuōwěn** essay
   这 是 一 篇 小学生 的 作文。
   Zhè shì yī piān xiǎoxuéshēng de zuōwěn.
   This is an essay by a school child.

4. **作业** **zuòyè** assignment
   今天 的 作业 还 没 做 呢。
   Jīntiān de zuòyè hāi měi zuō ne.
   I haven't done today's assignment yet.

5. **作用** **zuòyòng** intention
   他 说 那 句 话 有 什么 作用?
   Tā shuō nà jù huà yǒu shénme zuòyòng?
   What was his intention in saying that?

The top horizontal is longer than those below it. **7 strokes**



98

医 **yī** cure, treat

Full form

醫

The simplified form takes the top left component of the full form as it is often the case in simplification.

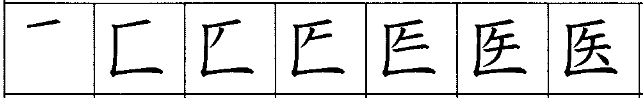
Radical: 匸 **'3-sided frame (open at the right)' Index # 13**

Character components: 匸 + 矢 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **医 yī** cure, treat
   中医 把他的 病 医好。
   Zhōngyī bǎ tāde bìng yīhǎo.
   The Chinese doctor cured him.
2. **医生 yīshēng** doctor
   他 是 内科 医生， 不 做 手术。
   Tā shì nèikē yīshēng, bú zuò shǒushù.
   He's a physician, he does not operate.
3. **医务所 yīwùsuǒ** clinic
   今天 医务所 有 很多 人。
   Jīntiān yīwùsuǒ yǒu hěnduō rén.
   There are lots of people in the clinic today.
4. **医院 yīyuàn** hospital
   请问， 到 医院 怎么 走?
   Qǐngwèn, dào yīyuàn zěnme zǒu?
   Excuse me, how do you get to the hospital?
5. **医科 yīkē** medical courses in general
   她 在 大学 念 医科。
   Tā zài dàxué niàn yīkē.
   She studies medicine at university.

The second stroke is made up of vertical and horizontal lines. **7 strokes**



99

生 **shēng** birth, life

The character depicts a *growing plant.*

Radical: 丿 **'downward-left stroke'** **Index # 4**

Character component: 生 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 生 **shēng** give birth to
我 家的 猫 生了 三 只 小猫。
Wǒ jiā de māo shēngle sān zhī xiǎomāo.
Our cat gave birth to three kittens.

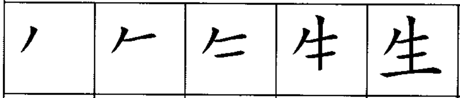
2. 生日 **shēngrì** birthday
今天 是 谁的 生日?
Jīntiān shì shéide shēngrì?
Whose birthday is it today?

3. 生词 **shēngcí** new word
我 今天 学了 五 个 生词。
Wǒ jīntiān xuéle wǔ ge shēngcí.
I've learnt five new words today.

4. 大学生 **dàxuéshēng** university student
美国 大学生 很 自由。
Měiguó dàxuéshēng hěn zìyóu.
American students have a lot of freedom.

5. 生产 **shēngchǎn** manufacture
这 家 工厂 生产 运动鞋。
Zhè jiā gōngchǎng shēngchǎn yùndòngxié.
This factory manufactures sport shoes.

The bottom horizontal stroke is the longest. **5 strokes**



100

忙 **māng** busy

The character combines *heart* 忄 with the phonetic 亡 to indicate the activities related to *being busy.*

Radical: 忄 **'upright heart'**

Index # 33

Character components: 忄 **+** 亡

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **忙** **māng** busy
   我 最近 很 忙。
   Wǒ zuìjìn hěn máng.
   I've been very busy lately.

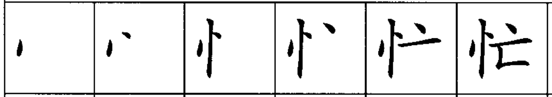
2. **忙着** **mángzhe** busy with something
   他 正 忙着 做饭 呢。
   Tā zhèng mángzhe zuòfàn ne.
   He's busying himself preparing the meal.

3. **忙人** **mángrén** busy person
   他 是 个 大 忙人。
   Tā shì ge dà mángrén.
   He's a very busy man.

4. **忙碌** **mánglù** be busy
   她 忙碌了 一个 上午， 结果 把 饭菜 做好。
   Tā mánglùle yí ge shàngwǔ, jiéguǒ bǎ fàncài zuòhǎo.
   She was busy all morning, and eventually got the cooking done.

5. **帮忙** **bāngmáng** help
   他 来 找 人 帮忙。
   Tā lái zhǎo rén bāngmáng.
   He came for help.

The last stroke is a vertical bend. **6 strokes**



Quiz 10 (91–100)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

狗	比	医	猫
大	小	生	学
工	岁	很	忙
作	女	里	男

	Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
(i)	大	小		dàxiǎo	size
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check the English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Nǐ jiějie zuò shénme gōngzuò?									
(ii)	Tāde gōngzuò máng bumáng?									
(iii)	Nǐ gēge bǐ nǐ dà jǐ suì?									
(iv)	Nǐ mèimei bǐ nǐ xiǎo jǐ suì?									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)		(ii)	
小 shí	age in years	工 zī	help
大 shēng	competition	生 cí	cook
岁 shù	hour	医生	do business
比 jiào	everybody	做 cài	wage/salary
比不上	compare	bāng 忙	new words
比 sài	puppy	做 shēngyì	university student
小狗	not as good as	工作	doctor
大 jiā	loudly	大学生	work

CHARACTER BUILDING 2 (51—100)

A. Memorize the following radicals and their English names. As a review exercise, write the pinyin spelling and meaning.

1. [一] 'horizontal stroke'

哥 (________) ______________ ； 两 (________) ______________ ．

2. [丿] 'downward-left stroke'

生 (________) ______________ ； 九 (________) ______________ ；

么 (________) ______________ ．

3. [讠] 'word'

谢 (________) ______________ ； 谁 (________) ______________ ；

语 (________) ______________ ； 说 (________) ______________ ；

认 (________) ______________ ； 识 (________) ______________ ．

4. [八] 'eight'

八 (________) ______________ ； 弟 (________) ______________ ．

5. [亻] 'upright person'

们 (________) ______________ ； 作 (________) ______________ ；

体 (________) ______________ ； 做 (________) ______________ ．

6. [阝] 'right ear-lobe'

那 (________) ______________ ； 都 (________) ______________ ；

7. [氵] '3 drops of water'

没 (________) ______________ ； 汉 (________) ______________ ；

8. [宀] 'roof'

家 (________) ______________ ； 字 (________) ______________ ；

9. [辶] 'movement'

这 (________) ______________ ； 还 (________) ______________ ；

10. [小] 'small'

小 (________) ______________ ； 少 (________) ______________ ；

11. [口] 'mouth'

口 (________) ______________ ； 只 (________) ______________ ；

兄 (________) ______________ ； 名 (________) ______________ ．

12. [犭] 'animal'

狗 (________) ______________ ； 猫 (________) ______________ ．

13. [女] 'female'

女 (________) ______________ ; 妈 (________) ______________ ;
她 (________) ______________ ; 姐 (________) ______________ ;
妹 (________) ______________ .

14. [子] 'child'

子 (________) ______________ ; 学 (________) ______________ ;
孩 (________) ______________ .

15. [心] 'heart'

怎 (________) ______________ ; 您 (________) ______________ ;

16. [父] 'father'

父 (________) ______________ ; 爸 (________) ______________ .

17. [月] 'moon/flesh'

有 (________) ______________ ; 朋 (________) ______________ .

B. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters classified under the following radicals.

1. [乛] 'horizontal bend hook' 也 (________) ______________
2. [匚] 'three-sided frame (open at the right)' 医 (________) ______________
3. [儿] 'son' 儿 (________) ______________
4. [几] 'how many' 几 (________) ______________
5. [力] 'strength' 男 (________) ______________
6. [忄] 'upright heart' 忙 (________) ______________
7. [工] 'work' 工 (________) ______________
8. [巾] 'napkin' 师 (________) ______________
9. [山] 'hill' 岁 (________) ______________
10. [彳] 'double upright person' 很 (________) ______________
11. [木] 'tree' 样 (________) ______________
12. [比] 'compare' 比 (________) ______________
13. [立] 'erect' 亲 (________) ______________
14. [母] 'mother' 母 (________) ______________
15. [老] 'old' 老 (________) ______________
16. [身] 'body' 身 (________) ______________
17. [里] 'inside' 里 (________) ______________

C. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters which share the following components. (Note that these components are not necessarily used as radicals.)

1. [子] 子 (________) ______________ ; 学 (________) ______________ ;
字 (________) ______________ ; 孩 (________) ______________ ;
好 (________) ______________ .

2. [儿] 儿 (________) ______________ ; 兄 (________) ______________ .

3. [也] 也 (________) ______________ ; 她 (________) ______________ .
他 (________) ______________ .

REVIEW 2 (51–100)

The following are words classified under parts of speech. Write the pinyin and meaning.

Pronouns
我们 (________) ______________ ; 我们的 (________) ______________ :
你们 (________) ______________ ; 你们的 (________) ______________ ;
他们 (________) ______________ ; 他们的 (________) ______________ ;
她们 (________) ______________ ; 她们的 (________) ______________ .

Demostrative pronouns
这 (________) ____________ ; 这些 (________) ______________ ;
这儿 (________) ____________ ; 这里 (________) ______________ ;
那 (________) ____________ ; 那些 (________) ______________ ;
那儿 (________) ____________ ; 那里 (________) ______________ .

Interrogative pronouns
谁的 (________) ______________ ; 哪儿 (________) ______________ ;
哪里 (________) ______________ ; 怎么 (________) ______________ ;
怎样 (________) ______________ ; 怎么样 (________) ______________ ;
几 (________) ______________ ; 几个 (________) ______________ .

Nouns
父亲 (________) ______________ ; 母亲 (________) ______________ ;
父母 (________) ______________ ; 哥哥 (________) ______________ ;
姐姐 (________) ______________ ; 弟弟 (________) ______________ ;
妹妹 (________) ______________ ; 兄弟 (________) ______________ ;
姐妹 (________) ______________ ; 家 (________) ______________ ;
国家 (________) ______________ ; 大家 (________) ______________ ;
人家 (________) ______________ ;
孩子 (________) ______________ ; 儿子 (________) ______________ ;
女儿 (________) ______________ ; 身体 (________) ______________ ;
老师 (________) ______________ ; 医生 (________) ______________ ;
学生 (________) ______________ ; 狗 (________) ______________ ;
猫 (________) ______________ ; 岁 (________) ______________ ;
工作 (________) ______________ .

Verbs 有 (________) __________; 没有 (________) __________;
谢 (________) __________; 做 (________) __________;

Adjectives 男 (________) __________; 女 (________) __________;
大 (________) __________; 小 (________) __________;
忙 (________) __________.

Adverbs 很 (________) __________; 比 (________) __________.

Conjunctions 还 (________) __________; 也 (________) __________;
都 (________) __________.

Numbers 两 (________) __________.

Classifiers 口 (________) __________; 只 (________) __________.

Noun phrases 中国人口 (______________) ____________________;
美国人口 (______________) ____________________;
英国人口 (______________) ____________________;
小学生 (______________) ____________________;
中学生 (______________) ____________________;
大学生 (______________) ____________________;
好学生 (______________) ____________________.
好朋友 (______________) ____________________;
老朋友 (______________) ____________________;
男朋友 (______________) ____________________.
女朋友 (______________) ____________________.

WORD/SENTENCE PUZZLE 2

Find and CIRCLE words, phrases or sentences hidden in the puzzle. They can be found horizontally from left to right or vertically. The lines across and down are indicated by numbers. Write the meaning next to the pinyin. The first one is done for you.

ACROSS (left to right)

2. Nǐ yǒu jǐ ge xiōngdì jiěmèi? *How many brothers and sisters do you have?*
5. Tā shuō Hànyǔ bǐ wǒ shuō de hǎo. ____________________
7. (i) búshì ____________________
7. (ii) liǎng ge gōngzuò ____________________
9. nánhái ____________________
10. hěnduō xiǎoxuésheng hé zhōngxuésheng ____________________
12. Zhè zhī gǒu hěn dà. ____________________
13. xiǎomāo ____________________

DOWN

1. Tā fùmǔ shēntǐ hěn hǎo.
3. Nǐ huì shuō Hànyǔ bú huì?
4. nǚxuéshēng
6. Wǒ yǒu liǎng zhī māo hé yì zhī gǒu.
8. èrdì
9. (i) nánshēng
9. (ii) dàxiǎo
10. xiǎomèi

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
1	名	哪	写	您	不	说	十	二	儿	小
2	们	谢	你	有	几	个	兄	弟	姐	妹
3	亲	妈	会	哪	七	医	里	多	吗	师
4	还	爸	说	是	会	字	我	名	语	么
5	他	说	汉	语	比	我	说	的	好	老
6	父	家	语	哥	忙	有	姓	学	妈	九
7	母	口	不	是	语	两	个	工	作	人
8	身	怎	会	英	多	只	少	汉	问	请
9	体	字	也	女	样	猫	名	这	男	孩
10	很	多	小	学	生	和	中	学	生	叫
11	好	识	写	生	您	一	多	吗	她	岁
12	认	那	友	少	这	只	狗	很	大	写
13	会	朋	我	名	都	狗	谁	他	小	猫

101 **Full form**

现 xiān appear 現

The character combines *king* 王 and *see* 见 to suggest the idea that when the king appears everyone is *watching*.

Radical: 王 **'king'** **Index # 79**
or 见 **'see'** **Index # 93**
Character components: 王 **+** 见 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **现** **xiān** appear
   他 脸上 现出了 笑容。
   Tā liǎnshang xiànchūle xiàoróng.
   A smile appears on his face.

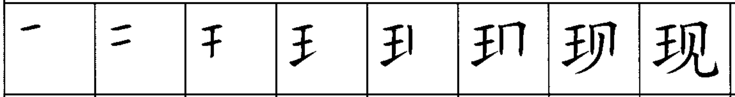
2. **现在** **xiànzài** now
   现在 几 点 了?
   Xiànzài jǐ diǎn le?
   What's the time now?

3. **现金** **xiànjīn** cash (literally, ready money)
   你 可以 给 现金 吗?
   Nǐ kěyǐ gěi xiànjīn ma?
   Can you pay cash?

4. **现成** **xiànchéng** ready-made
   定做 衣服太 贵 了, 买 现成 的吧。
   Dìngzuò yīfu tài guì le, mǎi xiànchéng de ba.
   It's too expensive to tailor-made clothes, let's buy ready-made ones.

5. **表现** **biǎoxiàn** behavior
   他 今天 的 表现 很 好。
   Tā jīntiān de biǎoxiàn hěn hǎo.
   He's behaving very well today.

The last stroke is a vertical-bend hook. **8 strokes**



102

在 **zāi** at

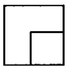
The character signifies grass coming out of the *ground* 土 . It came to mean *exist*.

Radical: 土 **'earth'**

Index # 40

Character components: 𠂇 + 丨 + 土

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **在** **zāi** at
   你 住 在 哪里?
   Nǐ zhù zāi nǎlǐ?
   Where do you live?

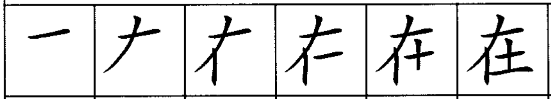
2. **在家** **zāi jiā** at home
   我 今天 晚上 不 在家。
   Wǒ jīntiān wǎnshang bú zāi jiā.
   I won't be home tonight.

3. **在内** **zāinèi** included
   连 我 在内 一共 是 八 个 人。
   Lián wǒ zāinèi yígòng shì bā ge rén.
   Including me, there are altogether eight people.

4. **在外** **zāiwāi** excluded
   这 是 饭钱, 服务费 在外。
   Zhè shì fànqián, fúwùfèi zāiwāi.
   That's the price of the meal exclusive of service charge.

5. **实在** **shízāi** really
   我 实在 不 知道。
   Wǒ shízāi bù zhīdao.
   I really don't know.

The bottom horizontal stroke is slightly longer. **6 strokes**



103 **Full form**

点 **diǎn** dot 點

The four dots of fire in the left component, *black* 黑 of the full form 點, are moved over to the right component, *occupy* 占, to give the simplified form 点.

Radical: 灬 **'4 dots of fire'** **Index # 71**

Character components: 占 + 灬 **Character configuration:**

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **点** **diǎn** a little
   他 今天 好 点 了。
   Tā jīntiān hǎo diǎn le.
   He's a bit better today.

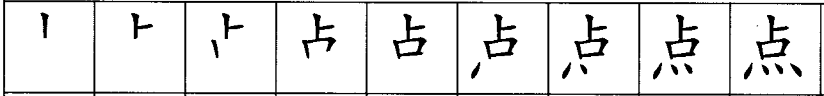
2. **五点零七分** **wǔ diǎn líng qī fēn** 5:07
   现在 五 点 零 七 分。
   Xiànzài wǔ diǎn líng qī fēn.
   It's now seven minutes past five.

3. **晚点** **wǎndiǎn** behind schedule
   飞机 晚点 了。
   Fēijī wǎndiǎn le.
   The plane is late.

4. **点菜** **diǎncài** choose dishes from a menu
   可以 点菜 了。
   Kěyǐ diǎncài le.
   We're ready to order now.

5. **点头** **diǎntóu** nod one's head
   他 已经 点头 了。
   Tā yǐjīng diǎntóu le.
   He's already ok'd it.

Note the way the dots are drawn. **9 strokes**



104

钟 **zhōng** clock

Full form

鍾

The full form represented the old idea of a bell made of *metal* 金 as big as a *boy* 童 which was used to tell time. The phonetic 中 is used in simplification.

Radical: 钅 **'metal'**

Index # 122

Character components: 钅 **+** 中

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **钟 zhōng** clock
   送 礼物 千万 不要 送 钟。
   Sòng lǐwù qiānwàn búyào sòng zhōng.
   When buying a gift, be sure that it is not a clock.
   (Note that the homonym of sòng zhōng *is* sòngzhōng *'attend upon a dying person'.)*

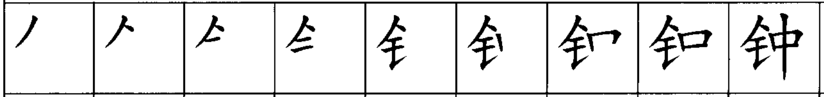
2. **点钟 diǎnzhōng** o'clock
   他 上午 十 点钟 来。
   Tā shàngwǔ shí diǎnzhōng lái.
   He's coming here at 10 a.m.

3. **一刻钟 yí kèzhōng** 15 minutes, a quarter of an hour
   我 等了 一 刻钟。
   Wǒ děngle yí kèzhōng.
   I waited for a quarter of an hour.

4. **钟头 zhōngtóu** hour
   我 看了 三 个 钟头 电视。
   Wǒ kànle sān ge zhōngtóu diànshì.
   I've spent three hours watching television.

5. **钟情 zhōngqíng** be deeply in love
   他们 两 个 一 见 钟情。
   Tāmen liǎng ge yí jiàn zhōngqíng.
   They fell in love at first sight.

The fifth stroke is a vertical tick. **9 strokes**



105

分 **fēn** divide

The character combines 八 *cut in two* and 刀 *knife* to give the meaning *divide.*

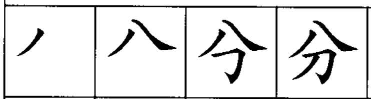
Radical: 八 **'eight'**
or 刀 **'knife'**
Character components: 八 + 刀

Index # 17
Index # 30
Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **分** **fēn** divide
   这 药 分 三 次吃。
   Zhè yào fēn sān cì chī.
   This medicine is to be taken in three separate doses.
2. **分钟** **fēnzhōng** minute
   我 五 分钟 就 回来。
   Wǒ wǔ fēnzhōng jiù huílai.
   I'll be back in five minutes.
3. **分别** **fēnbié** difference
   有 什么 分别?
   Yǒu shénme fēnbié?
   What's the difference?
4. **分辨** **fēnbiàn** distinguish
   很 难 分辨 谁 是 谁 非。
   Hěn nán fēnbiàn shéi shì shéi fēi.
   It's hard to tell who is right and who is wrong.
5. **百分之三十** **bǎifēnzhīsānshí** 30%
   房租 涨了 百分之三十。
   Fángzū zhǎngle bǎifēnzhīsānshí.
   Rent has gone up 30 per cent.

Leave a gap between the top two strokes. **4 strokes**



106

了 **le** [particle]

The character is generally used after a verb to indicate the completion of an action. It is also used to indicate the emergence of a new situation.

Radical: 乛 **'horizontal bend'** **Index # 5**

Character component: 了 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 了 **le** (new situation).
   现在 几 点 了?
   Xiànzài jǐ diǎn le?
   What's the time now?
2. 了 **le** (new situation)
   下雨 了。
   Xiàyǔ le.
   It's starting to rain.
3. 了 **le** (completed action).
   我 学了 一百二十个 汉字。
   Wǒ xuéle yībǎi-èrshí ge Hànzì.
   I've learnt 120 Chinese characters.

The last stroke ends with a hook. **2 strokes**

乛	了											

107

半

bàn half

The character depicted a *cow* 干 being split 丷 in *half*. It suggests dividing goods and generally means *a half*.

Radical: 八 **'eight'** **Index # 17**
or 十 **'ten'** **Index # 11**
Character component: 半 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **半 bàn** half
   从 这里 去 要 半（个）小时。
   Cōng zhèlǐ qù yào bàn (ge) xiǎoshí.
   It'll take half an hour from here.

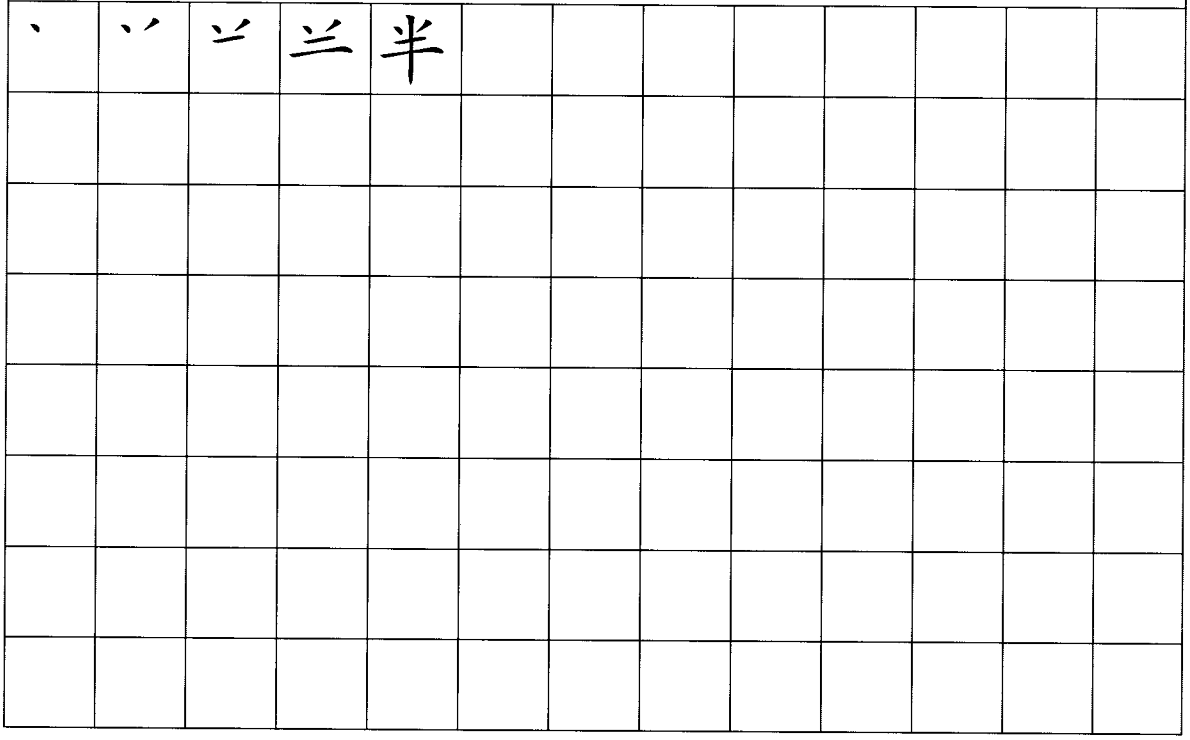
2. **一半 yībàn** half
   这 箱 桔子 有 一半 坏了。
   Zhè xiāng júzi yǒu yībàn huàile.
   Half of this box of oranges is rotten.

3. **一倍半 yībèibàn** 150%
   这里 的 房价 十 年 内 增加了 一倍半。
   Zhèlǐ de fángjià shí nián nèi zēngjiāle yībèibàn.
   Property values have increased one and a half times over the last ten years.

4. **半新不旧 bànxīn-bùjiù** showing signs of wear (literally, no longer new)
   他 穿着 一 身 半新不旧 的衣服。
   Tā chuānzhe yì shēn bànxīn-bùjiù de yīfu.
   The clothes he was wearing, though not shabby, were far from new.

5. **半天 bàntiān** a long time (literally, half the day)
   我们 谈了 半天 也 没 结果。
   Wǒmen tánle bàntiān yě méi jiéguǒ.
   We discussed the matter for a long time but did not come to any conclusion.

The bottom horizontal stroke is longer. **5 strokes**



108

吃 **chī** eat

The character combines *mouth* 口 and *beg* 乞 to suggest the result of soliciting food. It means *to eat.*

Radical: 口 **'mouth'**

Index # 50

Character components: 口 + 乞

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **吃** **chī** eat
   我 每天 都 吃个 苹果。
   Wǒ měitiān dōu chī ge píngguǒ.
   I eat an apple every day.

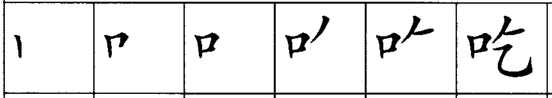
2. **吃饭** **chīfàn** have a meal
   我们 什么 时候 吃饭?
   Wǒmen shénme shíhou chīfàn?
   When do we eat?

3. **吃得下** **chīdexià** be able to eat
   我 吃得下 两 碗 饭。
   Wǒ chīdexià liǎng wǎn fàn.
   I can eat two bowls of rice.

4. **吃不下** **chībuxià** not able to eat
   我 吃不下 两 碗 饭。
   Wǒ chībuxià liǎng wǎn fàn.
   I can't eat two bowls of rice.

5. **吃苦** **chīkǔ** bear hardships (literally, eat bitterness)
   他 小时候 吃了 不少 苦。
   Tā xiǎoshíhou chīle bùshǎo kǔ.
   He suffered a great deal in his childhood.

The last stroke is a horizontal-bend-hook. **6 strokes**



109

早 **zǎo** early

The character depicted the *sun* 日 shining on the grass early in the morning. From this, it came to mean *early.*

Radical: 日 **'sun'**

Index # 90

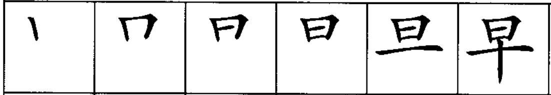
Character components: 日 **+** 十

Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **早 zǎo** early
   我 早 知道 了。
   Wǒ zǎo zhīdao le.
   I knew that long ago.
2. **早饭 zǎofàn** breakfast
   我 早饭 吃 点儿 水果。
   Wǒ zǎofàn chī diǎnr shuǐguǒ.
   I eat fruit for my breakfast.
3. **早上 zǎoshang** morning
   早上 好!
   Zǎoshang hǎo!
   Good morning!
4. **早晨 zǎochēn** early morning
   早晨 空气 清新。
   Zǎochēn kōngqì qīngxīn.
   The air is fresh early in the morning.
5. **早日 zǎorì** at an early date
   祝 你 早日 恢复 健康。
   Zhù nǐ zǎorì huīfù jiànkāng.
   I hope you'll get well soon.

The bottom horizontal stroke is longer. **6 strokes**



110

饭 fàn meal

Full form

飯

The character combines *eat* 饣 and the phonetic 反 to give the meaning of *cooked rice* or *meal.*

Radical: 饣 **'food'**

Index # 59

Character components: 饣 **+** 反

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **饭** **fàn** meal
   饭 前 洗手。
   Fàn qián xǐshǒu.
   Wash your hands before meals.

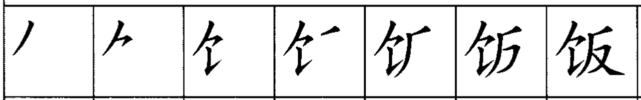
2. **饭菜** **fàncài** food
   这 个 饭馆 的 饭菜 做得 不错。
   Zhè ge fànguǎn de fàncài zuòde búcuò.
   The food in this restaurant is quite good.

3. **饭馆儿** **fànguǎnr** restaurant
   学校 对面 有 一家 饭馆儿。
   Xuéxiào duìmiàn yǒu yì jiā fànguǎnr.
   There's a restaurant opposite the school.

4. **饭店** **fàndiàn** hotel
   我 住 在 北京 饭店。
   Wǒ zhù zài Běijīng Fàndiàn.
   I'm staying at Beijing Hotel.

5. **米饭** **mǐfàn** boiled rice
   我 平常 吃 两 碗 米饭。
   Wǒ píngcháng chī liǎng wǎn mǐfàn.
   I usually eat two bowls of rice.

The second stroke is a horizontal hook. **7 strokes**



Quiz 11 (101–110)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

工	忙	作	吃
少	多	了	早
现	在	分	饭
几	点	钟	半

	Word or phrase			**Pinyin**	**Meaning**
(i)	现	在		xiànzài	now
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Xiànzài jǐ diǎnzhōng le?									
(ii)	Xiànzài liùdiǎnbàn le.									
(iii)	Nǐmen jǐ diǎn chī zǎofàn?									
(iv)	Wǒmen qīdiǎnbàn chī zǎofàn.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

现 jīn	minute
biǎo 现	quarter hour
分钟	cash
一 kè 钟	behavior
两点钟	hour
钟 tóu	2 o'clock
在家	difference
分 bié	at home

(ii)

一半	half
半 tiān	early morning
吃苦	food
吃不下	bear hardship
早 chén	boiled rice
饭 guǎnr	a long time
饭 cài	unable to eat
mǐ 饭	restaurant

111 **Full form**

时 **shí** time 時

The full form combines *sun* 日 with *temple* 寺 to represent a place where people used to keep track of *time*. In simplification *inch* 寸 replaces 寺 to give the idea of *an inch of the sun.*

Radical: 日 **'sun'** **Index # 90**

Character components: 日 **+** 寸 **Character configuration:** ◫

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **时** **shí** time
   大夫 说 要 按时 吃药。
   Dàifu shuō yào ànshí chīyào.
   The doctor said to take the medicine at the right time.
2. **时间** **shíjiān** time
   没有 时间 了，我们 得 走 了。
   Méiyǒu shíjiān le, wǒmen děi zǒu le.
   There's no time, we must be going.
3. **时候** **shíhou** time
   现在 什么 时候 了?
   Xiànzài shénme shíhou le?
   What's the time now?
4. **时机** **shíjī** opportunity
   他 在 等待 时机。
   Tā zài děngdài shíjī.
   He is waiting for an opportunity.
5. **时髦** **shímáo** fashionable
   她 喜欢 穿 时髦 的 服装。
   Tā xǐhuan chuān shímáo de fúzhuāng.
   She likes to wear fashionable clothes.

The last stroke ends with a hook. **7 strokes**

丨	冂	月	日	日一	日丁	时						

112

候 **hōu** time; wait

The character combines *person* 亻, *vertical stroke* 丨 and *expect* 关 to suggest an expectant atmosphere in which something is about to happen.

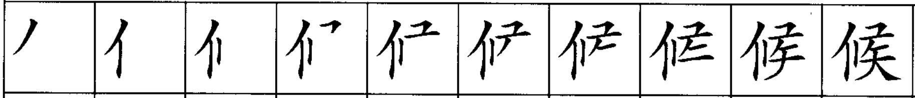
Radical: 亻 **‘upright person’** **Index # 19**

Character components: 亻 **+** 丨 **+** 关 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **候 hōu** wait
   请 稍 候一会儿。
   Qǐng shāo hōu yīhuìr.
   Please wait a moment.
2. **时候 shíhou** time
   现在 什么 时候 了?
   Xiànzài shénme shíhou le?
   What’s the time now?
3. **有时候 yǒu shíhou** sometimes
   我 有 时候 去 看 电影。
   Wǒ yǒu shíhou qù kàn diànyǐng.
   Sometimes I go to see a movie.
4. **气候 qìhōu** climate
   他不 适应 这里 的 气候。
   Tā bú shìyìng zhèlǐ de qìhōu.
   He’s not used to the climate here.
5. **问候 wènhōu** give regards to
   请 代 我 问候 你 父母。
   Qǐng dài wǒ wènhōu nǐ fùmǔ.
   Please send my regards to your parents.

Remember to write the third stroke. **10 strokes**



113

上 **shàng** above; go up

The bottom line represents the surface while the strokes above indicate something *above* the surface.

Radical: 一 **'horizontal stroke'** **Index # 2**

Character component: 上 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 上 **shàng** most recent, last
   上 星期三 我 有 事儿。
   Shàng Xīngqīsān wǒ yǒu shìr.
   I was busy last Wednesday.
2. 上 **shàng** go to
   你 上 哪儿去?
   Nǐ shàng nǎr qù?
   Where are you going?
3. 上面 **shàngmian** above
   书 上面 有 我的 名字。
   Shū shàngmiàn yǒu wǒde míngzi.
   My name is written on the book.
4. 上午 **shàngwǔ** a.m.
   今天 上午 风 很 大。
   Jīntiān shàngwǔ fēng hěn dà.
   It's quite windy this morning.
5. 上学 **shàngxué** go to school
   小孩 已经 五 岁了,该 上学 了。
   Xiǎohái yǐjīng wǔ suì le, gāi shàngxué le.
   The child is already five, she/he should be going to school.

The top horizontal stroke is shorter. **3 strokes**

丨 ⺊ 上

114

下 xiâ below

The bottom line represents the surface while the strokes below indicate something *below* the surface.

Radical: 一 **‘horizontal stroke’** **Index # 2**

Character component: 下 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **下 xiâ** next
   下 星期三 我 有 事儿。
   Xiâ Xīngqīsān wŏ yŏu shìr.
   I’ll be busy next Wednesday.

2. **下面 xiâmian** below
   图表 下面 有 说明。
   Tūbiăo xiâmiân yŏu shuōmíng.
   There are captions below the chart.

3. **下班 xiâbān** get off work
   你 今天 几 点 下班?
   Nĭ jīntiān jĭ diăn xiâbān?
   When will you be finishing work today?

4. **下午 xiâwŭ** afternoon
   下午 有 雷阵雨。
   Xiâwŭ yŏu lĕizhênyŭ.
   There’ll be thunderstorms in the afternoon.

5. **下雨 xiâyŭ** rain
   外面 下雨。
   Wâimian xiâyŭ.
   It’s raining outside.

End the last stroke firmly. **3 strokes**

一	丅	下										

115

午 **wǔ** noon

The character combines the component 𠂉 and the character 十 which indicates *center* to give the idea that when the sun is right in the center, it's *noon.*

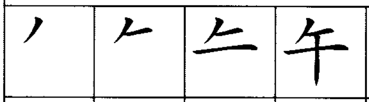
Radical: 丿 **'downward-left stroke'** **Index # 4**

Character components: 丿 **+** 干 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **午** **wǔ** noon
   午 前 就是 中午 一点 之前。
   Wǔ qián jiùshì zhōngwǔ yīdiǎn zhīqián.
   Forenoon is before 1:00 p.m.
2. **中午** **zhōngwǔ** noon
   我 跟 他 约好 中午 见面。
   Wǒ gēn tā yuēhǎo zhōngwǔ jiànmiàn.
   I've arranged to meet with him at noon.
3. **午饭** **wǔfàn** lunch
   今天 午饭 吃 什么?
   Jīntiān wǔfàn chī shénme?
   What's for lunch today?
4. **午睡** **wǔshuì** afternoon nap
   中国人 有 午睡 的 习惯。
   Zhōngguórén yǒu wǔshuì de xíguàn.
   Chinese people have a habit of taking an afternoon nap.
5. **午间** **wǔjiān** afternoon (adjective)
   现在 播送 的 是 午间 新闻。
   Xiànzài bōsòng de shì wǔjiān xīnwén.
   We are now broadcasting the afternoon news.

The bottom horizontal stroke is longer. **4 strokes**

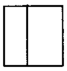


116

晚 **wǎn** late, evening

The character combines *sun* 日 and *exempt* 免 to suggest that when one is free from the scorching sun, it is *evening*. By extension, it gives the idea of *late*.

Radical: 日 **'sun'** **Index # 90**

Character components: 日 + 免 **Character configuration:** 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **晚** **wǎn** late
   现在 去还 不 晚。
   Xiànzài qù hái bù wǎn.
   It's still not too late to go.

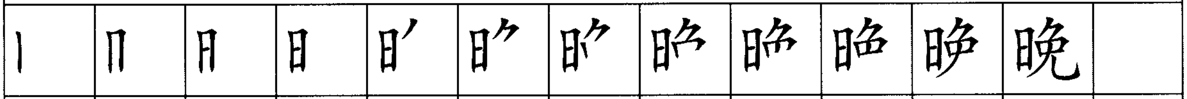
2. **晚上** **wǎnshang** evening
   今天 晚上 我 请客。
   Jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ qǐngkè.
   I'm buying dinner tonight.

3. **晚饭** **wǎnfàn** evening meal
   今天 晚饭 很 丰盛。
   Jīntiān wǎnfàn hěn fēngshèng.
   Tonight's dinner is sumptuous.

4. **晚班** **wǎnbān** evening shift
   这个 工作 需要 上 晚班。
   Zhè ge gōngzuò xūyào shàng wǎnbān.
   This job involves working night shifts.

5. **晚点** **wǎndiǎn** behind schedule (train/bus/plane/ferry)
   飞机 晚点 了。
   Fēijī wǎndiǎn le.
   The plane is late.

The last stroke is a vertical-bend-hook. **12 strokes**



117

起 qǐ rise

The character combines *walk* 走 and the phonetic 己 to suggest the action of *rising*.

Radical: 走 **'walk'**

Index # 156

Character components: 走 + 己

Character configuration: ⿺

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **起** **qǐ** get out of bed
   早睡 早起 对 身体 好。
   Zǎo-shuì zǎo-qǐ duì shēntǐ hǎo.
   Early to bed and early to rise is good for the health.

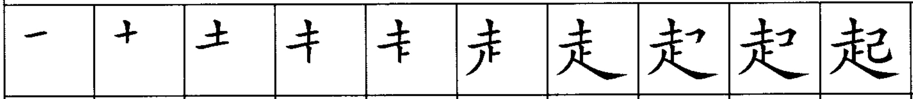
2. **起床** **qǐchuáng** get out of bed
   今天 我 六点半 起床。
   Jīntiān wǒ liùdiǎnbàn qǐchuáng.
   I got up at 6:30 today.

3. **起动** **qǐdòng** start
   汽车 起动，请 抓好 扶手。
   Qìchē qǐdòng, qǐng zhuāhǎo fúshǒu.
   The bus is starting, please hold on to the handrail.

4. **起码** **qǐmǎ** at least
   这 个 工作 起码 要 三 个 月 才 能 完成。
   Zhè ge gōngzuò qǐmǎ yào sān ge yuè cái néng wánchéng.
   This job will take at least three months.

5. **一起** **yìqǐ** together
   跟 我 一起 去 看 电影 吧。
   Gēn wǒ yìqǐ qù kàn diànyǐng ba.
   Let's see a movie together.

The last stroke is a vertical-bend-hook. **10 strokes**



118

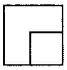
床 **chuáng** bed

The character signifies something made of *wood* 木 and is placed under the roof of a big house 广 . Thus, it means *bed.*

Radical: 广 **'broad'** **Index # 36**

or 木 **'tree'** **Index # 81**

Character components: 广 **+** 木 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **床 chúang** bed
   房间 里 放着 两 张 床。
   Fángjiān li fàngzhe liǎng zhāng chuáng.
   There are two beds in the room.

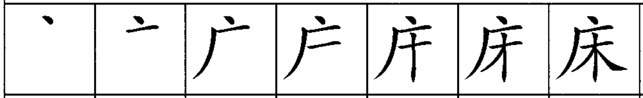
2. **床上 chúangshang** in bed
   我 喜欢 躺 在 床上 看书。
   Wǒ xǐhuan tǎng zài chuángshang kànshū.
   I like to read in bed.

3. **床单 chúangdān** bed sheet
   该 换 床单 了。
   Gāi huàn chuángdān le.
   The bedsheets need changing.

4. **单人床 dānrénchuáng** single bed
   我 觉得 单人床 太 窄。
   Wǒ juéde dānrénchuáng tài zhǎi.
   I find that single beds are too narrow for me.

5. **双人床 shuāngrénchuáng** double bed
   我 喜欢 睡 双人床。
   Wǒ xǐhuan shuì shuāngrénchuáng.
   I like to sleep on a double bed.

The last stroke tapers off. **7 strokes**



119

跑

pǎo run

The character combines *foot* 足 and the phonetic 包 to suggest the action of *running*.

Radical: 足 **'foot'**

Character components: 足 **+** 包

Index # 164

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **跑** **pǎo** run
   她 跑得 很 快。
   Tā pǎode hěn kuài.
   She can run very fast.

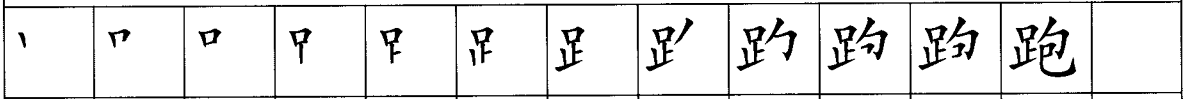
2. **跑步** **pǎobù** jogging
   他 每天 早晨 都 跑步。
   Tā měitiān zǎochén dōu pǎobù.
   He jogs every morning.

3. **跑道** **pǎodào** runway
   飞机 正在 跑道 上 行驶。
   Fēijī zhèngzài pǎodào shang xíngshǐ.
   The plane is taxiing on the runway.

4. **赛跑** **sàipǎo** race
   他 经常 参加 长距离 赛跑。
   Tā jīngcháng cānjiā chángjùlí sàipǎo.
   He often takes part in long-distance races.

5. **长跑** **chángpǎo** long-distance running
   我 参加了 五千 米 的 长跑。
   Wǒ cānjiāle wǔqiān mǐ de chángpǎo.
   I took part in a 5000 meter race.

The seventh stroke is a tick. **12 strokes**



120

步 **bù** step

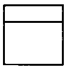
The character can be thought of as *foot* 止 and *few* 少, indicating the distance of one walking *stride*. Note that the lower part of the character 少 loses the right dot.

Radical: 止 **'stop'**

Index # 88

Character components: 止 + 少

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **步** **bù** step
只有 几步路了。
Zhǐyǒu jǐ bù lù le.
It's only a few steps away.

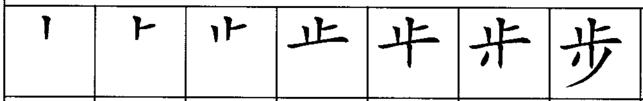
2. **步骤** **bùzhòu** step, stage
她 有 步骤 地 进行 工作。
Tā yǒu bùzhòu de jìnxíng gōngzuò.
She carries out the work systematically.

3. **脚步** **jiǎobù** footstep
走路 时 请 放 轻 脚步。
Zǒulù shí qǐng fàng qīng jiǎobù.
Please walk softly.

4. **进步** **jìnbù** make progress
你写 汉字 很 有 进步。
Nǐ xiě Hànzì hěn yǒu jìnbù.
You are making great progress in your Chinese character writing.

5. **止步** **zhǐbù** out of bounds
游人 止步。
Yóurén zhǐbù
No visitors.

The last stroke sweeps down to left. **7 strokes**



Quiz 12 (111–120)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

起	时	跑	步
床	晚	上	早
工	现	午	下
在	候	里	分

Word or phrase		
起	床	

Pinyin	**Meaning**
qǐchuáng	get ouf of bed

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Ley.

(i)	Nǐ shénme shíhou qǐchuáng?									
(ii)	Wǒ qīdiǎnzhōng qǐchuáng.									
(iii)	Nǐ pǎo bu pǎobù?									
(iv)	Pǎo, yǒu shíhou pǎo.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

时 jiān
时 kèbiǎo
什么时候
qǐ 候
有时候
上午
下午
午饭

timetable
climate
time
what time
lunch
afternoon
a.m.
sometimes

(ii)

下 yǔ
下 bān
jìn 步
午 shuì
上学
sài 跑
晚饭
一起

improve
evening meal
go to school
race
together
raining
finish work
afternoon nap

121

今 **jīn** present

The top part of the character suggests convergence from three directions and the lower part suggests everlasting. It came to mean *present time.*

Radical: 人 **'person'**

Index # 18

Character components: 人 + 丶 + ㇇

Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **今 jīn** now, the present
   他 说 从 今 以后 要 认真 学习。
   Tā shuō cōng jīn yǐhòu yào rènzhēn xuéxí.
   He said he will study conscientiously from now on.

2. **今天 jīntiān** today
   今天 会 下雨 吗?
   Jīntiān huì xiàyǔ ma?
   Will it rain today?

3. **今晚 jīnwǎn** tonight
   我 今晚 不 在 家。
   Wǒ jīnwǎn bū zāi jiā.
   I won't be home tonight.

4. **今年 jīnnián** this year
   我 今年 刚 开始 学 中文。
   Wǒ jīnnián gāng kāishǐ xuē Zhōngwēn.
   I just started learning Chinese this year.

5. **今后 jīnhōu** from now on
   希望 我们 今后 能 多 交流 经验。
   Xīwàng wǒmen jīnhōu néng duō jiāoliū jīngyàn.
   I hope we can have more exchange of experiences from now on.

今 is easily confused with 令. **4 strokes**

ノ	人	亼	今									

122

天 **tiān** day, sky

The character combines the characters 一 and 大 to suggest something very big and above the head of people — *the sky*.

Radical: 一 **'horizontal stroke'** **Index # 2**
or 大 **'big'** **Index # 43**
Character components: 一 **+** 大 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **天** **tiān** day
   天 不 早 了。
   Tiān bù zǎo le.
   It's getting late.

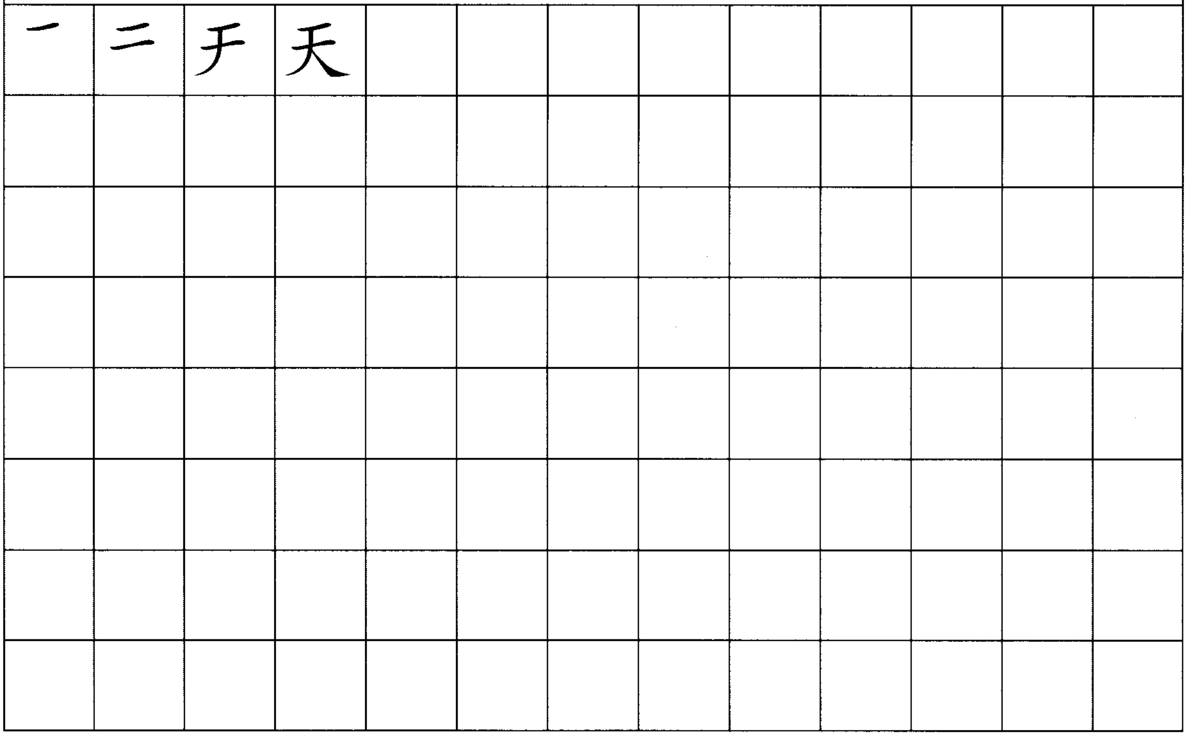
2. **天才** **tiāncái** genius
   这 孩子 有 音乐 天才。
   Zhè háizi yǒu yīnyuè tiāncái.
   This child has musical talent.

3. **天气** **tiānqì** weather
   今天 天气 真 好。
   Jīntiān tiānqì zhēn hǎo.
   The weather is really good today.

4. **天然** **tiānrán** nature
   我 喜欢 天然 景色。
   Wǒ xǐhuan tiānrán jǐngsè.
   I like natural scenery.

5. **天真** **tiānzhēn** innocent, naive
   你 要 相信 这样 的话，那 就 太 天真 了。
   Nǐ yào xiāngxìn zhèyàng de huà, nà jiù tài tiānzhēn le.
   If you believe that sort of talk, you're really naive.

The third stroke does not protrude over the top horizontal stroke. **4 strokes**



123

明

míng bright

The character combines *sun* 日 and *moon* 月 to express the idea of *brightness*.

Radical: 日 **'day'**

Index # 90

Character components: 日 + 月

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **明 míng** bright, clear
   你 有 没有 问明 他的 来意?
   Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu wènmíng tāde láiyì?
   Have you specifically asked him his reasons for coming?

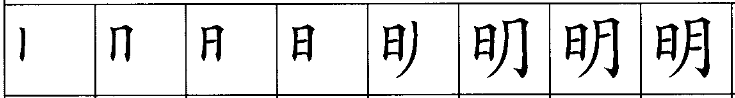
2. **明白 míngbai** understand
   我 不 明白 你的意思。
   Wǒ bù míngbai nǐde yìsi.
   I don't understand what you mean.

3. **明天 míngtiān** tomorrow
   对不起 我 明天 没有 空儿。
   Duìbuqǐ, wǒ míngtiān méiyǒu kòngr.
   Sorry, I'll be busy tomorrow.

4. **明显 míngxiǎn** obvious
   这 很 明显 是一个 借口。
   Zhè hěn míngxiǎn shì yí ge jièkǒu.
   This is evidently a pretext.

5. **明知 míngzhī** know perfectly well
   你 明知 他不 高兴， 为什么 还 要 说。
   Nǐ míngzhī tā bù gāoxìng, wèishénme hái yào shuō.
   You know quite well that he won't be happy to hear this, so why do you still say it?

The last stroke ends with a hook. **8 strokes**



124

月 **yuè** month

The character is a pictograph which represents the crescent *moon*.

Radical: 月 **'moon/flesh'**

Index # 103

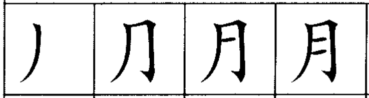
Character component: 月

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **月 yuè** month
   我的 月 收入 是 五 千 元。
   Wǒde yuè shōurù shì wǔ qiān yuán.
   My monthly income is ¥5000.
2. **这个月 zhè ge yuè** this month
   这 个 月 我 比较 忙。
   Zhè ge yuè wǒ bǐjiào máng.
   I'm quite busy this month.
3. **上个月 shàng ge yuè** last month
   我们 上 个 月 去 旅行 了。
   Wǒmen shàng ge yuè qù lǚxíng le.
   We went for a holiday last month.
4. **下个月 xià ge yuè** next month
   我们 下 个 月 就 放假 了。
   Wǒmen xià ge yuè jiù fàngjià le.
   We'll be on holiday next month.
5. **月亮 yuèliang** moon
   今晚 的 月亮 很 圆。
   Jīnwǎn de yuèliang hěn yuán.
   The moon is round tonight.

The last stroke ends with a hook. **4 strokes**



125

日 rì day

The character is a pictograph which represents the shape of the *sun*.

Radical: 日 **'sun'**

Index # 90

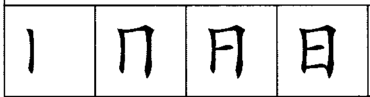
Character component: 日

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **日 rì** day
   十月 二十五日 是 我的 生日。
   Shíyuè-èrshíwǔrì shì wǒde shēngrì.
   October 25th is my birthday.
2. **日期 rìqī** date
   你 忘了 填上 你的 出生 日期。
   Nǐ wàngle tiánshàng nǐde chūshēng rìqī.
   You forgot to fill in your date of birth.
3. **日记 rìjì** diary
   我 没有 记日记的习惯。
   Wǒ méiyǒu jì rìjì de xíguàn.
   I don't have a habit of keeping a diary.
4. **日常 rìcháng** daily
   这些 都 是 日常 必须 用 的 东西。
   Zhèxiē dōu shì rìcháng bìxū yòng de dōngxi.
   These are all the daily needs.
5. **日本 Rìběn** Japan
   你 去过 日本 没有?
   Nǐ qùguo Rìběn méiyǒu?
   Have you been to Japan?

The sealing stroke is written last. **4 strokes**



126

年 **nián** year

The character combines the idea of *rice plant* 禾 and *person bent over* 人, to represent the *yearly* harvest.

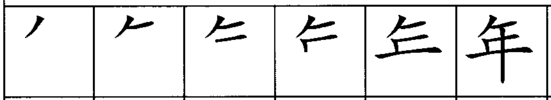
Radical: 丿 **'downward-left stroke'** **Index # 4**

Character component: 年 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **年** **nián** year
   你 是 哪 年 去 美国 的?
   Nǐ shì nǎ nián qù Měiguó de?
   Which year did you go to America?
2. **去年** **qùnián** last year
   我 是 去年 开始 学 跳舞 的。
   Wǒ shì qùnián kāishǐ xué tiàowǔ de.
   I started learning to dance last year.
3. **年纪** **niánjì** age
   你 多 大 年纪 了?
   Nǐ duō dà niánjì le?
   How old are you?
4. **年轻** **niánqīng** young
   这 位 教授 看起来 很 年轻。
   Zhè wèi jiàoshòu kànqilai hěn niánqīng.
   This professor looks quite young.
5. **拜年** **bàinián** pay a New Year visit
   去 朋友 家 拜年 最好 别 忘了 带 礼物。
   Qù péngyou jiā bàinián zuìhǎo bié wàngle dài lǐwù.
   When paying New Year visits to friends, don't forget to bring along some gifts.

The lowest horizontal stroke is the longest. **6 strokes**



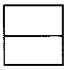
127

空 **kōng/kòng** empty; leisure time

The character combines *hole* 穴 and *work* 工 to suggest a room which encloses space. From this came the meaning of *emptiness*. By extension, it means *sky*.

Radical: 穴 **'cave'** **Index # 110**

Character components: 穴 **+** 工 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **空 kōng** empty
屋里是空的，一个人也没有。
Wūli shì kōng de, yí ge rén yě méiyǒu.
The room is empty; there's no one there.

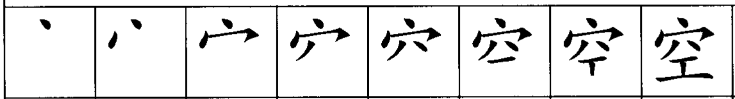
2. **空气 kōngqì** air
城里空气污染很严重。
Chéngli kōngqì wūrǎn hěn yánzhòng.
Air pollution is very serious in the city.

3. **空调 kōngtiáo** air conditioning
进来，外面很热，屋里有空调。
Jìnlai, wàimian hěn rè, wūli yǒu kōngtiáo.
Come in, it's hot outside, there's air conditioning inside the room.

4. **空儿 kòngr** free time
今天下午我有空儿。
Jīntiān xiàwǔ wǒ yǒu kòngr.
I'm free this afternoon.

5. **空闲 kòngxián** leisure time
等你空闲的时候，我们聊聊天。
Děng nǐ kòngxián de shíhou, wǒmen liáoliaotiān.
The next time when you're free, let's chat.

The bottom horizontal stroke is longer. **8 strokes**



128

看 **kān** see, watch

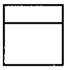
The character expresses the idea of putting *hand* 手 above *eyes* 目 in order to *see* clearly.

Radical: 目 **'eyes'**

Index # 118

Character components: 手 **+** 目

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **看 kān** see, look at
   你 对 这 件 事 怎么 看?
   Nǐ duì zhè jiàn shì zěnme kàn?
   What's your view on this matter?

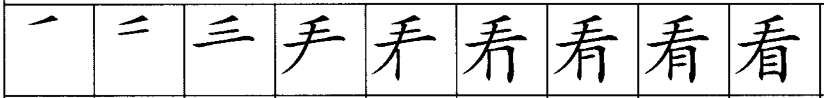
2. **看电影 kàn diànyǐng** see a movie
   今晚 我 去 看 电影。
   Jīnwǎn wǒ qù kàn diànyǐng.
   I'm going to see a movie tonight.

3. **看书 kànshū** read books
   我 喜欢 看书。
   Wǒ xǐhuan kànshū.
   I like to read.

4. **看见 kànjiàn** see
   我 今天 在 车站 看见 她。
   Wǒ jīntiān zài chēzhàn kànjiàn tā.
   I saw her at the bus stop today.

5. **看来 kànlái** it seems
   看来 他 还 没 拿定 主意。
   Kànlái tā hái méi nádìng zhǔyi.
   It looks as if he hasn't made up his mind.

The first stroke travels from right to left. **9 strokes**



129 **Full form**

电 **diān** electricity 電

The character depicted a flash of *lightning*. The full form has *rain* 雨 on top to indicate that rain and lightning come together. From lightning *electricity* is derived.

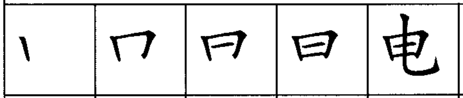
Radical: 乚 **'vertical-bend-hook'** **Index # 5**

Character components: 日 + 乚 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **电 diān** electricity
   电门 有 毛病， 电了 我一下。
   Diānmén yǔ máobìng, diānle wǒ yíxià.
   There was something wrong with the switch and I got a shock.
2. **电影 diānyǐng** movie
   我 喜欢 看 中国 电影。
   Wǒ xǐhuan kān Zhōngguō diānyǐng.
   I like to see Chinese movies.
3. **电视 diānshī** television
   今晚 电视 有 什么 好节目？
   Jīnwǎn diānshī yǒu shénme hǎo jiēmū?
   Are there any good programs on TV tonight?
4. **电脑 diānnǎo** computer
   现在 电脑 在 中国 很普及。
   Xiānzāi diānnǎo zāi Zhōngguō hěn pǔjī.
   Computers are now common in China.
5. **电话 diānhuā** telephone
   今晚 请 给 我 回 个 电话。
   Jīnwǎn qǐng gěi wǒ huí ge diānhuā.
   Please give me a call tonight.

The horizontal lines are equally spaced. **5 strokes**



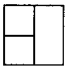
130

影 **yǐng** shadow

The character combines *sun* 日, *feathery* 彡 and the phonetic 京 to give the meaning of *shadow.*

Radical: 彡 **'feathery'** **Index # 55**

Character components: 日 + 京 + 彡 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **影** **yǐng** shadow
   听说 他 是 回来了, 可是 还 没 看见 他的 影儿。
   Tīngshuō tā shì huílai le, kěshì hái méi kànjiàn tāde yǐngr.
   I heard that he's back, but I haven't seen any sign of him yet.

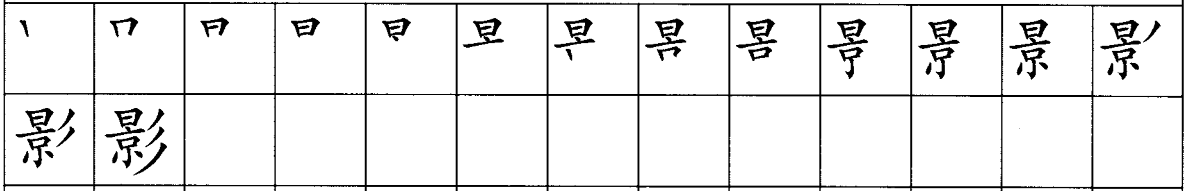
2. **影迷** **yǐngmí** movie fan
   他 喜欢 看 电影, 是 个 影迷。
   Tā xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng, shì ge yǐngmí.
   He's fond of movies, he's a movie fan.

3. **影印** **yǐngyìn** photocopy
   请 给 我 影印 两 份。
   Qǐng gěi wǒ yǐngyìn liǎng fèn.
   Please photocopy two copies for me.

4. **影响** **yǐngxiǎng** influence, effect
   吸烟 影响 健康。
   Xīyān yǐngxiǎng jiànkāng.
   Smoking affects health.

5. **合影** **héyǐng** take a photo together
   我们 照 个 合影 留念, 好 吗?
   Wǒmen zhào ge héyǐng liúniàn, hǎo ma?
   Let's take a photo together to mark the occasion, shall we?

The last three strokes slant downward, then left. **15 strokes**



Quiz 13 (121–130)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

日	今	晚	吃
明	天	月	看
有	空	儿	电
做	作	生	影

Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
今	晚		jīnwǎn	tonight

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Jīntiān shì Jiǔyuè-shíwǔrì.									
(ii)	Míngtiān shì wǒde shēngrì.									
(iii)	Jīnwǎn nǐ yǒu kòngr ma?									
(iv)	Wǒmen kàn diànyǐng zěnmeyàng?									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

qù 年
天 cái
天 qì
明 bai
明 xiǎn
日 qī
日 jì
下个月

understand
date
obvious
talent
diary
weather
next month
last year

(ii)

年 qīng
空 qì
空 tiáo
看 shū
看 jiàn
电 nǎo
电 shì
影 yìn

read
television
computer
young
air
photocopy
air-conditioning
see

131

昨 **zuó** yesterday

The character combines *sun* 日 and the phonetic 乍 to suggest the meaning of *yesterday.*

Radical: 日 **'sun'**

Index # 90

Character components: 日 **+** 乍

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **昨天** **zuótiān** yesterday
   他 昨天 才 来过。
   Tā zuótiān cái láiguo.
   He came only yesterday.

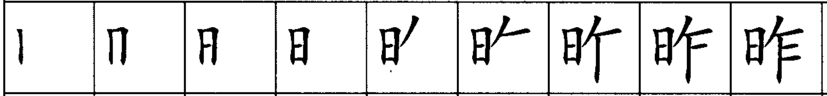
2. **昨天的** **zuótiān de** yesterday's
   这 是 昨天 的 报。
   Zhè shì zuótiān de bào.
   This is yesterday's newspaper.

3. **昨日** **zuórì** yesterday
   他 昨日 才 来过。
   Tā zuórì cái láiguo.
   He came only yesterday.

4. **昨晚** **zuówǎn** last night
   昨晚 雨 下得 很 大，你 知道 吗？
   Zuówǎn yǔ xiàde hěn dà, nǐ zhīdao ma?
   It rained heavily last night, did you know?

5. **昨夜** **zuóyè** last night
   昨夜 雨 下得 很 大，你 知道 吗？
   Zuóyè yǔ xiàde hěn dà, nǐ zhīdao ma?
   It rained heavily last night, did you know?

The top horizontal stroke is longer than those below it. **9 strokes**



132

去 **qù** go

The character is the figure of a rice-container with a lid. Since the container becomes empty after the rice has been eaten, the character came to mean *to be gone.*

Radical: 厶 **'private'** **Index # 23**
or 土 **'earth'** **Index # 40**
Character components: 土 **+** 厶 **Character configuration:**

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **去** **qù** go
   假期你到哪儿去玩儿?
   Jiàqī nǐ dào nǎr qù wánr?
   Where are you going during the holidays?

2. **去处** **qùchù** place to go
   这 是一个 风景 优美 的 去处。
   Zhè shì yí ge fēngjǐng yōuměi de qùchù.
   This is a scenic place to visit.

3. **去世** **qùshì** (of grown-ups) die
   我 父亲 三 年 前 去世了。
   Wǒ fùqin sān nián qián qùshì le.
   My father passed away three years ago.

4. **去年** **qùnián** last year
   我 是 去年 开始 学 跳舞 的。
   Wǒ shì qùnián kāishǐ xué tiàowǔ de.
   I started learning to dance last year.

5. **拿去** **náqù** take away
   谁 把 我的 字典 拿去了?
   Shéi bǎ wǒde zìdiǎn náqù le?
   Who's taken my dictionary?

The second horizontal stroke is longer. **5 strokes**

一	十	土	去	去								

133

星 **xīng** star

The character combines *sun* 日 and *seedling* 生, a reference to emerging light. This then took on the meaning of *star*.

Radical: 日 **'sun'**

Index # 90

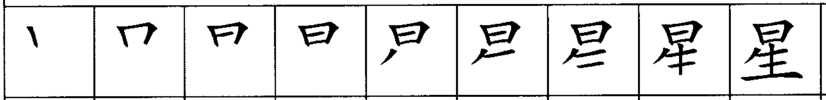
Character components: 日 + 生

Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **星** **xīng** star
   今晚 月 明 星 稀。
   Jīnwǎn yuè míng xīng xī.
   The moon is bright and the stars are sparse tonight.
2. **星期** **xīngqī** week
   今天 星期几?
   Jīntiān xīngqījǐ?
   What day of the week is it today?
3. **这个星期** **zhè ge xīngqī** this week
   这 个 星期 工作 比较 轻松。
   Zhè ge xīngqī gōngzuò bǐjiào qīngsōng.
   The workload is easy this week.
4. **上星期** **shàng xīngqī** last week
   上 星期 我 度假 去了。
   Shàng xīngqī wǒ dùjià qù le.
   Last week I was on holiday.
5. **下星期** **xià xīngqī** next week
   下 星期 我 比较 忙。
   Xià xīngqī wǒ bǐjiào máng.
   I'll be rather busy next week.

The *sun* component 日 should be written squarish. **9 strokes**



134

期 qī period of time

The character combines *month* 月 and the phonetic 其 to suggest *a period of time.*

Radical: 月 **'moon/flesh'** **Index # 103**
or 其 **'secondly'** **Index # 171**
Character components: 其 **+** 月 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **期** **qī** period
   第一期 工程 已经 完成 了。
   Dìyī qī gōngchéng yǐjīng wánchéng le.
   The first phase of the project has been completed.

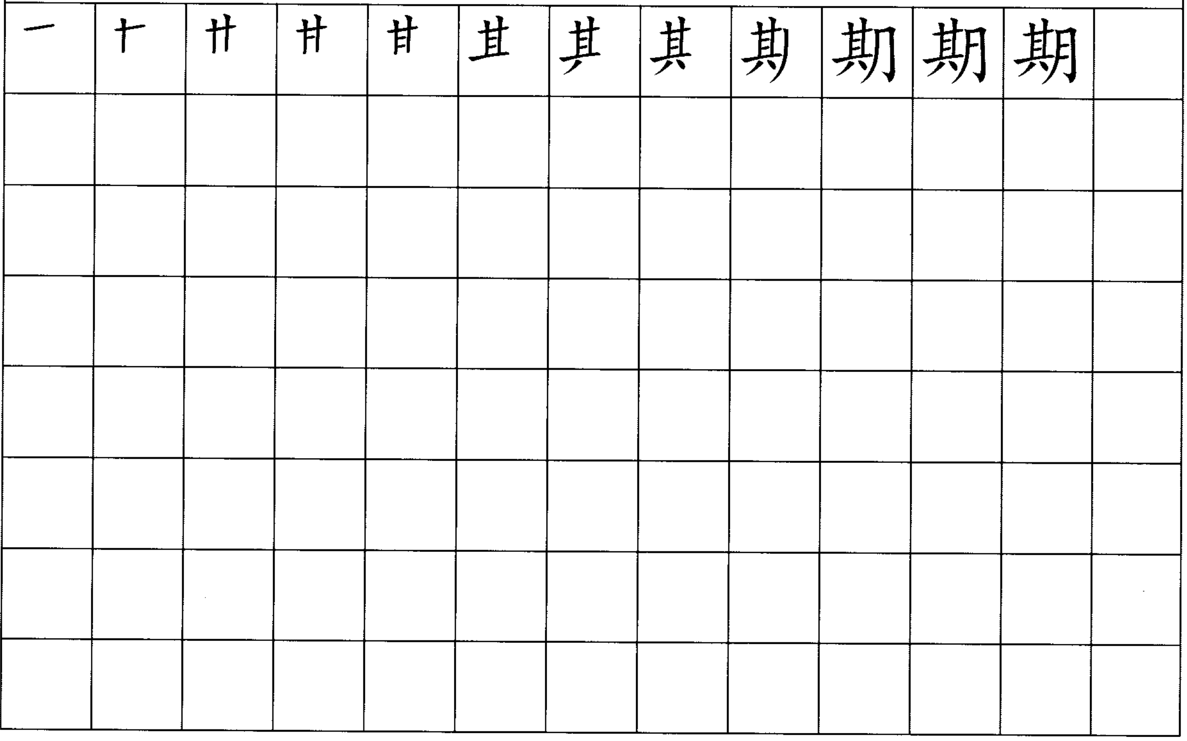
2. **期间** **qījiān** course
   他 在 住院 期间 看了 很多 小说。
   Tā zài zhùyuàn qījiān kànle hěnduō xiǎoshuō.
   While in hospital, he read many novels.

3. **假期** **jiàqī** holiday
   假期你 有 什么 计划？
   Jiàqī nǐ yǒu shénme jìhuà?
   What plans do you have for your holidays?

4. **学期** **xuéqī** semester
   这 个 学期 功课 比较 轻松。
   Zhè ge xuéqī gōngkè bǐjiào qīngsōng.
   There's not much work this semester.

5. **到期** **dàoqī** expire
   我的 签证 下 个 月 到期。
   Wǒde qiānzhèng xià ge yuè dàoqī.
   My visa expires next month.

The third last stroke ends with a hook. **12 strokes**



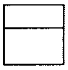
135

每 **měi** every

The character combines *hairpin* 𠂉 and *mother* 母 to give the idea of bearing children repeatedly. It came to mean *every.*

Radical: 母 **'mother'** **Index # 108**

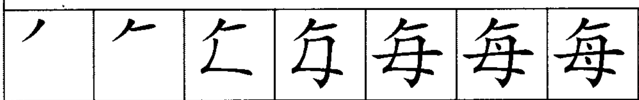
Character components: 𠂉 **+** 母 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **每** **měi** every, each
   每 到 北京，我 总 要 去 逛 一下 长城。
   Měi dào Běijīng, wǒ zǒng yào qù guàn yíxià Chángchéng.
   Every time I am in Beijing, I have to visit the Great Wall.
2. **每每** **měiměi** often
   他们 常 在一起，每每 一 谈 就 是 半天。
   Tāmen cháng zài yìqǐ, měiměi yì tán jiù shì bàntiān.
   They often get together, and when they did, they'd talk for hours.
3. **每天** **měitiān** everyday
   我 母亲 每天 都 去 散步。
   Wǒ mǔqin měitiān dōu qù sànbù.
   My mother goes for a walk every day.
4. **每年** **měinián** every year
   我 每年 都 去 旅行。
   Wǒ měinián dōu qù lǚxíng.
   I go for a trip every year.
5. **每个星期** **měi ge xīngqī** every week
   她 每 个 星期 都 请客。
   Tā měi ge xīngqī dōu qǐngkè.
   She entertains guests every week.

每 can be confused with 母. **7 strokes**



136

进 jīn enter

Full form

進

The full form combines *movement* 辶 and *bird* 隹 to suggest rapid advance like a bird flying. It means *progress.*

Radical: 辶 **'movement'**

Index # 38

Character components: 辶 **+** 井

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **进** **jīn** enter
   请 进!
   Qǐng jīn!
   Please come in!

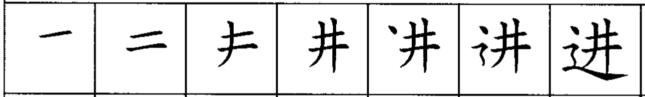
2. **进来** **jīnlai** enter
   让 他 进来。
   Ràng tā jīnlai.
   Let him come in.

3. **进步** **jīnbū** make progress
   你 写 汉字 很 有 进步。
   Nǐ xiě Hānzī hěn yǒu jīnbū.
   You are making great progress in your Chinese character writing.

4. **进出口** **jīnchūkǒu** import & export
   她 在 一家 进出口 公司 工作。
   Tā zāi yì jiā jīnchūkǒu gōngsī gōngzuò.
   She works in an import and export company.

5. **进行** **jīnxíng** be in progress
   工作 进行得 怎么样?
   Gōngzuō jīnxíngde zěnmeyāng?
   How are you getting on with your work?

The left vertical stroke slants to the left. **7 strokes**



137

城 **chēng** city

The character combines *soil* 土 and the phonetic 成 to suggest the ancient idea of a walled city. It means *city.*

Radical: 土 **'earth'** **Index # 40**

Character components: 土 + 成 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **城 chēng** city
   城里 的 商店 比较 高档。
   Chēngli de shāngdiān bǐjiāo gāodǎng.
   The shops in the city sell better quality goods.

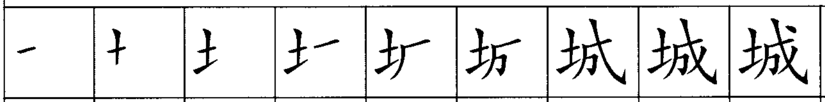
2. **城乡 chēngxiāng** town and country
   在 中国， 城乡 的 差别 很 大。
   Zāi Zhōngguō, chēngxiāng de chābiē hěn dā.
   There is quite a large difference between urban and rural areas in China.

3. **城市 chēngshī** city
   上海 是 中国 最大的 城市。
   Shānghǎi shī Zhōngguō zuīdāde chēngshī.
   Shanghai is the largest city in China.

4. **进城 jīnchēng** go to the city
   我 坐 地铁 进城。
   Wǒ zuō dītiě jīnchēng.
   I take the subway to get to the city.

5. **长城 Chāngchēng** Great Wall of China
   我 终于 登上了 长城。
   Wǒ zhōngyū dēngshangle Chāngchēng.
   I finally climbed the Great Wall of China.

The third stroke slants upward. **9 strokes**



138 **Full form**

买 **măi** buy 買

The full form combines *net* 罒 and *shells* 貝. Since shells were used for money, netting lots of shells meant being able to *buy* things.

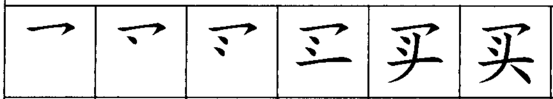
Radical: 乛 **'horizontal-hook'** **Index # 5**

Character components: 乛 + 头 **Character configuration:** ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **买** **măi** buy
   我 买了〈汉英 词典〉。
   Wŏ măile *Hànyīng Cídiăn*.
   I've bought the Chinese-English Dictionary.
2. **买得起** **măideqĭ** can afford
   两百 元 不 太 贵，我 买得起。
   Liăngbăi yuán bú tài guì, wŏ măideqĭ.
   ¥200 is not too much to pay, I can afford it.
3. **买不起** **măibuqĭ** can't afford
   五百 元 太 贵 了，我 买不起。
   Wŭbăi yuán tài guì le, wŏ măibuqĭ.
   ¥500 is too much, I can't afford it.
4. **买卖** **măimài** business (literally, buying and selling)
   我 父亲 是 做 买卖 的。
   Wŏ fùqin shì zuò măimài de.
   My father is a businessman.
5. **买不到** **măibudào** out of stock
   这 种 皮包 现在 买不到 了。
   Zhè zhŏng píbāo xiànzài măibudào le.
   You can't buy this kind of briefcase now.

End the last stroke firmly. **6 strokes**



139

东 **dōng** east

Full form

東

The full form combines *tree* 木 and *sun* 日 to represent the morning sun rising in the *east* behind some tree branches.

Radical: 一 **'horizontal stroke'**

Index # 2

Character components: 一 **+** ㇜ **+** 小

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **东** **dōng** east
   我 住 在 城 东。
   Wǒ zhù zài chéng dōng.
   I live in the eastern part of the city.

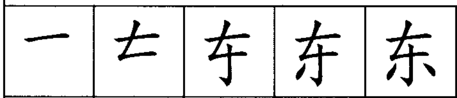
2. **东边** **dōngbian** east
   太阳 从 东边 升起来。
   Tàiyáng cóng dōngbian shēngqilai.
   The sun rises in the east.

3. **东南亚** **Dōngnányà** South-East Asia
   东南亚 有 很多 华人。
   Dōngnányà yǒu hěnduō Huárén.
   There are many Chinese in South-East Asia.

4. **东西** **dōngxi** thing (literally, east west)
   她 买 东西 去了。
   Tā mǎi dōngxi qù le.
   She's out shopping.

5. **房东** **fángdōng** landlord
   他 是 我的 房东。
   Tā shì wǒde fángdōng.
   He is my landlord.

The second stroke is a downward-left bend. **5 strokes**



140

西 **xī** west

The pictograph of a bird in a nest. A bird returns to its nest when the sun sets in the *west.*

Radical: 西 **'west'**

Index # 139

Character component: 西

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **西** **xī** west
   夕阳 西下。
   Xīyáng xī xià.
   The sun sets in the west.

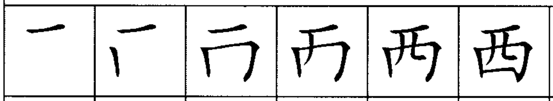
2. **西方** **Xīfāng** the West
   澳大利亚是 西方 国家。
   Àodàlìyà shì Xīfāng guójiā.
   Australia is a Western country.

3. **西餐** **Xīcān** Western food
   你 喜欢 吃 中餐 还是 西餐?
   Nǐ xǐhuan chī Zhōngcān háishi Xīcān?
   Do you prefer Chinese or Western food?

4. **西药** **Xīyào** Western medicine
   在 中国 哪里可以 买到 西药?
   Zài Zhōngguó nǎli kěyǐ mǎidào Xīyào?
   Where can one buy Western medicine in China?

5. **西式** **Xīshì** Western style
   西式 快餐 在 北京 很 流行。
   Xīshì kuàicān zài Běijīng hěn liúxíng.
   Western style fast food is very popular in Beijing.

The inside right stroke bends. **6 strokes**



Quiz 14 (131–140)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

星	每	都	做
期	昨	晚	买
了	去	天	东
进	城	里	西

	Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
(i)	星	期		xīngqī	week
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Zuótiān wǒ jìnchéng le.									
(ii)	Nǐ jìnchéng zuò shénme le?									
(iii)	Wǒ qù mǎi dōngxi le.									
(iv)	Měi Xīngqīliù wǒ dōu jìnchéng.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

jià 期	in progress
去 chù	holiday
dào 期	go to the city
进 lai	city
进步	expire
进 xíng	come in
进城	place to go
城 shì	improvement

(ii)

买不起	thing
买卖	Western meal
东 nányà	can’t afford
东 bian	business
东西	Western-style
西 fāng	east side
西 cān	South-East Asia
西 shì	the West

141

商 **shāng** commerce

The first two strokes of the character make up the radical while the rest is made up of two dots, the 3-sided frame and what goes inside it. The character looks like the face of a *merchant.*

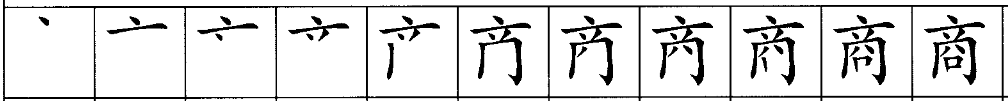
Radical: 亠 **'top of** 六 **'** **Index # 6**

Character components: 亠 **+** 丷 **+** 冂 **+** 㕣 **Character configuration:** ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **商 shāng** commerce
   中国 正在 发展 工商 企业。
   Zhōngguó zhèngzài fāzhǎn gōngshāng qǐyè.
   China is developing its industrial and commercial enterprises.
2. **商人 shāngrén** merchant
   现在 中国 商人 的 地位 提高了。
   Xiànzài Zhōngguó shāngrén de dìwèi tígāo le.
   Nowadays the status of merchants in China is higher.
3. **商店 shāngdiàn** shop
   商店 几 点 开门?
   Shāngdiàn jǐ diǎn kāimén?
   What time does the shop open?
4. **商业 shāngyè** commerce
   上海 是一个 商业 城市。
   Shànghǎi shì yí ge shāngyè chéngshì.
   Shanghai is a commercial city.
5. **商量 shāngliang** discuss
   我 有事儿要 跟你 商量。
   Wǒ yǒu shìr yào gēn nǐ shāngliang.
   I have something to discuss with you.

The sixth stroke ends with a hook. **11 strokes**



142

店 **diàn** shop

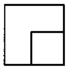
The character combines *broad* 广 and *arrange* 占 to suggest a place where objects are arranged and sold, i.e. a *shop*.

Radical: 广 **'broad'**

Index # 36

Character components: 广 **+** 占

Character configuration:

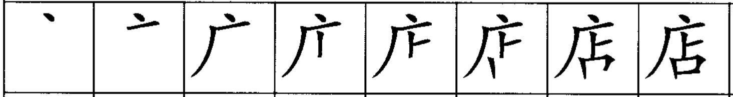


Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **店** **diàn** shop
   他 开了 一个 什么 店?
   Tā kāile yí ge shénme diàn?
   What shop did he run?
2. **书店** **shūdiàn** bookshop
   书店 里 有 很多 人。
   Shūdiàn li yǒu hěnduō rén.
   There are lots of people in the bookshop.
3. **文具店** **wénjùdiàn** stationery shop
   附近 有 没有 文具店?
   Fùjìn yǒu méiyǒu wénjùdiàn?
   Is there a stationery shop nearby?
4. **服装店** **fúzhuāngdiàn** boutique
   这 家 服装店 的 衣服 很 特别。
   Zhè jiā fúzhuāngdiàn de yīfu hěn tèbié.
   The clothes in this boutique are quite special.
5. **店员** **diànyuán** shop assistant
   店员 的 服务 态度 很 热情。
   Diànyuán de fúwù tàidu hěn rèqíng.
   The shop assistants are very friendly.

占 can be confused with 古.

8 strokes



143

毛 **máo** hair

The character represents an animal's furry tail held upright. It means *hair*.

Radical: 毛 **'hair'** **Index # 97**

Character component: 毛 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **毛** **máo** hair
   这 猫 长得 一 身 好 毛。
   Zhè māo zhǎngde yì shēn hǎo máo.
   This cat has a fine coat of fur.

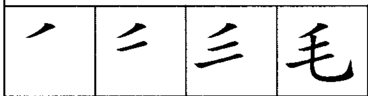
2. **毛衣** **máoyī** woolen sweater
   今天 比较 冷， 要 穿 毛衣。
   Jīntiān bǐjiào lěng, yào chuān máoyī.
   Today is quite cold, you need to wear a sweater.

3. **毛笔** **máobǐ** writing brush
   我 会 用 毛笔 写字。
   Wǒ huì yòng máobǐ xiězì.
   I can write with a brush.

4. **毛病** **máobìng** problem
   复印机有 点 毛病。
   Fùyìnjī yǒu diǎn máobìng.
   There's something wrong with the photocopier.

5. **一毛（钱）** **yì máo (qián)** ten cents
   报纸 一块 五毛 （钱）一 份。
   Bàozhǐ yíkuài-wǔmáo (qián) yí fèn.
   The newspaper is $1.50 a copy.

Note the difference between 毛 and 手. **4 strokes**



144

衣 **yī** clothes

The character represents the figure of putting the neckbands together and means *garment*..

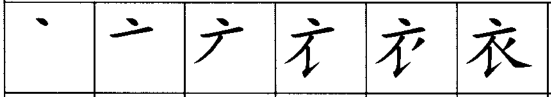
Radical: 衣 **'clothes'** **Index # 132**

Character components: 亠 **+** 𧘇 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **衣** **yī** clothing
   老百姓 最 关心 的 是 衣食住行。
   Lǎobǎixìng zuì guānxīn de shì yī-shí-zhù-xíng.
   Ordinary people are mainly concerned with clothing, food, shelter and transportation — the basic necessities of life.
2. **毛衣** **máoyī** woolen sweater
   今天 比较 冷, 要 穿 毛衣。
   Jīntiān bǐjiào lěng, yào chuān máoyī.
   Today is quite cold, you need to wear a sweater.
3. **衣服** **yīfu** clothes
   外边 冷, 多 穿 些衣服。
   Wàibiān lěng, duō chuān xiē yīfu.
   It's cold outside. Put on more clothes.
4. **衣料** **yīliào** material for clothing
   这 种 衣料 适合 做 裙子。
   Zhè zhǒng yīliào shìhé zuò qúnzi.
   This type of material is suitable for making skirts.
5. **衣架** **yījià** coat hanger
   这里 有 没有 衣架?
   Zhèlǐ yǒu měiyǒu yījià?
   Are there any clothes hangers here?

The last stroke tapers off. **6 strokes**



145

件 **jiān** [classifier]; document

The character combines *person* 亻 and *cattle* 牛 to suggest a person counting cattle. It refers to a *unit in counting*.

Radical: 亻 **'upright person'**

Index # 19

Character components: 亻 **+** 牛

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **件** **jiān** classifier
   这 件 衣服 很 好看。
   Zhè jiān yīfu hěn hǎokàn.
   This garment is very pretty.

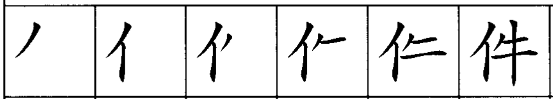
2. **软件** **ruǎnjiàn** software
   这 是 盗版 软件， 我 不要。
   Zhè shì dàobǎn ruǎnjiàn, wǒ bú yào.
   This is a pirated software, I don't want it.

3. **零件** **língjiàn** part
   新 的 零件 太 贵了，买 二手 的 吧。
   Xīn de língjiàn tài guì le, mǎi èrshǒu de ba.
   New parts are too expensive, what if we buy second-hand ones?

4. **配件** **pèijiàn** fittings
   我们 需要 买 管子 配件。
   Wǒmen xūyào mǎi guǎnzi pèijiàn.
   We need to buy plumbing fittings.

5. **文件** **wénjiàn** document
   请 把 文件 放好， 别 丢失了。
   Qǐng bǎ wénjiàn fànghǎo, bié diūshī le.
   Please put the document in a safe place, don't lose it.

The second horizontal stroke is longer. **6 strokes**



146

钱 **qiān** money

Full form

錢

The character combines *metal* 钅 and the phonetic 戋 to suggest the concept of *money.*

Radical: 钅 **'metal'**

Index # 122

Character components: 钅 + 戋

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **钱** **qiān** money
   你一个月的工资 多少 钱?
   Nǐ yí ge yuè de gōngzī duōshao qián?
   What's your monthly wage?

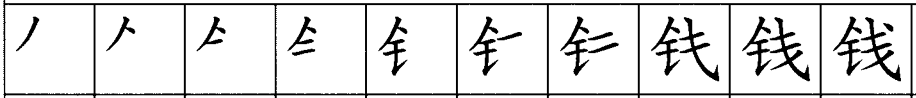
2. **钱包** **qiánbāo** wallet, purse
   他的 钱包 被 贼 抢 了。
   Tāde qiánbāo bèi zéi qiǎng le.
   His wallet was snatched by a thief.

3. **有钱** **yǒuqián** wealthy
   她 父母 很 有钱。
   Tā fùmǔ hěn yǒuqián.
   Her parents are very wealthy.

4. **零钱** **língqián** small change
   我 要 换 点 零钱。
   Wǒ yào huàn diǎn língqián.
   I want to get some small change.

5. **压岁钱** **yāsuìqián** money given to children during the Lunar New Year
   中国 小孩 过年 都 可以 拿到 很多 压岁钱。
   Zhōngguó xiǎohái guònián dōu kěyǐ nádào hěnduō yāsuìqián.
   Chinese children get quite a bit of gift money during the Lunar New Year.

The last stroke appears at the top right corner. **10 strokes**



147

百 **bǎi** hundred

The character combines *one* 一 and *white* 白. It is believed that 白 once meant *hundred*, adding *one* 一 made it *one hundred.*

Radical: 一 **'horizontal stroke'** **Index # 2**

or 白 **'white'** **Index # 147**

Character components: 一 **+** 白 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **百** **bǎi** hundred
   我 认识 两百 个 字。
   Wǒ rènshi liǎngbǎi ge zì.
   I know 200 characters.

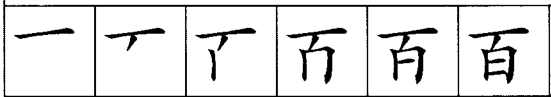
2. **百分之百** **bǎifēnzhībǎi** absolutely (literally, 100%)
   这 是 百分之百 的 谎话!
   Zhè shì bǎifēnzhībǎi de huǎnghuà!
   That's an absolute lie!

3. **百分点** **bǎifēndiǎn** 1% point
   银行 利息 增加了 半 个 百分点。
   Yínháng lìxī zēngjiāle bàn ge bǎifēndiǎn.
   Bank interest has increased by half a percentage point.

4. **百货** **bǎihuò** general merchandise
   这 是 一家 高档 的 百货 公司。
   Zhè shì yì jiā gāodǎng de bǎihuò gōngsī.
   This is an up-market department store.

5. **百万** **bǎiwàn** million (literally, a hundred ten thousands)
   她 想 嫁 给 百万 富翁。
   Tā xiǎng jià gěi bǎiwàn fùwēng.
   She wants to marry a millionaire.

The top horizontal stroke is longer. **6 strokes**



148

块 **kuài** classifier

Full form

塊

The character combines *earth* 土 and the phonetic 夬 to suggest the idea of a *lump* or *piece*. The full form uses a different phonetic.

Radical: 土 **'earth'**

Index # 40

Character components: 土 + 夬

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **块** **kuài** piece
   她吃了 两 块 面包。
   Tā chīle liǎng kuài miànbāo.
   She ate two pieces of bread.

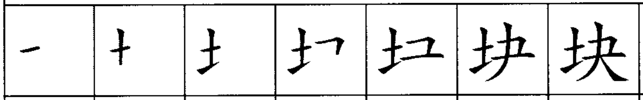
2. **鱼块** **yúkuài** fish pieces
   我 要了一个 糖醋 鱼块。
   Wǒ yàole yí ge tángcù yúkuài.
   I've ordered a plate of sweet and sour fish.

3. **一块钱** **yí kuài qián** a dollar (literally, a piece of money)
   她一个 月 的 工资 五百 块 钱。
   Tā yí ge yuè de gōngzī wǔbǎi kuài qián.
   Her monthly wage is 500 dollars.

4. **一块儿** **yīkuàir** together
   你 有 兴趣 跟 我们 一块儿 去 吗?
   Nǐ yǒu xìngqù gēn wǒmen yīkuàir qù ma?
   Would you be interested in coming along with us?

5. **方块字** **fāngkuàizì** square characters
   汉字 是 方块字, 很 难 记。
   Hànzì shì fāngkuàizì, hěn nán jì.
   Chinese characters are square-shaped characters, so they are hard to remember.

The last stroke tapers off. **7 strokes**



149

便

biàn/pián convenient; cheap

The character combines *person* 亻 and the phonetic 更 to give two meanings: *convenient* and *cheap*. By itself, it is used as an adverb in much the same way as *jiù* 就 .

Radical: 亻 **'upright person'**

Index # 19

Character components: 亻 + 更

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **便** **biàn** then
   这 几 天 不 是 刮风， 便 是 下雨。
   Zhè jǐ tiān bú shì guāfēng, biàn shì xiàyǔ.
   During the last few days, if it was not windy, then it was raining.

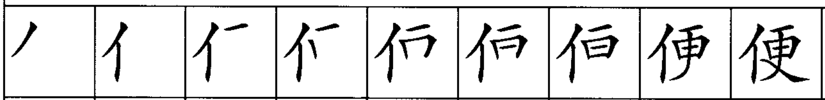
2. **方便** **fāngbiàn** convenient
   什么 时候 方便， 什么 时候 来。
   Shénme shíhou fāngbiàn, shénme shíhou lái.
   Drop in whenever it's convenient.

3. **便利** **biànlì** convenient
   这里 交通 便利。
   Zhèlǐ jiāotōng biànlì.
   Transport is convenient here.

4. **便条** **biàntiáo** short note
   你 给 他 写 个 便条 吧。
   Nǐ gěi tā xiě ge biàntiáo ba.
   Why don't you write him a note?

5. **便宜** **piányi** cheap
   这里的 东西 价钱 很 便宜。
   Zhèlǐ de dōngxi jiàqián hěn piányi.
   The things here are really inexpensive.

The second last stroke starts under the horizontal stroke. **9 strokes**



150

宜 **yí** appropriate

The character combines *roof* 宀 and the phonetic 且 to suggest the meaning of *appropriate.* When combined with 便 it is pronounced in the neutral tone.

Radical: 宀 **'roof'**

Index # 34

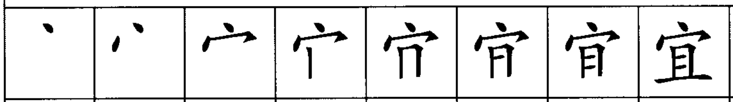
Character components: 宀 + 且

Character configuration: ⿱

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **宜** **yí** appropriate
   老幼 咸宜。
   Lǎoyòu xiányí.
   Suitable for both young and old.
2. **不宜** **bùyí** not fitting
   对 孩子不宜 要求 过 高。
   Duì háizi bùyí yāoqiú guò gāo.
   You shouldn't ask too much of a child.
3. **宜人** **yírén** pleasant
   这里 气候 宜人。
   Zhèlǐ qìhòu yírén.
   The weather's pleasant here.
4. **便宜** **piányi** inexpensive
   这里的 东西 价钱 很 便宜。
   Zhèlǐ de dōngxi jiàqián hěn piányi.
   The things here are really inexpensive.
5. **适宜** **shìyí** appropriate
   游泳 对 老年人 很适宜。
   Yóuyǒng duì lǎoniánrén hěn shìyí.
   Swimming is good for old people.

The last horizontal stroke is longer. **8 strokes**



Quiz 15 (141–150)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

一	百	城	进
钱	商	便	宜
件	店	块	毛
西	东	生	衣

Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
一	百		yībǎi	one hundred

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Chéngli shāngdiàn dōngxi guì ma?									
(ii)	Zhè jiàn máoyī hěn piányi.									
(iii)	Liǎngbǎi kuài qián yí jiàn, guì ma?									
(iv)	Wǒ mǎi liǎng jiàn, piányi diǎnr.									

C. Match the Chinese words with English meaning.

(i)		(ii)	
文 jù 店	clothes	便宜	wallet, purse
文件	woolen sweater	fāng 便	inexpensive
shū 店	stationery shop	fāng 块字	commerce
衣 fu	document	百 huò	convenient
毛 bǐ	writing brush	有钱	discuss
毛衣	coat hanger	钱 bāo	merchandise
五毛 qián	book shop	商 yè	well-off
衣 jià	50 cents	商 liang	Chinese characters

CHARACTER BUILDING 3 (101–150)

A. Memorize each of the following radicals and their English names. As a review exercise, write the pinyin and English meaning.

1. [一] ‘horizontal stroke’
上 (________) ______________ ; 下 (________) ______________ ;
东 (________) ______________ ; 百 (________) ______________ .

2. [丿] ‘downward-left stroke’
午 (________) ______________ ; 年 (________) ______________ .

3. [乛] ‘horizontal hook’
了 (________) ______________ ; 买 (________) ______________ .

4. [乚] ‘vertical-bend hook’
电 (________) ______________ ; 也 (________) ______________ .

5. [亠] ‘top of 六’
商 (________) ______________ ; 六 (________) ______________ .

6. [八] ‘eight’
半 (________) ______________ ; 分 (________) ______________ ;

7. [人] ‘people’
人 (________) ______________ ; 今 (________) ______________ ;
会 (________) ______________ ; 个 (________) ______________ .

8. [亻] ‘upright person’
候 (________) ______________ ; 件 (________) ______________ ;
便 (________) ______________ ; 们 (________) ______________ .

9. [口] ‘mouth’
吃 (________) ______________ ; 哪 (________) ______________ ;
名 (________) ______________ ; 吗 (________) ______________ .

10. [宀] ‘roof’
宜 (________) ______________ ; 字 (________) ______________ ;

11. [广] ‘broad’
床 (________) ______________ ; 店 (________) ______________ .

12. [辶] ‘movement’
进 (________) ______________ ; 还 (________) ______________ ;
这 (________) ______________ .

13. [土] 'earth'
在 (________) ______________ ; 城 (________) ______________ ;
块 (________) ______________ .

14. [日] 'sun'
日 (________) ______________ ; 早 (________) ______________ ;
明 (________) ______________ ; 晚 (________) ______________ .
昨 (________) ______________ ; 星 (________) ______________ ;
时 (________) ______________ .

15. [月] 'moon/flesh'
月 (________) ______________ ; 期 (________) ______________ .

16. [钅] 'metal'
钟 (________) ______________ ; 钱 (________) ______________ .

17. [母] 'mother'
每 (________) ______________ ; 母 (________) ______________ .

B. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters classified under the following radicals.

1. [厶] 'private' 去 (________) ______________
2. [饣] 'food' 饭 (________) ______________
3. [大] 'big' 天 (________) ______________
4. [彡] 'feathery' 影 (________) ______________
5. [止] 'stop' 步 (________) ______________
6. [毛] 'hair' 毛 (________) ______________
7. [穴] 'cave' 空 (________) ______________
8. [衣] 'clothing' 衣 (________) ______________
9. [西] 'west' 西 (________) ______________
10. [目] 'eye' 看 (________) ______________
11. [足] 'foot' 跑 (________) ______________
12. [走] 'walk' 起 (________) ______________

C. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters which share the following components. (Note that these components are not necessarily used as radicals.)

1. [工] 工 (________) ____________; 空 (________) ____________.
2. [土] 去 (________) ____________; 在 (________) ____________.
3. [木] 床 (________) ____________; 样 (________) ____________.
4. [日] 早 (________) ____________; 影 (________) ____________.
星 (________) ____________.
5. [月] 期 (________) ____________; 明 (________) ____________.
6. [且] 宜 (________) ____________; 姐 (________) ____________.
7. [乍] 昨 (________) ____________; 怎 (________) ____________.

REVIEW 3 (101–150)

The following are words and phrases classified under parts of speech. Write the pinyin and meaning.

Interrogative pronouns 什么时候 (__________) ______________.

Nouns
天 (________) ____________; 日 (________) ____________;
星期 (________) ____________; 月 (________) ____________;
年 (________) ____________; 钱 (________) ____________;
床 (________) ____________; 城 (________) ____________;
学期 (________) ____________; 日期 (________) ____________;
商店 (________) ____________; 东西 (________) ____________;
文件 (________) ____________; 毛衣 (________) ____________;
电影 (________) ____________; 空儿 (________) ____________;
小时 (________) ____________; 分钟 (________) ____________.

Verbs
吃 (________) ____________; 买 (________) ____________;
看 (________) ____________; 去 (________) ____________;
跑步 (________) ____________; 起床 (________) ____________.

Numbers
半 (________) ____________; 百 (________) ____________.

Classifiers
块 (________) ____________; 毛 (________) ____________;
件 (________) ____________.

Adjectives 早 (________) ____________; 晚 (________) ____________;
好吃 (________) ____________; 有钱 (________) ____________;
便宜 (________) ____________; 空 (________) ____________.

Time words (Adverbs) 现在 (________) ____________; 昨天 (________) ____________;
今天 (________) ____________; 明天 (________) ____________;
上午 (________) ____________; 下午 (________) ____________;
早上 (________) ____________; 晚上 (________) ____________;
每天 (________) ____________; 今年 (________) ____________;
去年 (________) ____________; 明年 (________) ____________;
有时候 (________) ____________;
上（个）星期 (________) ____________;
这（个）星期 (________) ____________;
下（个）星期 (________) ____________;

Adverbs 一起 (________) ____________; 一块儿 (________) ____________.

Prepositions 在 (________) ____________.

Particles 了 (________) ____________.

WORD/SENTENCE PUZZLE 3

Find and CIRCLE words, phrases or sentences hidden in the puzzle. They can be found horizontally from left to right or vertically. The lines across and down are indicated by numbers. Write the meaning next to the pinyin. The first one is done for you.

ACROSS (left to right)

1. Jīntiān shì Jiǔyuè Èrshíwǔrì. *Today is September 25th.*
3. Wǎnshang nǐ zuò shénme? ____________
5. Wǒmen měige Xīngqītiān dōu jìnchéng. ____________
8. Nǐ měitiān jǐ diǎn qǐchuáng? ____________
10. Míngtiān wǒ qù mǎi dōngxi. ____________

DOWN

1. Jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ yǒu kòng. ____________
2. Nǐ měitiān dōu qù pǎobù ma? ____________
4. Zuótiān nǐ qù kàn diànyǐng le ma? ____________
6. Dōngxi hěn piányi. ____________
8. (i) Wǔbǎi kuài ____________
8. (ii) Shāngdiàn zài nǎr? ____________
10. Chéngli de máoyī duōshao qián? ____________

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
1	今	天	是	九	月	二	十	五	日	人
2	天	名	姓	贵	朋	识	英	百	样	怎
3	晚	上	你	做	什	么	和	块	亲	吃
4	上	字	认	友	学	没	文	老	两	早
5	我	们	每	个	星	期	天	都	进	城
6	有	时	体	谢	期	年	父	医	母	里
7	空	男	小	昨	大	岁	比	饭	生	的
8	候	你	每	天	几	点	起	床	弟	毛
9	儿	每	子	你	身	还	女	妹	师	衣
10	明	天	我	去	买	东	西	猫	问	多
11	下	都	上	看	年	西	姐	商	只	少
12	贵	去	半	电	会	很	在	店	请	钱
13	中	跑	现	影	里	便	午	在	汉	忙
14	家	步	妈	了	爸	宜	分	哪	写	这
15	英	吗	美	吗	哪	谁	说	儿	狗	不

151

脑 **nǎo** brain

Full form

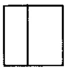
腦

The character combines *flesh* 月 and the phonetic 㐫 to refer to the *brain.*

Radical: 月 **'flesh/moon'**

Index # 103

Character components: 月 **+** 㐫

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **脑 nǎo** brain
   我 今天 用 脑 过度。
   Wǒ jīntiān yòng nǎo guòdù.
   I overtaxed my brain today.

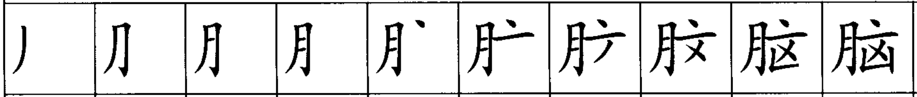
2. **脑筋 nǎojīn** brain
   多 动 脑筋 才 能 解决 问题。
   Duō dòng nǎojīn cái néng jiějué wèntí.
   By exercising one's brain more often, one can resolve problems.

3. **脑汁 nǎozhī** brain
   我 绞尽 脑汁 也 想不出 解决 方法。
   Wǒ jiǎojìn nǎozhī yě xiǎngbuchū jiějué fāngfǎ.
   I racked my brain but I still couldn't work it out.

4. **电脑 diànnǎo** computer
   她 刚 买了 一 台 电脑。
   Tā gāng mǎile yì tái diànnǎo.
   She just bought a computer.

5. **豆腐脑儿 dòufu'nǎor** jellied beancurd
   我 喜欢 吃 豆腐 脑儿。
   Wǒ xǐhuan chī dòufu'nǎor.
   I'm fond of jellied beancurd.

The second last stroke is a vertical bend. **10 strokes**



152

Full form

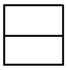
台 **tāi** platform; [classifier] 臺

The character combines *mouth* 口 and *private* 厶 to suggest the idea of *platform.* The whole character is used as a phonetic.

Radical: 厶 **'private'** **Index # 23**

or 口 **'mouth'** **Index # 50**

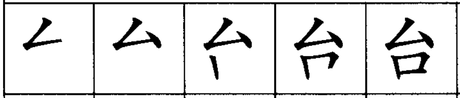
Character components: 厶 **+** 口 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **台** **tāi** classifier
   我 想 买 一台 新 电脑。
   Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yì tái xīn diànnǎo.
   I want to buy a new computer.
2. **台阶** **táijiē** steps, stairs
   台阶 真 多，把 我累死了。
   Táijiē zhēn duō, bǎ wǒ lèisǐ le.
   There are so many steps, I'm dead tired.
3. **台湾** **Táiwān** Taiwan
   我 没 去过 台湾。
   Wǒ méi qùguo Táiwān.
   I haven't been to Taiwan.
4. **台北** **Táiběi** Taipei
   听说 台北 空气 污染 很 严重。
   Tīngshuō Táiběi kōngqì wūrǎn hěn yánzhòng.
   I've heard that air pollution in Taipei is really serious.
5. **台球** **táiqiú** billiards
   台球 在 中国 很 流行。
   Táiqiú zài Zhōngguó hěn liúxíng.
   Billiards are quite popular in China.

The top and bottom components are the same size. **5 strokes**



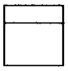
153 **Full form**

卖 **mài** sell 賣

The simplified form combines *ten* 十 and *buy* 买 to suggest the idea of *sell.* Associate the extra component with the 4th tone to mark the meaning of *sell.*

Radical: 十 **'ten'** **Index # 11**

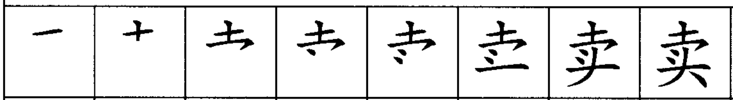
Character components: 十 **+** 买 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **卖** **mài** sell
   这 台 电视机 怎么 卖? / 这 台 电视机 卖 多少 钱?
   Zhè tái diànshìjī zěnme mài? / Zhè tái diànshìjī mài duōshao qián?
   How much is this TV set?
2. **卖力** **màilì** exert all one's strength
   她 做事 很 卖力。
   Tā zuòshì hěn màilì.
   She puts in her best when she works.
3. **卖座** **màizuò** draw large audiences (literally, seat seller)
   那 部 电影 可 卖座 啦。
   Nà bù diànyǐng kě màizuò la.
   That movie drew audiences.
4. **卖弄** **màinòng** show off one's cleverness
   他 喜欢 卖弄 小 聪明。
   Tā xǐhuan màinòng xiǎo cōngmíng.
   He likes to show off his smartness.
5. **买卖** **mǎimài** business
   我 父亲 是 做 买卖 的。
   Wǒ fùqin shì zuò mǎimài de.
   My father is a businessman.

End the last stroke firmly. **8 strokes**



154

千

qiān thousand

The character combines *person* 亻 and *one* 一 to represent many people in a crowd. It came to mean a *thousand.*

Radical: 丿 **'downward-left stroke'**

Index # 4

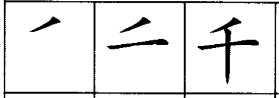
Character components: 丿 + 十

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **千** **qiān** thousand
   这是一千块钱，请你点一点。
   Zhè shì yìqiān kuài qián, qǐng nǐ diǎnyidiǎn.
   This is altogether 1000 dollars, please check it.
2. **千里** **qiānlǐ** a long distance (literally, a thousand miles)
   千里之行，始于足下。
   Qiānlǐ zhī xíng, shǐ yú zú xià.
   A thousand-li journey begins with the first step.
3. **千万** **qiānwàn** be sure to
   千万要小心啊！
   Qiānwàn yào xiǎoxīn a!
   Do be careful!
4. **千方百计** **qiānfāng-bǎijì** in a thousand and one ways
   他千方百计地请好大夫看病。
   Tā qiānfāng-bǎijì de qǐng hǎo dàifu kànbìng.
   He goes all out to find good doctors to treat his illness.
5. **千篇一律** **qiān piān yí lǜ** following the same pattern
   那些文章千篇一律，没有什么新东西。
   Nàxiē wénzhāng qiān piān yí lǜ, méiyǒu shénme xīn dōngxi.
   Those articles are like the rest; they offer nothing new.

The top stroke sweeps down to the left. **3 strokes**



155 **Full form**

万 **wàn** ten thousand 萬

The full form depicted insects in grass which were counted in their tens of thousands. Thus the idea of *ten thousand.*

Radical: 一 **'horizontal stroke'** **Index # 2**

Character component: 万 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **万** **wàn** ten thousand
   买 一 辆 小 汽车 要 八 万 元。
   Mǎi yī liàng xiǎo qìchē yào bā wàn yuán.
   It costs ¥80,000 to buy a small car.

2. **百万** **bǎiwàn** million
   她 想 嫁给 百万 富翁。
   Tā xiǎng jià gěi bǎiwàn fùwēng.
   She wants to marry a millionaire.

3. **一千万** **yì qiānwàn** 10 million
   北京 的 人口 超过 一千万。
   Běijīng de rénkǒu chāoguò yìqiānwàn.
   Beijing's population exceeds 10 million.

4. **万事** **wànshì** all things
   万事 起头 难。
   Wànshì qǐtóu nán.
   Everything is difficult in the beginning.

5. **万一** **wànyī** just in case
   万一 有 人 找 我，就 请 他 留 个 条。
   Wànyī yǒu rén zhǎo wǒ, jiù qǐng tā liú ge tiáo.
   If someone looks for me, please ask him to leave a message.

The last stroke ends with a hook. **3 strokes**

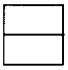
一 丆 万

156

元 **yuán** first; Chinese dollar

The character originally represented the figure of a person's head and neck, it symbolizes *origin* and *source.*

Radical: 二 **'two'** **Index # 10**
or 儿 **'son'** **Index # 21**
Character components: 二 + 儿 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **元 yuán** dollar
买一 辆 小 汽车 要 八 万 元。
Mǎi yī liàng xiǎo qìchē yào bā wàn yuán.
It costs ¥80,000 to buy a small car.

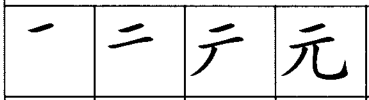
2. **美元 Měiyuán** American dollars
一百 美元 兑换 九百 人民币。
Yībǎi Měiyuán duìhuàn jiǔbǎi Rénmínbì.
US$100 exchanges for ¥900.

3. **元旦 Yuándān** New Year's Day
一月 一号 是 元旦， 放假 一天。
Yīyuè-yīhào shì Yuándān, fàngjià yī tiān.
January 1st, being New Year's Day, is a holiday.

4. **公元 Gōngyuán** A.D., the Christian era
公元 一九一二 年 民 国 建立。
Gōngyuán yījiǔyī'èr nián Mín'guó jiànlì.
In 1912, the Republic of China was established.

5. **公元前 Gōngyuánqián** B.C. (before the Christian era)
公元前 二二一 年 秦始皇
Gōngyuánqián èr'èryī'nián Qínshǐhuáng
统一 中国。
tǒngyī Zhōngguó.
In 221 B.C. the Qin Emperor unified China.

The lower horizontal stroke is longer. **4 strokes**



157

太 **tài** too

The character combines *big* 大 and a dot to signify the idea of *bigger*. By extension, *super* and *excessive* were derived.

Radical: 大 **'big'**

Index # 43

Character components: 大 + 丶

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **太 tài** too
   太 贵了, 可以 便宜点儿 吗?
   Tài guì le, kěyǐ piányidiǎnr ma?
   It's too expensive! Can you make it cheaper?
2. **太阳 tàiyáng** the sun
   你 看， 太阳 出来了。
   Nǐ kàn, tàiyáng chūlai le.
   Look, the sun is out.
3. **太空 tàikōng** outer space
   美国 发明 太空梭。
   Měiguó fāmíng tàikōngsuō.
   The Americans invented the space shuttle.
4. **太平洋 Tàipíngyáng** the Pacific Ocean
   中国 在 太平洋 西边。
   Zhōngguó zài Tàipíngyáng xībian.
   China is situated at the west of the Pacific Ocean.
5. **太极拳 tàijíquán** Taichi
   我 会 打太极拳， 可是打得 不 好。
   Wǒ huì dǎ tàijíquán, kěshì dǎde bù hǎo.
   I can do Taichi, but not very well.

The last stroke ends firmly. **4 strokes**

一	𠂇	大	太									

158

就 **jiù** right away

The character combines *capital city* 京 and the phonetic 尤 to suggest the idea of *right away*.

Radical: 亠 **‘top of 六’** **Index # 6**

Character components: 京 + 尤 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **就 jiù** as early as
今天 我 七 点钟 就 来 了。
Jīntiān wǒ qī diǎnzhōng jiù lái le.
I was here as early as 7 o’clock today.

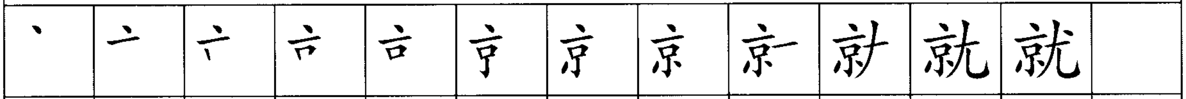
2. **就是 jiùshì** exactly
就 是 嘛，我 也 是 这么 想 的。
Jiù shì ma, wǒ yě shì zhème xiǎng de.
Precisely, that’s just what I had in mind.

3. **就手 jiùshǒu** while you are at it
就手 把 门 关上。
Jiùshǒu bǎ mén guānshàng.
Close the door behind you.

4. **就要 jiùyào** be going to
火车 就要 开 了。
Huǒchē jiùyào kāi le.
The train is about to leave.

5. **就算 jiùsuàn** even if
就算 你 等了 半 个 钟头， 也 不
Jiùsuàn nǐ děngle bàn ge zhōngtóu, yě bù
应该 发 这么 大 的 脾气吧。
yīnggāi fā zhème dà de píqi ba.
Granted that you have waited for half an hour, still there is no reason to blow your top.

The second last stroke ends with a hook. **12 strokes**



159

吧 ba [particle]

Full form

罷

The character combines *mouth* 口 and the phonetic 巴 to indicate a *suggestion.*

Radical: 口 **'mouth'**

Index # 6

Character components: 口 + 巴

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **吧** **ba** *suggestion* [*particle*]
   我们 走 吧。
   Wǒmen zǒu ba.
   Let's go.

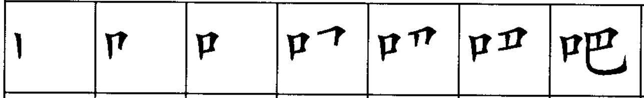
2. **就 ... 吧** **jiù ... ba** *consent or approval*
   明天 就 明天 吧。
   Míngtiān jiù míngtiān ba.
   All right, let's make it tomorrow.

3. **会 ... 吧** **huì ... ba** *confirmation*
   他 会 来吧？
   Tā huì lái ba?
   He'll come, won't he?

4. **好像是 ... 吧** **hǎoxiàng shì ... ba** *doubt or uncertainty*
   他 好像 是 这么 说 的 吧。
   Tā hǎoxiàng shì zhème shuō de ba.
   It seems that's what he said.

5. ... **吧** , ... **吧** , **...ba, ... ba,** *marking a pause*
   去吧，不好；不去吧，也不好。
   Qù ba, bùhǎo; búqù ba, yě bùhǎo.
   If I go, it's no good; if I don't, it's no good either.

Finish the last stroke with a hook. **7 strokes**



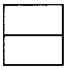
160

零 **lǐng** zero

The character 零 combines *rain* 雨 and the phonetic 令 to suggest *fragmentary*. It also means *zero*.

Radical: 雨 **'rain'** **Index # 172**

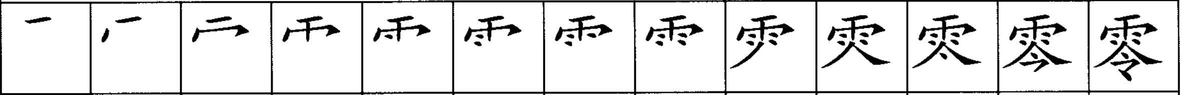
Character components: 雨 **+** 令 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **零** **lǐng** zero
   现在 六点 零 八分。
   Xiànzài liùdiǎn-lǐng-bāfēn.
   The time now is 6:08.
2. **零下** **lǐngxià** below zero
   今天 气温 是 摄氏 零下 五度。
   Jīntiān qìwēn shì shèshì lǐngxià wǔ dù.
   Today's temperature is 5°C below zero.
3. **零钱** **lǐngqián** small change
   我 要 换 点 零钱。
   Wǒ yào huàn diǎn lǐngqián.
   I want to get some small change.
4. **零碎** **lǐngsuì** piecemeal
   我 还 有 点儿 零碎 事情 没有 办完。
   Wǒ hái yǒu diǎnr lǐngsuì shìqing méiyǒu bànwán.
   I still have some loose ends to tie up.
5. **零用钱** **lǐngyòngqián** pocket money
   你 一 个 月 给 孩子 多少 零用钱?
   Nǐ yí ge yuè gěi háizi duōshao lǐngyòngqián?
   How much pocket money do you give your child a month?

Finish the last stroke firmly. **13 strokes**



Quiz 16 (151–160)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can written horizontally or vertically. Look at the encircled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

元	太	贵	了
千	卖	怎	买
电	万	么	东
脑	就	样	西

	Word or phrase			**Pinyin**	**Meaning**
(i)	太	贵	了	Tài guì le!	It's too expensive!
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Zhè tái diànnǎo mài duōshao qián?									
(ii)	Yīwàn-èrqiān yuán.									
(iii)	Tài guì le, jiù yīwàn kuài ba.									
(iv)	Yīwàn-líng-bābǎi, zěnmeyàng?									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

- 电脑
- 台 jiē
- 台 wān
- 卖 zuò
- 卖 lì
- 一千万
- 百万
- 万一

- Taiwan
- 10 million
- just in case
- computer
- exert one's strength
- stairs
- draw large audiences
- million

(ii)

- 美元
- 元 dàn
- gōng 元
- 太 jíquán
- 太贵了
- 太 yáng
- zǒu 吧
- 零钱

- A.D.
- It's too expensive
- American dollars
- New Year's Day
- small change
- Taichi
- sun
- Let's go

161

读 **dú** read

Full form

讀

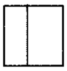
The full character combines *word* 言 and *sell* 賣 to suggest the idea of *to cut.* Thus it may mean punctuating a story at every clause and thus *to read.*

Radical: 讠 **'word'**

Index # 9

Character components: 讠 + 十 + 买

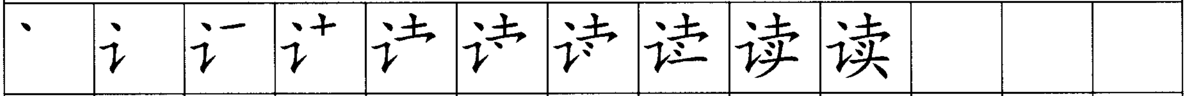
Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **读 dú** read
   这 部 小说 值得 一读。
   Zhè bù xiǎoshuō zhíde yì dú.
   This novel is worth reading.
2. **读书 dúshū** study
   他 读书 很 用功。
   Tā dúshū hěn yònggōng.
   He studies hard.
3. **读本 dúběn** textbook
   这 是一 本 汉语 读本。
   Zhè shì yì běn Hànyǔ dúběn.
   This is a Chinese reader.
4. **读者 dúzhě** reader (of a book, newspaper, etc.)
   你 看了 今天 报上 的 读者 来信 没有？
   Nǐ kànle jīntiān bàoshang de dúzhě láixìn méiyǒu?
   Have you read the letters to the editor in today's paper?
5. **阅读 yuèdú** read
   我 来 图书馆 阅读 杂志。
   Wǒ lái túshūguǎn yuèdú zázhì.
   I came to the library to read magazines.

The last stroke ends firmly. **10 strokes**



162

练 **liàn** practice

Full form

練

The full form combines *silk* 纟, *tie together* 束 and *divide* 丷. It may represent raw silk glossed, selected and tied together. It means *practice.*

Radical: 纟 **'silk'**

Index # 68

Character components: 纟 + 东

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **练** **liàn** practice
   我　下定　决心　练好　身体。
   Wǒ xiàdìng juéxīn liànhǎo shēntǐ.
   I've made up my mind to get fit.

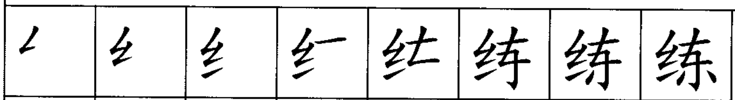
2. **练习** **liànxí** practice
   我　每天　练习　写　汉字。
   Wǒ měitiān liànxí xiě Hànzì.
   I practice writing Chinese characters every day.

3. **练习本** **liànxíběn** workbook
   这　是　汉字　读写　练习本。
   Zhè shì Hànzì dú-xiě liànxíběn.
   This is a Chinese character reading workbook.

4. **练习题** **liànxítí** exercise problems
   今天　的　作业　有　两　条　练习题　我　不会　做。
   Jīntiān de zuòyè yǒu liǎng tiáo liànxítí wǒ bùhuì zuò.
   There are two exercise problems that I can't do in today's homework.

5. **练武** **liànwǔ** practice martial arts
   我　每天　早晨　都　练武。
   Wǒ měitiān zǎochén dōu liànwǔ.
   I practice martial arts every morning.

Note the difference between 东 and 东. **8 strokes**



163 **Full form**

习 **xí** practice 習

The full form represents the idea that a young bird flaps its wings many times, thus the meaning of *practice.*

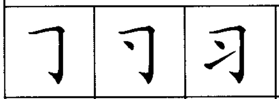
Radical: ㇆ **'horizontal-vertical-hook'** **Index # 5**

Character component: 习 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **习 xí** practice
   习 非 成 是。
   Xí fēi chéng shì.
   Accept what is wrong as right.
2. **习惯 xíguàn** habit
   我 习惯 早起。
   Wǒ xíguàn zǎoqǐ.
   I'm used to getting up early.
3. **习染 xírǎn** fall into a bad habit of
   青年人 很 容易 习染 抽烟。
   Qīngniánrén hěn róngyì xírǎn chōuyān.
   It's easy for young people to pick up the bad habit of smoking.
4. **习气 xíqì** bad habit
   中国 的 官僚 习气很 严重。
   Zhōngguó de guānliáo xíqì hěn yánzhòng.
   Bad bureaucratic habits prevail in China.
5. **习俗 xísú** custom
   中国人 有 赏月 的习俗。
   Zhōngguórén yǒu shǎngyuè de xísú.
   The Chinese people have the custom of enjoying the full moon.

The first stroke ends with a hook. **3 strokes**



164

书 shū book

Full form

書

The full form expresses the hand holding a brush writing a *book*. The cursive style of writing the character was adopted as the simplified form.

Radical: 乛 **'horizontal-bend'**

Index # 5

Character components: 乛 + ㇆ + 丨 + 丶

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **书** **shū** book
   这 是 一 本 教科书。
   Zhè shì yì běn jiàokēshū.
   This is a textbook.

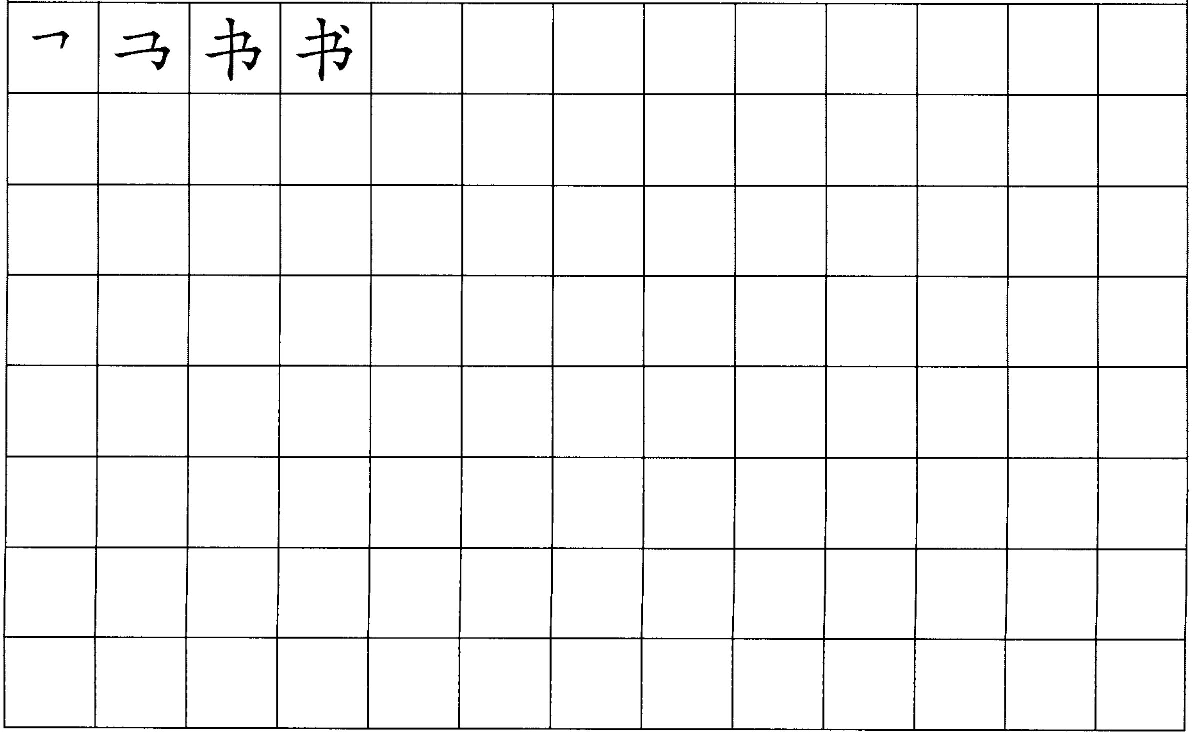
2. **书包** **shūbāo** school bag
   小孩 背着 书包 上学。
   Xiǎohái bēizhe shūbāo shàngxué.
   The children carry their school bags on their backs to go to school.

3. **书店** **shūdiàn** book store
   马路 对面 有 一家 书店。
   Mǎlù duìmiàn yǒu yì jiā shūdiàn.
   There is a book store across the road.

4. **书架** **shūjià** bookshelf
   我 刚 买了 一个 书架。
   Wǒ gāng mǎile yí ge shūjià.
   I just bought a bookshelf.

5. **书法** **shūfǎ** calligraphy
   我 觉得 中国 书法 很 好看。
   Wǒ juéde Zhōngguō shūfǎ hěn hǎokàn.
   I think Chinese calligraphy is beautiful.

The second stroke ends with a hook. **4 strokes**



165

词 cí word

Full form

詞

The full form combines *speech* 言 and the phonetic 司 to give the idea of *word.*

Radical: 讠 **'word'**

Index # 9

Character components: 讠 + 司

Character configuration: ◫

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **词** **cí** new words
   调子 我记得，可是 词儿我 忘 了。
   Diàozi wǒ jìde, kěshì cír wǒ wàng le.
   I remember the tune all right, but I've forgotten the words.

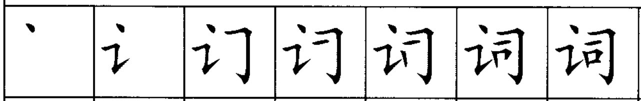
2. **词典** **cídiǎn** dictionary
   这 本 词典 很 有用。
   Zhè běn cídiǎn hěn yǒuyòng.
   This dictionary is very useful.

3. **生词** **shēngcí** new words
   这 篇 短文 生词 太 多。
   Zhè piān duǎnwén shēngcí tài duō.
   This narrative has too many new words.

4. **单词** **dāncí** single word
   我 学 的 单词 不够 用。
   Wǒ xué de dāncí búgòu yòng.
   I haven't learnt enough words.

5. **词汇表** **cíhuìbiǎo** glossary
   书 后面 有 词汇表。
   Shū hòumiàn yǒu cíhuìbiǎo.
   There's a glossary at the back of the book.

The second stroke is a horizontal-bend-lift. **7 strokes**



166

典 **diǎn** standard

The character is a phonetic but used as a character. It means *standard* or *canon.*

Radical: 八 **'eight'**

Index # 17

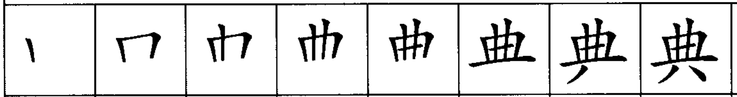
Character components: 曲 + 八

Character configuration: ⿱

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **典 diǎn** ceremony
   校长 邀请 我 参加 五十 年
   Xiàozhǎng yāoqǐng wǒ cānjiā wǔshí nián
   校庆 盛典。
   xiàoqìng shèngdiǎn.
   The headmaster invited me to take part in the school's 50th anniversary ceremony.
2. **典礼 diǎnlǐ** ceremony
   校长 邀请 我 参加 五十 年
   Xiàozhǎng yāoqǐng wǒ cānjiā wǔshí nián
   校庆 典礼。
   xiàoqìng diǎnlǐ.
   The headmaster invited me to take part in the school's 50th anniversary ceremony.
3. **典型 diǎnxíng** typical
   这 是 典型 的 中国 村庄。
   Zhè shì diǎnxíng de Zhōngguó cūnzhuāng.
   This is a typical Chinese village.
4. **词典 cídiǎn** dictionary
   这 本 词典 很 有用。
   Zhè běn cídiǎn hěn yǒuyòng.
   This dictionary is very useful.
5. **古典 gǔdiǎn** classical
   我 喜欢 古典 音乐。
   Wǒ xǐhuan gǔdiǎn yīnyuè.
   I like classical music.

The bottom horizontal stroke is longer. **8 strokes**



167

本 **běn** root, base; [classifier]

The character represents a *tree* 木 with a line marked at the base, referring to the most important part. It means *foundation.* It is also used as *classifier* for books.

Radical: 木 **'tree'**

Index # 81

Character components: 木 + 一

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **本** **běn** classifier
   我去 图书馆 借了 两 本 书。
   Wǒ qù túshūguǎn jièle liǎng běn shū.
   I went to the library and borrowed two books.
2. **本地** **běndì** local
   我 是 本地人。
   Wǒ shì běndìrén.
   I was born here.
3. **本行** **běnháng** one's own profession
   搞 电脑 是 我 的本行。
   Gǎo diànnǎo shì wǒde běnháng.
   Computers are my line of work.
4. **本来** **běnlái** original
   他 本来 身体 很 瘦弱。
   Tā běnlái shēntǐ hěn shòuruò.
   He used to be thin and weak.
5. **本领** **běnlǐng** ability
   他的 本领 很 大。
   Tāde běnlǐng hěn dà.
   He's very capable.

Make sure the bottom horizontal stroke is not too low. **5 strokes**

一	十	才	木	本								

168

它 **tā** it

This character is a modern character. *It* can be thought of as a member of the household (it's under the roof) but it is an animal or thing, not a person.

Radical: 宀 **'roof'**

Index # 34

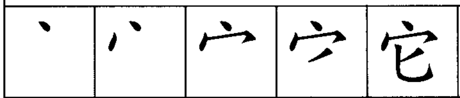
Character components: 宀 **+** 匕

Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **它** **tā** it (animal/thing)
   这杯牛奶你喝完它。
   Zhè bēi niúnǎi nǐ hēwán tā.
   Drink up this glass of milk.
2. **它的** **tāde** its (animals/things)
   这裙子很好看，我喜欢它的颜色。
   Zhè qúnzi hěn hǎokàn, wǒ xǐhuan tāde yánsè.
   This skirt is pretty. I like its color.
3. **它们** **tāmen** they (animals/things)
   猫狗虽然可爱，但它们不会说话。
   Māo gǒu suīrán kě'ài, dàn tāmen bùhuì shuōhuà.
   Although cats and dogs are cute, they can't speak.
4. **其它** **qítā** other; else
   还有什么其它事情要我们做吗?
   Háiyǒu shénme qítā shìqing yào wǒmen zuò ma?
   Is there anything else you want us to do?

The last stroke sweeps from right to left. **5 strokes**



169

帮 **bāng** help

Full form

幫

The full form denotes the trimming of an upper sole which kept the foot tightly in the shoe. To make the shoe moveable is to *assist* walking. The simplified form borrows the sound 邦 to combine with *napkin* 巾.

Radical: 巾 **'napkin'**

Index # 52

Character components: 邦 + 巾

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **帮** **bāng** help
   我 帮 她 搬了 行李。
   Wǒ bāng tā bānle xíngli.
   I helped her with her luggage.

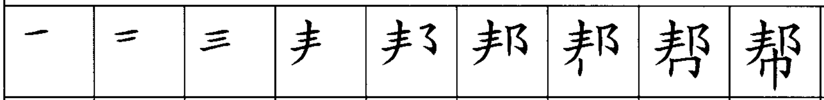
2. **帮助** **bāngzhù** help
   他 帮助 我 学 汉语。
   Tā bāngzhù wǒ xué Hànyǔ.
   He helps me to learn Chinese.

3. **帮手** **bāngshǒu** helper
   你 真 是 个 好 帮手。
   Nǐ zhēn shì ge hǎo bāngshǒu.
   You really are a good helper.

4. **帮忙** **bāngmáng** help
   我 要 请 她 帮忙。
   Wǒ yào qǐng tā bāngmáng.
   I'll ask her to help.

5. **帮倒忙** **bāngdàománg** make the matter worse with one's help
   请 小心 点儿, 别 给 我 帮倒忙
   Qǐng xiǎoxīn diǎnr, biě gěi wǒ bāngdàománg
   了。
   le.
   Please be careful, don't make things worse.

The fourth stroke sweeps down and tapers off. **9 strokes**



170

助 **zhù** assistance

The character combines *things piled up* 且 and *strength* 力 to represent the act of adding force to an object already under pressure. It means *help.*

Radical: 力 **'strength'** **Index # 31**

Character components: 且 + 力 **Character configuration:** ◫

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **助** **zhù** help
   感谢 你 助 我 一 臂 之力。
   Gǎnxiè nǐ zhù wǒ yī bèi zhī lì.
   Thanks for lending me a helping hand.

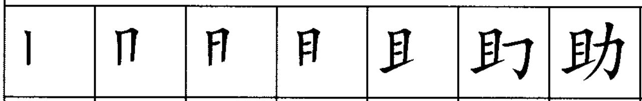
2. **帮助** **bāngzhù** help
   他 帮助 我 学 汉语。
   Tā bāngzhù wǒ xué Hànyǔ.
   He helps me learn Chinese.

3. **助手** **zhùshǒu** assistant
   他 是 我的 助手。
   Tā shì wǒde zhùshǒu.
   He is my assistant.

4. **助兴** **zhùxìng** add to the fun
   给 大家 唱 支 歌 助助兴。
   Gěi dàjiā chàng zhī gē zhùzhuxìng.
   Sing us a song to liven things up.

5. **助学金** **zhùxuéjīn** grant-in-aid
   他 是 领 助学金 的 学生。
   Tā shì lǐng zhùxuéjīn de xuésheng.
   He is a grant-in-aid student.

The fifth stroke lifts slightly. **7 strokes**



Quiz 17 (161–170)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

帮	脑	卖	生
助	零	词	典
它	练	学	就
本	习	读	书

	Word or phrase			Pronunciation	Translation
(i)	帮	助		bāngzhù	help
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Zhè shì yì běn shénme shū?									
(ii)	Zhè búshì shū, yě búshì cídiǎn.									
(iii)	Zhè shì Hànzì dú-xiě liànxíběn.									
(iv)	Tā bāngzhù wǒ xué Hànzì.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)		(ii)	
习 sú	calligraphy	本 dì	skills
练习本	dictionary	本 lǐng	assistant
书店	custom	本 lái	typical
yuè 读	bookshelves	帮助	local
书 jià	workbook	助手	help
书 fǎ	reading	典 xíng	reading text
生词	new words	读书	study
词典	book store	读本	originally

171

前 **qián** in front of, ahead

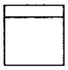
The character represents a slow advance forward by bringing the rear foot up to the heel of the front foot before taking a step. It means *forward.*

Radical: 八 **'eight'**

Index # 17

Character components: 䒑 + 月 + 刂

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **前** **qián** forward, ahead
   我们 应该 往 前 看。
   Wǒmen yīnggāi wǎng qián kàn.
   We should look ahead.

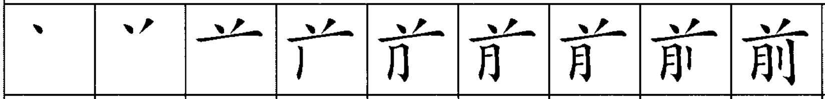
2. **前面** **qiánmian** in front of, ahead
   前面 有 座位。
   Qiánmiàn yǒu zuòwèi.
   There are seats in the front.

3. **前边** **qiánbian** in front of, ahead
   前边 有 座位 吗?
   Qiánbian yǒu zuòwèi ma?
   Are there seats in the front?

4. **前天** **qiántiān** day before yesterday
   前天 他 来过 这里。
   Qiántiān tā láiguo zhèlǐ.
   He came here the day before yesterday.

5. **前途** **qiántú** future prospect
   你的 工作 很 有 前途。
   Nǐde gōngzuò hěn yǒu qiántú.
   Your work has great potential.

The last stroke ends with a hook. **9 strokes**



172

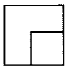
Full form

后 **hòu** behind

後

The full form 後 refers to someone who is walking slowly and thus *falling behind*. In simplification, the homonym *queen* 后 is used instead.

Radical: 丿 **'downward-left-stroke'** **Index # 4**
or 口 **'mouth'** **Index # 50**
Character components: ⺁ + 口 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **后 hòu** back
   屋后 养着 很多 花儿。
   Wūhòu yǎngzhe hěnduō huār.
   There are flowers growing at the back of the house.

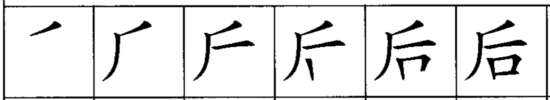
2. **后面 hòumian** at the back, behind
   后面 还 有 座位。
   Hòumian hái yǒu zuòwèi.
   There are still some seats at the back.

3. **后天 hòutiān** day after tomorrow
   后天 你有 没有 空儿?
   Hòutiān nǐ yǒu méiyǒu kòngr?
   Are you free the day after tomorrow?

4. **后果 hòuguǒ** consequence
   后果 不堪 设想。
   Hòuguǒ bùkān shèxiǎng.
   The consequences would be too ghastly to contemplate.

5. **以后 yǐhòu** afterwards
   以后 你 会 有 机会 去的。
   Yǐhòu nǐ huì yǒu jīhuì qù de.
   You will have a chance to go later.

The first two strokes are written separately. **6 strokes**



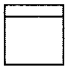
173

面 **miàn** face

The pictograph is a face with a nose. It means *face* or *surface*.

Radical: 一 **'horizontal stroke'** **Index # 2**

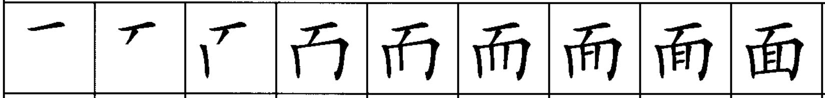
Character components: 一 + ˊ + 囬 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **面** **miàn** face
   她 常常 面 带 笑容。
   Tā chángcháng miàn dài xiàoróng.
   She often has a smile on her face.
2. **面貌** **miànmào** features
   他们 的 面貌 十分 相似。
   Tāmen de miànmào shífēn xiāngsì.
   They look very much alike.
3. **面熟** **miànshú** look familiar
   这 人 看着 面熟。
   Zhè rén kànzhe miànshú.
   That person looks familiar.
4. **面积** **miànji** area
   这 套 房子 的 使用 面积 是 五十 平方 公尺。
   Zhè tào fángzi de shǐyòng miànji shi wǔshí píngfāng gōngchǐ.
   The usable area of this apartment is 50 square meters.
5. **面子** **miànzi** face
   他 是老板， 给他留 点 面子 吧。
   Tā shì lǎobǎn, gěi tā liú diǎn miànzi ba.
   He is our boss, show some respect.

Note the difference between 面 and 而. **9 strokes**



174

旁 **páng** next to

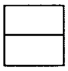
The character combines *standing* 立 and the phonetic 方 to suggest the idea that while standing on a fixed locality, one is conscious of direction. It means *adjacent to.*

Radical: 方 **'direction'**

Index # 74

Character components: 产 **+** 方

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **旁 páng** other
   旁 的 还 要 什么?
   Páng de hái yào shénme?
   Do you want anything else?

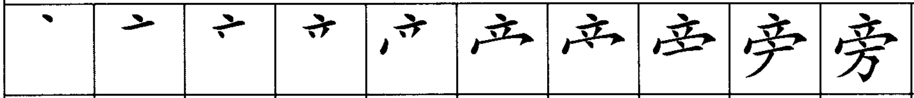
2. **旁边 pángbiān** next to
   坐 在 我 旁边 吧。
   Zuò zài wǒ pángbiān ba.
   Why don't you sit next to me?

3. **两旁 liǎngpáng** both sides
   马路 两旁 种了 很多 树。
   Mǎlù liǎngpáng zhòngle hěnduō shù.
   There are lots of trees planted on both sides of the road.

4. **旁观者 pángguānzhě** onlooker
   旁观者 清。
   Pángguānzhě qīng.
   The spectator sees most clearly.

5. **旁听 pángtīng** be a visitor in a school class
   我 明天 旁听 你的 课可以吗?
   Wǒ míngtiān pángtīng nǐde kè kěyǐ ma?
   May I sit in on your lecture tomorrow?

The last stroke ends with a hook. **10 strokes**



175

边 **biān** side

Full form

邊

The full form combines *movement* ⻌ and 臱 to represent the *edge* and means *borderline.* In simplification, 力 is used to replace 臱.

Radical: ⻌ **'movement'**

Index # 38

Character components: 力 **+** ⻌

Character configuration: ⿺

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **边** **biān** side
   马路 两 边 种了 很多 树。
   Mǎlù liǎng biān zhòngle hěnduō shù.
   There are lots of trees planted on both sides of the road.

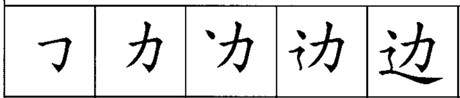
2. **边 ... 边** **biān ... biān** as ... as
   他 边 唱歌 边 跳舞。
   Tā biān chànggē biān tiàowǔ.
   He sings as he dances.

3. **上边** **shàngbian** above
   大桥 上边 走 汽车。
   Dàqiáo shàngbian zǒu qìchē.
   The upper deck of the bridge is for cars.

4. **外边** **wàibian** outside
   请 到 外边 抽烟。
   Qǐng dào wàibian chōuyān.
   Please go outside to smoke.

5. **海边** **hǎibiān** seaside
   夏天 很多 人 到 海边 游泳。
   Xiàtiān hěnduō rén dào hǎibiān yóuyǒng.
   In summer, many people go to the seaside to swim.

⻌ is written in 3 strokes. **5 strokes**



176 **Full form**

对 **duì** opposite; correct 對

The full form combines 丵 and 寸 to give the idea of *symmetry.* The simplified form replaces 丵 with 又 which also functions as a radical.

Radical: 又 **'again'** **Index # 24**
or 寸 **'inch'** **Index # 46**
Character components: 又 + 寸 **Character configuration:** ◫

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **对** **duì** correct
这 件 事 你做得 很 对。
Zhè jiàn shì nǐ zuòde hěn duì.
You did the right thing.

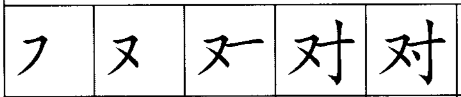
2. **对面** **duìmiàn** opposite
他家就 在 我 家 对面。
Tā jiā jiù zài wǒ jiā duìmiàn.
His house is opposite mine.

3. **对不起** **duìbuqǐ** I'm sorry
对不起，给 你 添 麻烦了。
Duìbuqǐ, gěi nǐ tiān máfan le.
Sorry to have given you so much trouble.

4. **对手** **duìshǒu** opponent
他 不是 你的 对手。
Tā búshì nǐde duìshǒu.
He's no match for you.

5. **对于** **duìyú** with regard to, about
对于 他的 工作 我 没有 什么 意见。
Duìyú tāde gōngzuò wǒ méiyǒu shénme yìjiān.
I have no complaints about his work.

End the second stroke firmly. **5 strokes**



177

院 **yuàn** courtyard

The character combines *earth-mound* 阝 and the phonetic 完 to give the meaning of a large *building* with an earthern wall around it, e.g schools and hospitals.

Radical: 阝 **'left-ear lobe'** **Index # 27**

Character components: 阝 **+** 完 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **院** **yuàn** courtyard
   院里 种了 几颗 果树。
   Yuànli zhòngle jǐ kē guǒshù.
   There are some fruit trees in the courtyard.

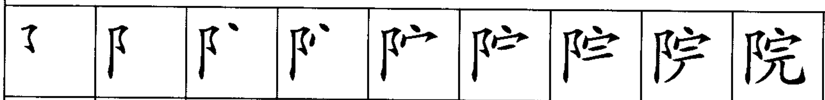
2. **院子** **yuànzi** courtyard
   我 家 有 个 院子，孩子们 可以在那儿 玩儿。
   Wǒ jiā yǒu ge yuànzi, háizimen kěyǐ zài nàr wánr.
   My house has a yard for the children to play in.

3. **医院** **yīyuàn** hospital
   医院 对面 是 公园。
   Yīyuàn duìmiàn shì gōngyuán.
   Opposite the hospital is a park.

4. **住院** **zhùyuàn** stay in hospital
   他 住了 两 个 星期 的 院。
   Tā zhùle liǎng ge xīngqī de yuàn.
   He was hospitalized for two weeks.

5. **电影院** **diànyǐngyuàn** cinema
   这 是 新开 的 电影院。
   Zhè shì xīnkāi de diànyǐngyuàn.
   This is a new cinema.

The last stroke ends with a hook. **9 strokes**



178

校 **jiào/xiào** check; school

The character combines *tree* 木 and the phonetic 交 to give the idea of distinguishing right from wrong. It is pronounced *jiào* (*to check*) and *xiào (school).*

Radical: 木 **'tree'**

Index # 81

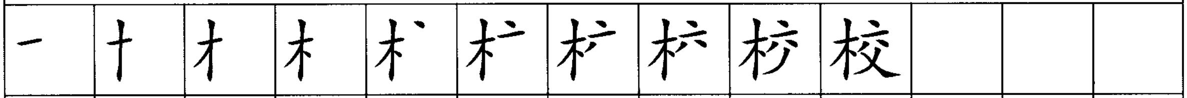
Character components: 木 + 交

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **校 jiào** check, proofread
   先 校 错字，然后 校 标点 符号。
   Xiān jiào cuòzì, ránhou jiào biāodiǎn fúhào.
   First proofread for typos, then correct the punctuation.
2. **校对 jiàoduì** check, proofread
   校对 汉字 时，要 注意 笔顺。
   Jiàoduì Hànzì shí, yào zhùyì bǐshùn.
   When proofreading Chinese characters, pay attention to the stroke order.
3. **学校 xuéxiào** school
   这 个 学校 有 一百 年 的历史。
   Zhè ge xuéxiào yǒu yībǎi nián de lìshǐ.
   This school has a 100-year history.
4. **校园 xiàoyuán** campus
   校园 进行 绿化 已经 一 年 了。
   Xiàoyuán jìnxíng lǜhuà yǐjīng yì nián le.
   The greening of our campus has been under way for a year.
5. **母校 mǔxiào** Alma Mater
   悉尼 大学 是 我的 母校。
   Xīní Dàxué shì wǒde mǔxiào.
   Sydney University is my Alma Mater.

The second stroke sweeps to the left. **10 strokes**



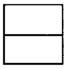
179

公 **gōng** public

The character was derived from *divide* 八 and *private property* 厶 to give the idea of making private property *public*.

Radical: 八 **'eight'** **Index # 17**

Character components: 八 **+** 厶 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **公** **gōng** official business
   我 今天 因 公 外出。
   Wǒ jīntiān yīn gōng wàichū.
   Today I'm going on offical business.

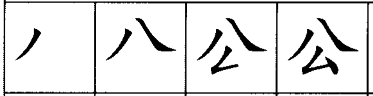
2. **公共** **gōnggòng** public
   公共 场所 不准 抽烟。
   Gōnggòng chǎngsuǒ bùzhǔn chōuyān.
   No smoking in public places.

3. **公里** **gōnglǐ** kilometer
   我 家 离 学校 一 公里。
   Wǒ jiā lí xuéxiào yī gōnglǐ.
   My house is one kilometer from the school.

4. **公斤** **gōngjīn** kilogram
   买 一 公斤 桔子。
   Mǎi yī gōngjīn júzi.
   Give me [buy] a kilogram of oranges.

5. **公升** **gōngshēng** liter
   买 四十 公升 汽油。
   Mǎi sìshí gōngshēng qìyóu.
   Give me [buy] 40 liters of gasoline.

Leave a gap between the first two strokes. **4 strokes**



180

园 **yuán** garden; park

Full form

園

The full form combines *surround* 囗 and *ample room* 袁 to mean 'a wide fenced area such as an orchard or a garden.' The phonetic 袁 is replaced by 元 in simplification.

Radical: 囗 **'4-sided frame'**

Index # 51

Character components: 囗 **+** 元

Character configuration: ⧈

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **园** **yuán** garden
   我 家 园子 种了 几颗 果树。
   Wǒ jiā yuánzi zhòngle jǐ kē guǒshù.
   There are a few fruit trees in my garden.

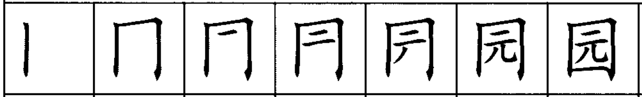
2. **公园** **gōngyuán** park
   假日里 很多 人 到 公园 去 玩儿。
   Jiàrìli, hěnduō rén dào gōngyuán qù wánr.
   On holidays, many people go to the park to enjoy themselves.

3. **花园** **huāyuán** (flower) garden
   我 家 前面 有 一个 小 花园。
   Wǒ jiā qiánmiàn yǒu yí ge xiǎo huāyuán.
   There's a small garden in front of our house.

4. **苹果园** **píngguǒyuán** apple orchard
   这里 一带 都 是 苹果园。
   Zhèlǐ yídài dōu shì píngguǒyuán.
   There are apple orchards around here.

5. **动物园** **dòngwùyuán** zoo
   北京 动物园 有 大熊猫。
   Běijīng dòngwùyuán yǒu dàxióngmāo.
   There are pandas in Beijing Zoo.

The sealing stroke is written last. **7 strokes**



Quiz 18 (171–180)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

院	前	对	父
旁	边	母	面
公	后	校	园
西	家	生	学

	Word or phrase			**Pinyin**	**Meaning**
(i)	前	边		qiánbian	in front of, ahead
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Qiánmian shì yīyuàn.									
(ii)	Xuéxiào hòumian shì gōngyuán.									
(iii)	Diànyǐngyuàn zài nǎr?									
(iv)	Diànyǐngyuàn zài xuéxiào duìmiàn.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

前面
后面
两旁
hǎi 边
上边
wài 边
对不起
对面

outside
above, on top of
seaside
ahead, in front of
I'm sorry
opposite
behind, at the back
on both sides

(ii)

前天
后天
yǐ 后
医院
电影院
学校
面子
公园

afterwards
cinema
the day after tomorrow
park
the day before yesterday
hospital
respect, 'face'
school

181

离 lí depart

Full form

離

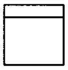
The full form combines *bird* 隹 and the phonetic 离 to suggest the idea of escaping or *to separate*. The simplified form retains only the phonetic part.

Radical: 亠 **'top of 六'**

Index # 6

Character components: 亠 **+** 凶 **+** 禸

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **离** **lí** distance from
   公园 离 学校 有 一公里。
   Gōngyuán lí xuéxiào yǒu yì gōnglǐ.
   The park is one kilometer from the school.

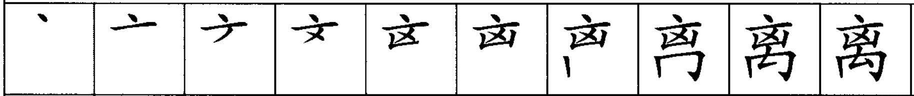
2. **离婚** **líhūn** divorce
   离婚 以后 他就 没有 再 结婚。
   Líhūn yǐhòu tā jiù méiyǒu zài jiéhūn.
   He hasn't remarried since his divorce.

3. **离开** **líkāi** depart
   离开 北京，她 坐 火车 去 西安。
   Líkāi Běijīng, tā zuò huǒchē qù Xī'ān.
   Departing Beijing, she took the train to Xian.

4. **离别** **líbié** bid farewell
   我 离别 故乡 已经 十 年 了。
   Wǒ líbié gùxiāng yǐjīng shí nián le.
   It's been ten years since I left my hometown.

5. **离题** **lítí** digress from the subject
   发言 不要 离题。
   Fāyán búyào lítí.
   Please keep to the subject when you speak.

End the last stroke firmly. **10 strokes**



182

远 **yuǎn** far

Full form

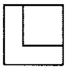
遠

The full form combines *movement* 辶 and the phonetic 袁 which carries the idea of *ample room*. Thus it means *ample distance* or *far.* In simplification, the simpler phonetic 元 is used.

Radical: 辶 'movement'

Index # 38

Character components: 元 + 辶

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **远 yuǎn** far
   公园 离 学校 有 多 远?
   Gōngyuán lí xuéxiào yǒu duō yuǎn?
   How far is the park from the school?

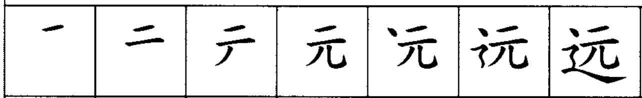
2. **远处 yuǎnchù** distant point or place
   我 看见几个人 从 远处 走来。
   Wǒ kànjiàn jǐ ge rén cóng yuǎnchù zǒulái.
   I saw a few people coming towards me from a distance.

3. **远近 yuǎnjìn** distance
   这 两 条路 远近 差不多。
   Zhè liǎng tiáo lù yuǎnjìn chàbuduō.
   The distance is about the same by either road.

4. **远大 yuǎndà** long-range, lofty
   年青人 应该 有 远大 的 理想。
   Niánqīngrén yīnggāi yǒu yuǎndà de lǐxiǎng.
   Young people ought to have lofty ideals.

5. **长远 chángyuǎn** long-term
   从 长远 的 观点 看 问题。
   Cóng chángyuǎn de guāndiǎn kàn wèntí.
   Look at problems from a long-term view.

The last stroke of 元 ends with a hook. **7 strokes**



183

直 **zhí** straight

The character combines *direct* 十, *eye* 目 and *hidden* 一, suggesting the idea of taking a *direct* look at something concealed.

Radical: 十 **'ten'** **Index # 11**

Character components: 十 **+** 且 **Character configuration:** ⿱

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **直 zhí** straight
   这里 的 街道 又 宽 又 直。
   Zhèlǐ de jiēdào yòu kuān yòu zhí.
   The streets are wide and straight.

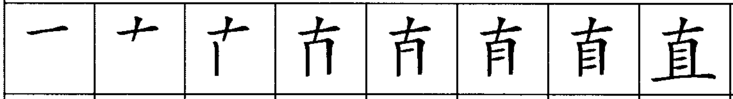
2. **一直 yìzhí** all the way
   你 从 这儿 一直 走 就是 了。
   Nǐ cóng zhèr yìzhí zǒu jiù shì le.
   Go straight ahead and you'll be there.

3. **直到 zhídào** until
   我 直到 昨晚 才 接到 通知。
   Wǒ zhídào zuówǎn cái jiēdào tōngzhī.
   I was not informed until last night.

4. **直接 zhíjiē** direct
   你 应该 直接 跟 我 说。
   Nǐ yīnggāi zhíjiē gēn wǒ shuō.
   You should speak to me directly.

5. **直来直去 zhílái-zhíqù** blunt, frank and outspoken
   她是 个 直来 直去 的人， 说话 有口 无心。
   Tā shì ge zhílái-zhíqù de rén, shuōhuà yǒukǒu-wúxīn.
   She's a blunt woman, often speaking sharply but she means well.

The three short horizontals are in the middle. **8 strokes**



184

往 **wǎng** toward

The character combines *slow pace* 彳 and *to go to* 主 to give the meaning of *proceeding in a certain direction* or *toward.*

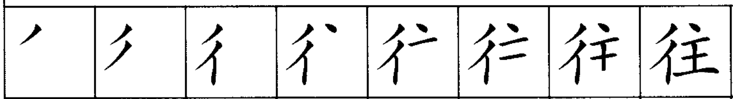
Radical: 彳 **'double-person'** **Index # 54**

Character components: 彳 **+** 主 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **往** **wǎng** toward
   你 往 东 走 去 就 是 了。
   Nǐ wǎng dōng zǒu qù jiù shì le.
   Go east and you'll get there.
2. **往往** **wǎngwǎng** often
   这里 春天 往往 刮 大 风。
   Zhèlǐ chūntiān wǎngwǎng guā dà fēng.
   It's often windy here in spring.
3. **往常** **wǎngcháng** habitually in the past
   她 往常 不 这样。
   Tā wǎngcháng bù zhèyàng.
   She wasn't like that before.
4. **往返** **wǎngfǎn** journey there and back.
   往返 要 多 长 时间?
   Wǎngfǎn yào duō cháng shíjiān?
   How long does it take to get there and back?
5. **往来** **wǎnglái** contact, dealings
   他们 两 家 人 往来 很 密切。
   Tāmen liǎng jiā rén wǎnglái hěn mìqiè.
   The two families are in close contact.

Note the difference between 往 and 住. **8 strokes**



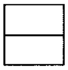
185

走 **zǒu** walk

The character depicts a person *running*, taking long strides and with arms outstretched.

Radical: 走 **'walk'** **Index # 156**

Character components: 土 + 龰 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **走** **zǒu** walk
   一直往前走。
   Yīzhí wǎng qián zǒu.
   Go straight ahead.

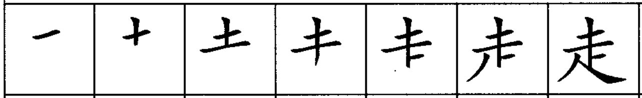
2. **走路** **zǒulù** go on foot
   你们是坐车去还是走路去?
   Nǐmen shì zuòchē qù háishi zǒulù qù?
   Will you go there by bus or on foot?

3. **走运** **zǒuyùn** be in luck
   祝你走运!
   Zhù nǐ zǒuyùn!
   Good luck!

4. **走失** **zǒushī** wander away
   我们一起出去的，半路上她走失了。
   Wǒmen yìqǐ chūqu de, bànlù shàng tā zǒushī le.
   We went out together and she got lost on the way.

5. **走动** **zǒudòng** stretch one's legs
   坐了一整天了，出去走动走动吧。
   Zuòle yì zhěngtiān le, chūqu zǒudòng zǒudòng ba.
   We've been sitting all day long. Let's go out and stretch our legs.

The second horizontal is longer. **7 strokes**



186

过 **guò** pass; cross

Full form

過

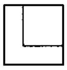
The full form combines *movement* 辶 and the phonetic 咼 to suggest the idea of *surpassing* or *to pass the limit.*

Radical: 辶 **'movement'**

Index # 38

Character components: 寸 + 辶

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **过 guò** pass, cross
   过 两 条 街 就 是。
   Guò liǎng tiáo jiē jiù shì.
   Cross two streets and you are there.

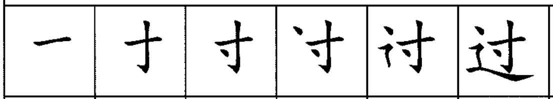
2. **过敏 guòmǐn** allergy
   我 对 牛奶 过敏。
   Wǒ duì niúnǎi guòmǐn.
   I'm allergic to milk.

3. **过去 guòqù** formerly
   他 比 过去 瘦 多 了。
   Tā bǐ guòqù shòu duō le.
   He's much thinner than he used to be.

4. **过时 guòshí** out of date
   这 件 衣服 早 就 过时 了。
   Zhè jiàn yīfu zǎo jiù guòshí le.
   This garment is long out of fashion.

5. **不过 búguò** but, however
   爸爸 的 身体 还 不错，不过 有点儿 胖。
   Bàba de shēntǐ hái búcuò, búguò yǒudiǎnr pàng.
   My dad's heath is quite good, but he is a bit overweight.

End the third last stroke firmly. **6 strokes**



187 **Full form**

条 **tiāo** [classifier] 條

The simplified form combines *tree* 木 and 夂, which is the figure of a hand holding a stick. It also means an *item.*

Radical: 夂 **'top of 冬'** **Index # 57**
or 木 **'tree'** **Index # 81**
Character components: 夂 **+** 朩 **Character configuration:** ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **条** **tiāo** classifier
过了 这 条 街 就是。
Guòle zhè tiáo jiē jiù shì.
You're there after you pass this street.

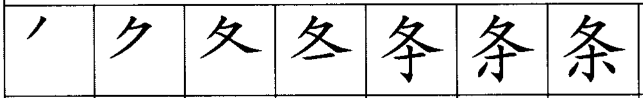
2. **条件** **tiáojiàn** condition
这里的 工作 条件 还 不错。
Zhèlǐ de gōngzuò tiáojiàn hái búcuò.
The working conditions here are quite okay.

3. **条里** **tiáolǐ** orderliness
她 工作 很 有 条理。
Tā gōngzuò hěn yǒu tiáolǐ.
She is a methodical worker.

4. **便条** **biàntiáo** short note
你 给 他 写 个 便条 吧。
Nǐ gěi tā xiě ge biàntiáo ba.
Why don't you write him a note?

5. **面条** **miàntiáo** noodles
北方人 一般 喜欢 吃 面条。
Běifāngrén yībān xǐhuan chī miàntiáo.
In North China, people prefer noodles.

The fifth stroke ends with a hook. **7 strokes**



188

街 **jiē** street

The character is made up of 彳, 圭 and 亍. The first and third components combine to mean *business firms* or *shops*. The addition of the middle component suggests that the shops line up to form a *street.*

Radical: 彳 **'double-person'** **Index # 54**

Character components: 彳 **+** 圭 **+** 亍 **Character configuration:** ⿲

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **街 jiē** street
   这 条 街 很 宽。
   Zhè tiáo jiē hěn kuān.
   This street is very wide.

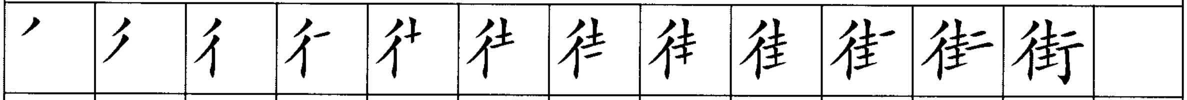
2. **街道 jiēdào** residential district
   这里的 街道 很 干净。
   Zhèlǐ de jiēdào hěn gānjìng.
   This neighborhood is very clean.

3. **大街 dàjiē** main street
   我们 去 逛 大街 怎么样?
   Wǒmen qù guàng dàjiē zěnmeyàng?
   How about if we stroll around the streets?

4. **上街 shàngjiē** go shopping
   妈妈 上街 去了。
   Māma shàngjiē qù le.
   Mum has gone shopping.

5. **唐人街 Tángrénjiē** Chinatown
   西方 国家 很多 城市 都 有 唐人街。
   Xīfāng guójiā hěnduō chéngshì dōu yǒu Tángrénjiē.
   Many cities in the West have Chinatowns.

The seventh stroke is horizontal. **12 strokes**



189

再 **zài** again

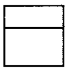
The character looks like a set of scales which gives rise to the idea of *repetition*. It means *again*.

Radical: 一 **'horizontal stroke'**

Index # 2

Character components: 一 + 冉

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **再 zài** again
   有 工夫， 请 再 来 玩儿。
   Yǒu gōngfu, qǐng zài lái wánr.
   Please come again whenever you're free.

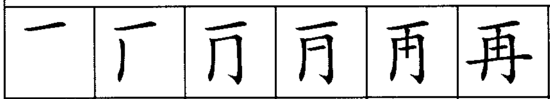
2. **再次 zàicì** once more
   再次 感谢 你们的 帮助。
   Zàicì gǎnxiè nǐmende bāngzhù.
   Thanks once again for your help.

3. **再见 zàijiàn** see you again, goodbye
   下 星期天 再见。
   Xià xīngqītiān zàijiàn.
   I'll see you next Sunday.

4. **再三 zàisān** again and again
   希望 你 再三 考虑 才 决定。
   Xīwàng nǐ zàisān kǎolǜ cái juédìng.
   I hope that you consider carefully before you make your decision.

5. **再说 zàishuō** what's more, besides
   现在 去 找 他 太 晚 了，再 说 我 路 也 不 熟。
   Xiànzài qù zhǎo tā tài wǎn le, zài shuō wǒ lù yě bù shú.
   It's too late to go and see him now; besides, I don't quite know the way.

The bottom horizontal stroke is the longest. **6 strokes**



190

见 jiàn see

Full form

見

The character combines *eyes* 目 and *child* 儿 to give the idea of eyes on two legs or *see*. The simplified form has one of the legs extended into the eyes.

Radical: 见 **'see'**

Index # 93

Character component: 见

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **见** **jiàn** see
   下午 他 要 来 见 你。
   Xiàwǔ tā yào lái jiàn nǐ.
   He's coming to see you this afternoon.

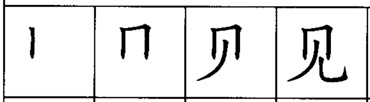
2. **见面** **jiànmiàn** meet, see
   他们 经常 见面。
   Tāmen jīngcháng jiànmiàn.
   They see a lot of each other.

3. **见识** **jiànshi** experience, knowledge
   多 旅游，长 见识。
   Duō lǚyóu, zhǎng jiànshi.
   More travels will broaden your experience.

4. **见笑** **jiànxiào** laugh at (me or us)
   我 刚 开始 学，您 别 见笑。
   Wǒ gāng kāishǐ xué, nín bié jiànxiào.
   Don't laugh at me, I'm only a beginner.

5. **再见** **zàijiàn** see you again
   下 星期天 再见。
   Xià xīngqītiān zàijiàn.
   I'll see you next Sunday.

The last stroke ends with a hook. **4 strokes**



Quiz 19 (181–190)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write down the pinyin and meaning.

两	条	街	离
习	就	一	远
边	过	直	再
往	前	走	见

	Word or phrase			**Pinyin**	**Meaning**
(i)	两	条	街	liǎng tiáo jiē	two streets
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Qǐngwèn, qù yīyuàn zěnme zǒu?									
(ii)	Yīzhí wǎng qián zǒu.									
(iii)	Lí zhèr yuǎn ma?									
(iv)	Bù yuǎn, guò liǎng tiáo jiē jiù shì.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

离 kāi	long term
远 jìn	until
cháng 远	distance
直 dào	depart
往往	often
走 lù	out of fashion
走 yùn	lucky
过时	on foot

(ii)

面条	laugh at (me or us)
条 lǐ	again and again
再 cì	meet, see
再三	noodles
上街	go shopping
见面	once again
见识	methodical
见 xiào	experience, knowledge

191

近 **jìn** near

The character combines *movement* 辶 and the phonetic 斤 which carries the idea of an ax. It suggests a short distance within the arch of an ax.

Radical: 辶 **'movement'**

Index # 38

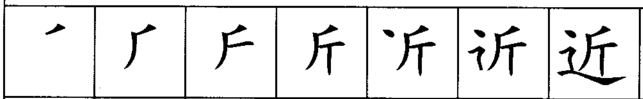
Character components: 斤 + 辶

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **近** **jìn** near
   我 家离 火车站 很 近。
   Wǒ jiā lǐ huǒchēzhàn hěn jìn.
   My house is near the rail station.
2. **近来** **jìnlái** recently
   近来他的 身体 不 太 好。
   Jìnlái tāde shēntǐ bǔ tài hǎo.
   He has been rather unwell recently.
3. **近视** **jìnshì** near-sighted
   她 有点 近视。
   Tā yǒudiǎn jìnshì.
   She is slightly short-sighted.
4. **近便** **jìnbiàn** close and convenient
   我们 找 个 近便 的 饭馆 吃 午饭 吧。
   Wǒmen zhǎo ge jìnbiàn de fànguǎn chī wǔfàn ba.
   Let's have lunch at the nearest restaurant.
5. **附近** **fǔjìn** nearby
   学校 附近 有 一个 公园。
   Xuéxiào fǔjìn yǒu yǐ ge gōngyuán.
   There is a park near the school.

The last stroke tapers off. **7 strokes**



192

外 **wài** outside

The character combines *crescent moon* 夕 and *divination* 卜. Tortoise shells, emptied of their contents, are used in fortune-telling. It means *outside.*

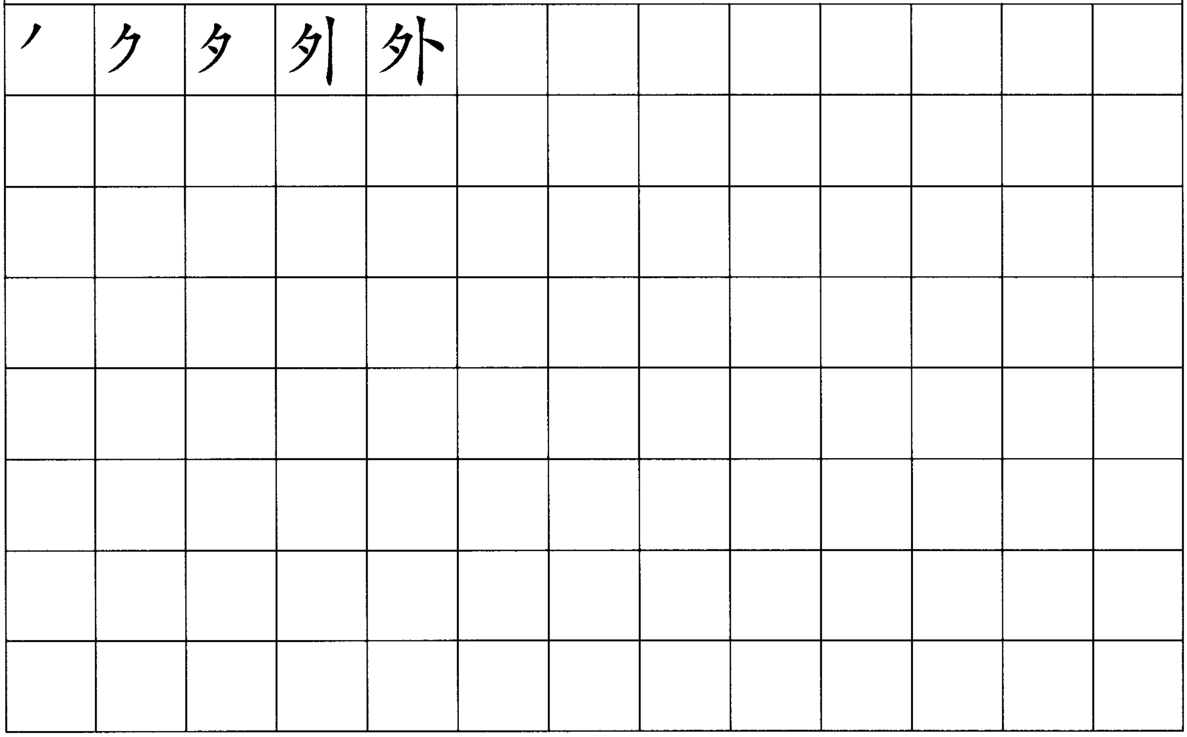
Radical: 卜 **'divination'** **Index # 14**

Character components: 夕 + 卜 **Character configuration:** ◫

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **外** **wài** outside
   这 是 意料 外 的 事。
   Zhè shì yìliào wài de shì.
   That's outside my expectation.
2. **外面** **wàimian** outside
   今天 我们 要 在 外面 吃饭。
   Jīntiān wǒmen yào zài wàimian chīfàn.
   We are dining out today.
3. **外表** **wàibiǎo** outward appearance
   不要 从 外表 看 人。
   Bùyào cóng wàibiǎo kàn rén.
   Don't judge people by their outward appearances.
4. **外国人** **wàiguórén** foreigner
   你 有 没有 外国人 居留证?
   Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu wàiguórén jūliúzhèng?
   Do you have a residence permit for foreigners?
5. **外人** **wàirén** stranger, outsider
   别客气，我 又 不是 外人。
   Bié kèqi, wǒ yòu bùshì wàirén.
   Don't stand on ceremony, I'm no stranger.

End the last stroke firmly. **5 strokes**



193

马 **mǎ** horse

Full form

馬

The full character was derived from a pictograph of a *horse* 馬, showing its four legs and a tail drooping downwards. The simplified form retains the general shape of the *horse*.

Radical: 马 **'horse'**

Index # 69

Character component: 马

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **马** **mǎ** horse
   2002 年　是 马 年。
   Èrlínglíng'èrnián shì mǎ nián.
   2002 is the Year of the Horse.

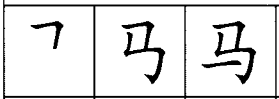
2. **马路** **mǎlù** road
   过 马路 要 小心 车辆。
   Guò mǎlù yào xiǎoxīn chēliàng.
   Be careful of vehicles when crossing the road.

3. **马虎** **mǎhu** careless
   他 这 个 人 做事 比较 马虎。
   Tā zhè ge rén zuòshì bǐjiào mǎhu.
   He's a rather careless fellow.

4. **马上** **mǎshàng** at once
   你 马上 就 走 吗?
   Nǐ mǎshàng jiù zǒu ma?
   Are you leaving right away?

5. **马拉松** **Mǎlāsōng** marathon
   去年 我 参加了 马拉松 赛跑。
   Qùnián wǒ cānjiāle Mǎlāsōng sàipǎo.
   Last year I took part in the marathon race.

The last stroke ends in a straight line. **3 strokes**



194

路

lù road

The character combines *foot* 足 and *each* 各 to suggest the idea that each is going on his or her own way or *road.*

Radical: 足 **'foot'**

Index # 164

Character components: 足 + 各

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **路 lù** route
   312路 公共汽车 去 大学。
   Sānyāo'èrlù gōnggòngqìchē qù dàxué.
   Route 312 goes to the University.

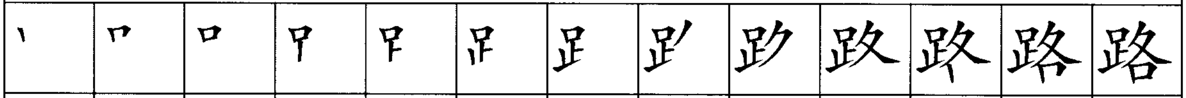
2. **路标 lùbiāo** road sign
   前面 有 路标。
   Qiánmiàn yǒu lùbiāo.
   There are road signs ahead.

3. **路上 lùshang** en route
   路上 不要 耽搁。
   Lùshang bùyào dān'ge.
   Don't waste any time on the way.

4. **路口 lùkǒu** intersection
   在 路口 左 拐弯。
   Zài lùkǒu zuǒ guǎiwān.
   Turn left at the intersection.

5. **路线 lùxiàn** route, itinerary
   请 你 说说 旅行 路线。
   Qǐng nǐ shuōshuo lǚxíng lùxiàn.
   Please tell me about the itinerary of the tour.

The seventh stroke slants upwards slightly. **13 strokes**



195

能 **nēng** possible

The character represents the pictograph of an animal with strong muscles. The sense of *capability* or *power* was derived from its features.

Radical: 厶 **'private'**

Index # 23

Character components: 厶 + 月 + 匕 + 匕

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **能** **nēng** be capable of
   我 能 用 左手 写字。
   Wǒ nēng yòng zuǒshǒu xiězì.
   I can write with my left hand.

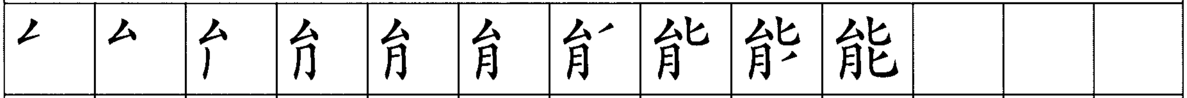
2. **能够** **nénggòu** be capable of
   她 能够 说 三 种 外国语。
   Tā nénggòu shuō sān zhǒng wàiguóyǔ.
   She can speak three foreign languages.

3. **能干** **nénggàn** capable
   她 是 个 很 能干 的 人。
   Tā shì ge hěn nénggàn de rén.
   She's a very capable person.

4. **能力** **nénglì** ability
   她的 分析 能力 很 强。
   Tāde fēnxi nénglì hěn qiáng.
   She has strong analytical skills.

5. **能源** **néngyuán** energy
   世界 正在 面临 能源 危机。
   Shìjiè zhèngzài miànlín néngyuán wēijī.
   The world is facing an energy crisis.

The seventh and ninth strokes sweep to the left. **10 strokes**



196

用 **yòng** use

The character represents a fence, which is something useful to have. Thus, the character came to mean *useful.*

Radical: 用 **'use'**

Index # 128

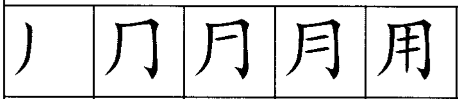
Character component: 用

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **用** **yòng** use
   你 会 不 会 用 电脑?
   Nǐ huì bú huì yòng diànnǎo?
   Can you use a computer?
2. **用处** **yòngchù** use
   抱怨 有 什么 用处?
   Bàoyuàn yǒu shénme yòngchù?
   What's the use of complaining?
3. **用功** **yònggōng** hardworking
   学生 都 很 用功。
   Xuésheng dōu hěn yònggōng.
   The students are very hardworking.
4. **用力** **yònglì** exert oneself physically
   他 用力 把 门 推开。
   Tā yònglì bǎ mén tuīkāi.
   He gave the door a hard push to open it.
5. **用心** **yòngxīn** attentively
   学生 都 用心 听讲。
   Xuésheng dōu yòngxīn tīngjiǎng.
   The students listen attentively to the lecture.

The first stroke tapers off, the second stroke ends with a hook. **5 strokes**



197

左 **zuǒ** left

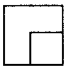
The character represents the idea of the left hand with which the carpenter uses his square. Thus it means *left.*

Radical: 工 **'work'**

Index # 39

Character components: 𠂇 + 工

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **左** **zuǒ** left
   在 前面 红绿灯 左 拐弯。
   Zài qiánmian hónglǜdēng zuǒ guǎiwān.
   Turn left at the lights.

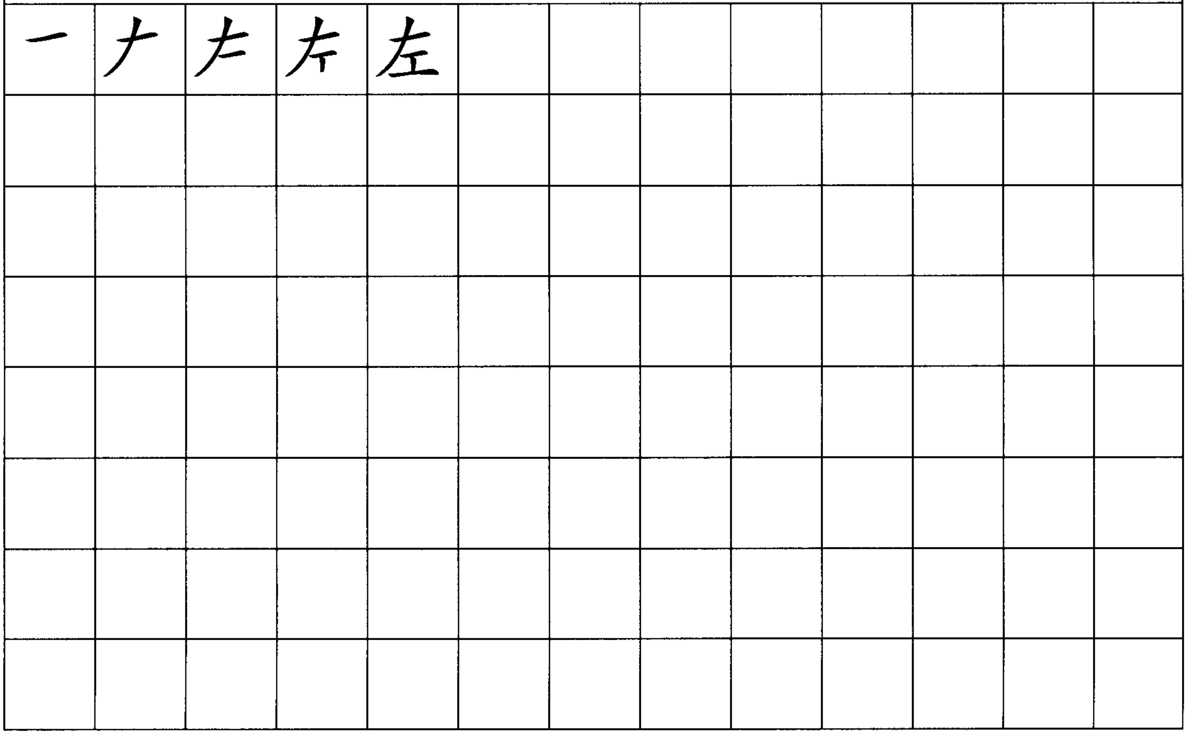
2. **左边** **zuǒbian** the left
   房子 左边 有 一颗大树。
   Fángzi zuǒbian yǒu yì kē dà shù.
   There's a big tree on the left side of the house.

3. **左手** **zuǒshǒu** left hand
   他 能 用 左手 写字。
   Tā néng yòng zuǒshǒu xiězì.
   He can write with his left hand.

4. **左撇子** **zuǒpiězi** left-handed person
   他 是 个 左撇子。
   Tā shì ge zuǒpiězi.
   He's left-handed.

5. **左右** **zuǒyòu** about (used after a numeral)
   他 说 八点 左右 到 这儿来。
   Tā shuō bādiǎn zuǒyòu dào zhèr lái.
   He said he'll be here around 8:00.

Don't mistake 左 for 在. Note the difference between 左 and 在. **5 strokes**



198

右 yǒu right

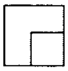
The character combines *hand* 𠂇 and *mouth* 口 to suggest the idea that in the past, people preferred to use their *right* hand for eating.

Radical: 口 **'mouth'**

Index # 50

Character components: 𠂇 + 口

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **右** **yǒu** right
   在 中国 车辆 靠 右 走。
   Zài Zhōngguō chēliàng kào yòu zǒu.
   In China, traffic keeps to the right.

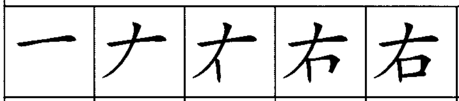
2. **右边** **yòubian** the right
   房子 右边 有 一棵 大树。
   Fángzi yòubian yǒu yì kē dà shù.
   There's a big tree on the right side of the house.

3. **右侧** **yòucè** right-hand side
   房子 右侧 种了 很多 花儿。
   Fángzi yòucè zhòngle hěnduō huār.
   There are flowers planted on the right-hand side of the house.

4. **右手** **yòushǒu** right hand
   大部分 人 用 右手 写字。
   Dàbùfēn rén yòng yòushǒu xiězì.
   Most people write with their right hand.

5. **左思右想** **zuǒsī-yòuxiǎng** think over from different angles (literally, think left and right)
   她躺 在 床上 左思右想，一夜 也 没 睡好。
   Tā tǎng zài chuángshang zuǒsī-yòuxiǎng, yí yè yě méi shuìhǎo.
   She lay awake all night, thinking about it over and over again.

Note the difference between 右 and 石. **5 strokes**



199

手 **shǒu** hand

The character is derived from the shape of a *hand* with its five fingers extended.

Radical: 手 **'whole hand'** **Index # 96**

Character component: 手 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **手** **shǒu** hand
   这 是 手织 的 毛衣。
   Zhè shì shǒuzhī de máoyī.
   This is a hand-knitted sweater.

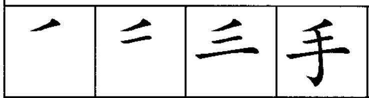
2. **手纸** **shǒuzhǐ** toilet paper
   厕所 没有 手纸 了。
   Cèsuǒ méiyǒu shǒuzhǐ le.
   There's no toilet paper in the lavatory.

3. **手气** **shǒuqì** luck at gambling
   我 今晚 打牌 的 手气 好得 出奇。
   Wǒ jīnwǎn dǎpāi de shǒuqì hǎode chūqí.
   I've had a lot of luck at cards/mahjong tonight.

4. **手艺** **shǒuyì** craftsmanship
   那 个 裁缝 的 手艺 很 好。
   Nà ge cáifeng de shǒuyì hěn hǎo.
   That tailor is very skilful.

5. **手续** **shǒuxù** formalities
   请 过来 这边 办 入境 手续。
   Qǐng guòlai zhèbian bàn rùjìng shǒuxù.
   Please come over here to go through the entry formalities.

The last stroke ends with a hook. **4 strokes**



200

只 zhǐ only

Full form

衹

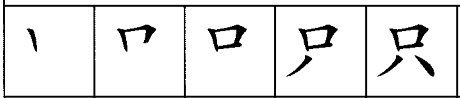
The full form combines *ceremony* 衤 and the phonetic 氏 to suggest the idea of *only.* The simplified form uses 只, but is pronounced in the 3rd tone. See also *zhī* in character #90.

Radical: 口 **'mouth'** **Index # 50**
or 八 **'eight'** **Index # 17**
Character components: 口 + 八 **Character configuration:** ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **只 zhǐ** only
   我 只 想 问 一个 问题。
   Wǒ zhǐ xiǎng wèn yí ge wèntí.
   I only want to ask a question.
2. **只顾 zhǐgù** just think of
   你 别 只顾自己。
   Nǐ bié zhǐgù zìjǐ.
   Don't just think of yourself.
3. **只是 zhǐshì** merely
   我 说 这 个 只是 开 个 玩笑 罢了。
   Wǒ shuō zhè ge zhǐshì kāi ge wǎnxiào ba le.
   I said it merely as a joke.
4. **只要 ... 就 zhǐyào ... jiù** if only
   只要 虚心，就 会进步。
   Zhǐyào xūxīn, jiù huì jìnbù.
   If you are modest, you'll get on.
5. **只有 zhǐyǒu** be forced to
   如果 下 大雨，比赛 只有 延期。
   Rúguǒ xià dàyǔ, bǐsài zhǐyǒu yánqī.
   If it rains hard, we have to put off the match.

The last stroke ends firmly. **5 strokes**



Quiz 20 (191–200)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

能	过	右	手
过	左	手	里
近	用	进	马
远	外	面	路

	Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
(i)	右	手		yòushǒu	right hand
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Xuéxiào lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?									
(ii)	Hěn jìn, guòle mǎlù jiù shì.									
(iii)	Nǐ néng yòng zuǒshǒu xiězì ma?									
(iv)	Bù néng, wǒ zhǐ néng yòng yòushǒu.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)		(ii)	
附近	capable	用 chù	formalities
近 lāi	nearby	用 xīn	craftsmanship
外面	outside	左边	the left
外国人	intersection	右 cè	toilet paper
马 hu	foreigner	手 zhǐ	right side
马上	immediately	手 yì	merely
路口	careless	手 xù	use
能 gàn	recently	只是	attentively

CHARACTER BUILDING 4 (151–200)

A. Memorize the following radicals and their English names. As a review exercise, write the pinyin and meaning of each example.

1. [一] ‘horizontal stroke’
再 (________) ______________ ; 万 (________) ______________ .
面 (________) ______________ .

2. [丿] ‘downward-left stroke’
千 (________) ______________ ; 后 (________) ______________ ;

3. [𠃌] ‘horizontal-bend-hook’
习 (________) ______________ ; 书 (________) ______________ ;

4. [亠] ‘top of 六’
离 (________) ______________ ; 就 (________) ______________ .

5. [讠] ‘word’
读 (________) ______________ ; 词 (________) ______________ ;

6. [二] ‘two’
二 (________) ______________ ; 元 (________) ______________ ;

7. [十] ‘ten’
直 (________) ______________ ; 卖 (________) ______________ ;

8. [八] ‘eight’
典 (________) ______________ ; 前 (________) ______________ ;
公 (________) ______________ .

9. [厶] ‘private’
能 (________) ______________ ; 去 (________) ______________ ;

10. [又] ‘again’
对 (________) ______________ ; 友 (________) ______________ ;

11. [力] ‘strength’
助 (________) ______________ ; 男 (________) ______________ ;

12. [宀] ‘roof’
它 (________) ______________ ; 字 (________) ______________ .

13. [辶] ‘movement’
远 (________) ______________ ; 过 (________) ______________ ;
边 (________) ______________ ; 近 (________) ______________ ;

14. [工] ‘work’
工 (________) ______________ ; 左 (________) ______________ ;

15. [大] ‘big’
太 (________) ______________ ; 天 (________) ______________ ;

16. [口] 'mouth'
台 (________) ______________; 右 (________) ______________.

17. [囗] 'four-sided frame'
园 (________) ______________; 国 (________) ______________.

18. [巾] 'napkin'
帮 (________) ______________; 师 (________) ______________;

19. [彳] 'double-person'
往 (________) ______________; 街 (________) ______________.

20. [木] 'wood'
本 (________) ______________; 校 (________) ______________.

21. [月] 'moon/flesh'
脑 (________) ______________; 期 (________) ______________;

22. [走] 'walk'
走 (________) ______________; 起 (________) ______________.

23. [足] 'foot'
路 (________) ______________; 跑 (________) ______________.

B. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters classified under the following radicals.

1. [卜] 'divination' 外 (________) ______________
2. [阝] 'left ear-lobe' 院 (________) ______________
3. [夂] 'top of 冬' 条 (________) ______________
4. [纟] 'silk' 练 (________) ______________
5. [马] 'horse' 马 (________) ______________
6. [方] 'direction' 旁 (________) ______________
7. [手] 'hand' 手 (________) ______________
8. [用] 'use' 用 (________) ______________
9. [雨] 'rain' 雨 (________) ______________

C. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters which share the following components. (Note that these components are not necessarily used as radicals.)

1. [卖] 卖 (________) ______________; 读 (________) ______________;
2. [寸] 对 (________) ______________; 过 (________) ______________.
3. [力] 边 (________) ______________; 助 (________) ______________.
4. [月] 脑 (________) ______________; 明 (________) ______________;
5. [巴] 吧 (________) ______________; 爸 (________) ______________.
6. [口] 右 (________) ______________; 名 (________) ______________.

REVIEW 4 (151–200)

The following are words and phrases classified under parts of speech. Write the pinyin and meaning of each example.

Pronouns
它 (________) ____________; 它们 (________) ____________;

Nouns
脑 (________) ____________; 电脑 (________) ____________;
零钱 (________) ____________; 读本 (________) ____________;
练习本 (________) ____________; 书 (________) ____________;
书店 (________) ____________; 词 (________) ____________;
生词 (________) ____________; 词典 (________) ____________;
帮手 (________) ____________; 助手 (________) ____________;
面子 (________) ____________; 医院 (________) ____________;
电影院 (________) ____________; 学校 (________) ____________;
校园 (________) ____________; 母校 (________) ____________;
公里 (________) ____________; 公园 (________) ____________;
远近 (________) ____________; 面条 (________) ____________;
街 (________) ____________; 见识 (________) ____________;
外国人 (________) ____________; 外人 (________) ____________;
路 (________) ____________; 马路 (________) ____________;
路口 (________) ____________; 手 (________) ____________.

Verbs
卖 (________) ____________; 读 (________) ____________;
读书 (________) ____________; 练 (________) ____________;
练习 (________) ____________; 学习 (________) ____________;
帮 (________) ____________; 帮助 (________) ____________;
帮忙 (________) ____________; 住院 (________) ____________;
走 (________) ____________; 过 (________) ____________;
上街 (________) ____________; 见 (________) ____________;
见面 (________) ____________; 用 (________) ____________.

Auxiliary verbs
能 (________) ____________.

Numbers
零 (________) ____________; 千 (________) ____________;
万 (________) ____________; 百万 (________) ____________;
一千万 (________) ____________.

Classifiers
台 (________) ____________; 元 (________) ____________;
件 (________) ____________; 条 (________) ____________.

Adjectives 远 (________) ____________; 直 (________) ____________;
近 (________) ____________; 对 (________) ____________;
过时 (________) ____________.

Location words 前 (________) ____________; 后 (________) ____________;
前面 (________) ____________; 后面 (________) ____________;
前边 (________) ____________; 两旁 (________) ____________;
旁边 (________) ____________; 上边 (________) ____________;
外边 (________) ____________; 对面 (________) ____________;
外面 (________) ____________; 路上 (________) ____________;
左 (________) ____________; 左边 (________) ____________;
右 (________) ____________; 右边 (________) ____________;

Time words (Adverbs) 前天 (________) ____________; 后天 (________) ____________;
以后 (________) ____________.

Adverbs 千万 (________) ____________; 就 (________) ____________;
一直 (________) ____________; 直到 (________) ____________;
往往 (________) ____________; 再 (________) ____________;
再三 (________) ____________; 马上 (________) ____________;
只 (________) ____________; 只是 (________) ____________.

Conjunction 不过 (________) ____________.

Prepositions 离 (________) ____________.

Particles 吧 (________) ____________.

WORD/SENTENCE PUZZLE 4

Find and CIRCLE words, phrases or sentences hidden in the puzzle. They can be found horizontally from left to right or vertically. The lines across and down are indicated by numbers. Write down the meaning next to the pinyin. The first one is done for you.

ACROSS (left to right)

1. Tā bùhuì yòng diànnǎo. *She can't use a computer*
4. Wǒ jiā qiánmiàn yǒu yí ge dà shāngdiàn. ____________
7. (i) zuǒbian ____________
7. (ii) Nǐ jīntiān qù xuéxiào ma? ____________
8. zhùshǒu ____________
9. wàimian ____________
10. zìdiǎn ____________

12. Diànyǐngyuàn lí zhèr yuǎn bù yuǎn? ____________________

14. Chī miàntiáo. ____________________

DOWN

2. Wǒ néng yòng zuǒshǒu xiězì. ____________________
4. Yīyuàn pángbiān. ____________________
5. Qǐng nǐ bāngmáng. ____________________
6. Tā jiālǐ yǒu gǒu. ____________________
7. Míngtiān wǒmen zài nǎr jiànmiàn? ____________________
9. Duìbuqǐ! ____________________
10. Shāngdiàn zài xiàoyuán wàibian. ____________________
11. shūdiàn ____________________

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
1	能	过	右	只	吧	她	不	会	用	电	脑
2	进	左	直	再	习	家	手	里	本	词	它
3	零	步	元	直	就	里	走	近	过	马	书
4	街	我	家	前	面	有	一	个	大	商	店
5	往	能	街	离	太	狗	钱	路	对	店	面
6	千	用	一	远	请	猫	明	毛	钟	在	现
7	卖	左	边	万	你	今	天	去	学	校	吗
8	助	手	走	见	帮	了	我	半	点	园	吃
9	工	写	公	作	忙	早	们	上	晚	外	面
10	台	字	典	生	时	下	在	候	午	边	跑
11	昨	月	子	医	饭	床	哪	人	对	日	空
12	星	电	影	院	离	这	儿	远	不	远	女
13	东	每	亲	旁	早	看	见	做	起	母	明
14	买	西	城	边	友	吃	面	条	父	期	进

201

住 **zhù** live

The character combines *person* 亻 and the phonetic 主 to suggest the idea of *to live* or *stay.*

Radical: 亻 **'upright person'** **Index # 19**

Character components: 亻 + 主 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **住** **zhù** to live, to stay
   你 住 在哪儿?
   Nǐ zhù zài nǎr?
   Where do you live?

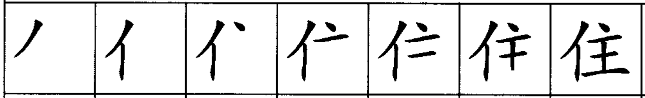
2. **住处** **zhùchù** lodging
   你 找到 住处 没有?
   Nǐ zhǎodào zhùchù méiyǒu?
   Have you found accommodation?

3. **住户** **zhùhù** household
   这儿 有 姓 陈 的 住户 吗?
   Zhèr yǒu xìng Chén de zhùhù ma?
   Is there anyone named Chen living here?

4. **住院** **zhùyuàn** be hospitalized
   他 病了, 住了 两 天 院。
   Tā bìngle, zhùle liǎng tiān yuàn.
   He was sick and was hospitalized for two days.

5. **住宅** **zhùzhái** one's residence
   这 是 我 住宅 的 电话。
   Zhè shì wǒ zhùzhái de diànhuà.
   This is my home phone number.

The left and right components don't meet. **7 strokes**



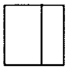
202

到 **dào** arrive

The character combines *reaching* 至 and 刂 to suggest the idea of *reaching like a cut.* Thus it means *to arrive.*

Radical: 刂 **'upright knife'** **Index # 15**

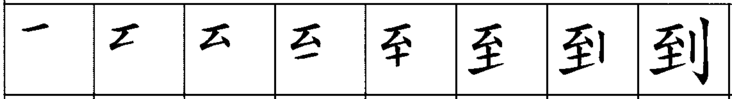
Character components: 至 + 刂 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **到** **dào** arrive
   火车 到站 了。
   Huǒchē dàozhàn le.
   The train has arrived at the station.
2. **到处** **dàochù** everywhere, anywhere
   烟头 不要 到处 乱 扔。
   Yāntóu bùyào dàochù luàn rēng.
   Don't drop cigarette butts over the place.
3. **到底** **dàodǐ** finally
   你 到底是 什么 意思?
   Nǐ dàodǐ shì shénme yìsi?
   What on earth do you mean?
4. **到家** **dàojiā** be excellent
   这 几个 汉字 写得 很 到家。
   Zhè jǐ ge Hànzì xiěde hěn dàojiā.
   These Chinese characters are remarkably well written.
5. **到期** **dàoqī** become due
   这 本 书 已经 到期了。
   Zhè běn shū yǐjīng dàoqī le.
   This book is due for return.

The sixth stroke goes upwards. **8 strokes**



203

从 cōng from

Full form

從

The full form represents the idea of *following another person*, and means *follow* or *obey*. The simplified form retains the same idea using just two persons.

Radical: 人 **'person'**

Index # 18

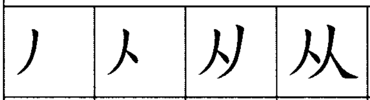
Character components: 人 + 人

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **从 cōng** from
   你 从 哪儿来?
   Nǐ cōng nǎr lái?
   Where do you come from?
2. **从 ... 到 cōng ... dāo** from ... to
   她 从 早 到 晚 都 想着 跳舞。
   Tā cōng zǎo dāo wǎn dōu xiǎngzhe tiāowǔ.
   She thinks of dancing day and night.
3. **从来 cōnglāi** all along
   我 从来 没有 见过 他。
   Wǒ cōnglāi mēiyǒu jiānguo tā.
   I've never seen him before.
4. **从前 cōngqiān** formerly
   这 是 从前, 现在 不 一样 了。
   Zhē shì cōngqiān, xiānzāi bù yīyāng le.
   That was in the past, now it is different.
5. **从小 cōngxiǎo** from childhood
   我 从小 就 喜欢 运动。
   Wǒ cōngxiǎo jiū xǐhuan yūndōng.
   I love sports ever since I was a child.

The last stroke tapers off. **4 strokes**



204

坐 **zuò** sit

The character depicts the figure of *two people* 人 + 人 sitting on the *ground* 土 . This gives rise to the idea of *to sit.*

Radical: 土 **'earth'**

Index # 40

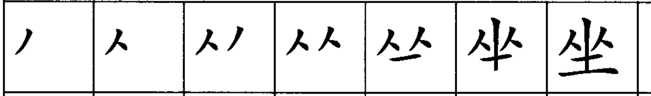
Character components: 人 + 人 + 土

Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **坐 zuò** sit
   请 坐。
   Qǐng zuò.
   Please sit down.
2. **坐火车 zuò huǒchē** travel by train
   我 坐 火车 去 上海。
   Wǒ zuò huǒchē qù Shànghǎi.
   I'm traveling to Shanghai by train.
3. **坐位 zuòwèi** seat
   请 回到 你的 坐位 上 去。
   Qǐng huídào nǐde zuòwèi shàng qù.
   Please return to your seat.
4. **坐不下 zuòbuxià** have not enough seats for
   这 车 坐不下 这么 多 人。
   Zhè chē zuòbuxià zhème duō rén.
   This car can't seat so many people.
5. **坐班 zuòbān** keep office hours
   我的 孩子 还 小，不适合 干 坐班 的 工作。
   Wǒde háizi hái xiǎo, bù shìhé gàn zuòbān de gōngzuò.
   My children are still small, it's not convenient for me to work in an office.

The vertical stroke separates the two 人 components. **7 strokes**



205

地 **dì** earth

The character combines *soil* 土 and the pictograph of a scorpion 也 to give the meaning of *earth.*

Radical: 土 **'earth'**

Index # 40

Character components: 土 **+** 也

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **地 dì** fields
   农民 在地里干活儿。
   Nóngmín zài dìli gànhuór.
   The peasants are working in the fields.

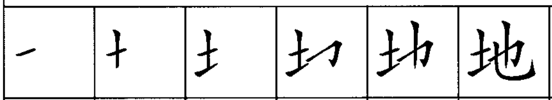
2. **地方 dìfang** place, space
   这 个 地方 不错。
   Zhè ge dìfang búcuò.
   This is quite a nice place.

3. **地图 dìtú** map
   你 有 没有 中国 地图?
   Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu Zhōngguó dìtú?
   Do you have a map of China?

4. **地下 dìxià** on the ground
   你的 毛衣 掉 在 地下了。
   Nǐde máoyī diào zài dìxià le.
   Your sweater fell on the ground.

5. **地道 dìdao** pure, typical
   他的 广州话 说得 真 地道。
   Tāde Guǎngzhōuhuà shuōde zhēn dìdao.
   He speaks Cantonese like a native.

The last stroke ends with a hook. **6 strokes**



206

铁 **tiě** iron

Full form

鐵

The simplified form combines *metal* 钅 and the phonetic 失 to suggest the idea of *iron*. The use of this phonetic in simplification is arbitrary, probably for ease of writing.

Radical: 钅 **'metal'**

Index # 122

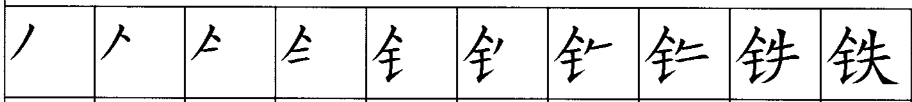
Character components: 钅 **+** 失

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **铁 tiě** iron
   这 是 铁 的 事实。
   Zhè shì tiě de shìshí.
   This is ironclad evidence.
2. **钢铁 gāngtiě** steel
   他 在 钢铁厂 工作。
   Tā zài gāngtiěchǎng gōngzuò.
   He works in a steelworks.
3. **铁路 tiělù** railway
   火车 在 铁路 上 走。
   Huǒchē zài tiělù shang zǒu.
   Trains travel on railway tracks.
4. **地铁 dìtiě** subway
   中国 很多 大 城市 都 有 地铁。
   Zhōngguó hěnduō dà chéngshì dōu yǒu dìtiě.
   Many big cities in China have subways.
5. **铁饭碗 tiěfànwǎn** iron rice-bowl
   现在 中国 没有 铁饭碗 了。
   Xiànzài Zhōngguó méiyǒu tiěfànwǎn le.
   There are no secure jobs in China now.

The fifth stroke is a vertical lift. **10 strokes**



207

车 **chē** vehicle

Full form

車

The full form depicts the two wheels and carriage of a *vehicle* viewed from above.

Radical: 车 **'vehicle'**

Index # 84

Character component: 车

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **车** **chē** vehicle
   路上 有 很多 车。
   Lùshang yǒu hěnduō chē.
   There are many vehicles on the road.

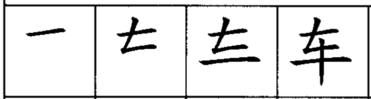
2. **车费** **chēfèi** (passenger's) fare
   到 颐和园 的 车费 多少?
   Dào Yíhéyuán de chēfèi duōshao?
   How much is the fare to the Summer Palace?

3. **火车** **huǒchē** train
   中国 的 火车 比较 慢。
   Zhōngguó de huǒchē bǐjiào màn.
   Trains in China are rather slow.

4. **公共气车** **gōnggòngqìchē** bus
   中国 的 公共汽车 很挤。
   Zhōngguó de gōnggòngqìchē hěn jǐ.
   Buses in China are packed.

5. **车祸** **chēhuò** traffic accident
   前面 好像 发生了 车祸。
   Qiánmian hǎoxiàng fāshēngle chēhuò.
   It seems that there's an accident ahead.

The last stroke doesn't meet the top horizontal stroke. **4 strokes**



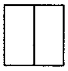
208

北 **běi** north

The character depicts two people standing back to back, a reference to turning one's back to the direction of the *north.*

Radical: 丨 **'vertical stroke'** **Index # 3**

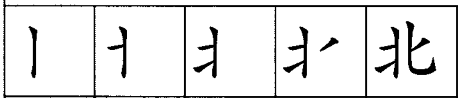
Character components: 丬 **+** 匕 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **北 běi** north
   你 从 这儿 往 北 走。
   Nǐ cóng zhèr wǎng běi zǒu.
   Go north from here.
2. **北方 běifāng** northern
   这 个 饭馆儿 做 的 是 北方菜。
   Zhè ge fànguǎnr zuò de shì běifāngcài.
   This restaurant serves northern Chinese cuisine.
3. **东北 dōngběi** north-east
   大连市 在 中国 东北。
   Dàliánshì zài Zhōngguó dōngběi.
   The city of Dalian is in north-east China.
4. **北京 Běijīng** Beijing
   2008年 奥运会 在 北京 举办。
   Èrlínglíngbā'nián Àoyùnhuì zài Běijīng jǔbàn.
   The 2008 Olympic Games will be hosted by Beijing.
5. **北美洲 Běiměizhōu** North America
   北美洲 包括 美国 和 加拿大。
   Běiměizhōu bāokuò Měiguó hé Jiā'nádà.
   North America includes the US and Canada.

The last stroke is a vertical-bend hook. **5 strokes**



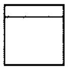
209

京 **jīng** capital

The character means *man-made high hill* to accommodate important people. It came to mean a *palace* or *capital.*

Radical: 亠 **'top of** 六 **'** **Index # 6**

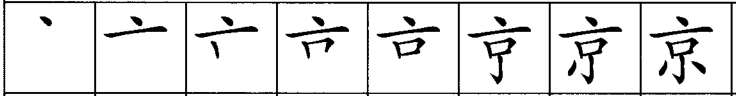
Character components: 亠 **+** 口 **+** 小 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **京** **jīng** capital
   从 外地 进 京 的 车辆 很多。
   Cóng wàidì jìn jīng de chēliàng hěnduō.
   Lots of vehicles come to the capital from other parts of the country.
2. **北京** **Běijīng** Beijing
   2008 年 奥运会 在 北京 举办。
   Èrlínglíngbā nián Àoyùnhuì zài Běijīng jǔbàn.
   The 2008 Olympic Games will be hosted by Beijing.
3. **南京** **Nánjīng** Nanjing (Nanking)
   南京 也 有 很多 名胜 古迹。
   Nánjīng yě yǒu hěnduō míngshèng gǔjì.
   There are also many scenic spots and historical sites in Nanjing.
4. **东京** **Dōngjīng** Tokyo
   东京 是 日本 的 首都。
   Dōngjīng shì Rìběn de shǒudū.
   Tokyo is the capital of Japan.
5. **京剧** **Jīngjù** Beijing opera
   我 没 看过 京剧。
   Wǒ méi kànguo Jīngjù.
   I've never watched Beijing opera.

The last stroke ends firmly. **8 strokes**



210

南 **nān** south

The character can be thought of as *ten* 十 houses with plants growing inside 冂, a reference to villages in the *south*.

Radical: 十 **'ten'**

Index # 11

Character components: 十 **+** ⿵冂𢆉

Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **南 nān** south
   你 从 这儿 往 南 走。
   Nǐ cóng zhèr wǎng nán zǒu.
   Go south from here.

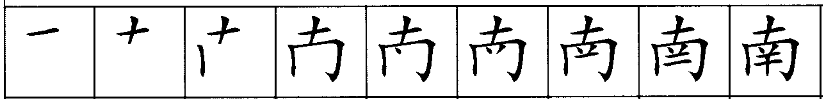
2. **南边 nánbian** south side
   学校 南边 有 一个 公园。
   Xuéxiào nánbian yǒu yí ge gōngyuán.
   There is a park on the southern side of the school.

3. **南部 nánbù** southern part
   广州 在 广东 省 南部。
   Guǎngzhōu zài Guǎngdōng shěng nánbù.
   Canton is in the south of Guangdong province.

4. **南方 nánfāng** south of a country
   他 说话 带 南方 腔调。
   Tā shuōhuà dài nánfāng qiāngdiào.
   He speaks with a southern accent.

5. **南半球 nánbànqiú** Southern Hemisphere
   澳大利亚在 南半球。
   Àodàlìyà zài Nánbànqiú.
   Australia is in the Southern Hemisphere.

Note the difference between 𢆉 and 半 in the bottom half of the character. **9 strokes**



Quiz 21 (201–210)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

怎	么	走	里
中	到	下	车
国	坐	地	铁
城	住	从	上

	Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
(i)	怎	么	走	zěnme zǒu	How do you get to ...?
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Wǒ zhù zài chénglǐ.									
(ii)	Dào nǐ jiā zěnme zǒu?									
(iii)	Nǐ cóng zhèr zuò dìtiě.									
(iv)	Dào Zhōngguóchéng xiàchē jiù shì.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

从前
地 fang
地 tú
地下
铁路
地铁
huǒ 车
公 gōngqì 车

railroad
train
formerly
place
subway
bus
map
on the ground

(ii)

北京
北 fāng
到期
京 jù
南 bù
住 zhái
坐 wèi
北 Měizhōu

the north
seat
southern part
Beijing
expire
Beijing opera
North America
residence

211

来 lāi come

Full form

來

The character was derived from a pictograph of a barley plant. Barley was considered a gift from heaven. Thus, it came to mean *to come from* or *to come here.*

Radical: 一 **'horizontal stroke'**

Index # 2

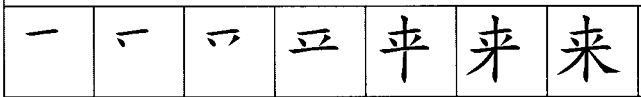
Character components: 一 **+** 米

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **来 lāi** come
   来 客人了。
   Lāi kèren le.
   The guests are here.
2. **来不及 láibují** there's not enough time
   今天 我们 来不及 去 看 他了。
   Jīntiān wǒmen láibují qù kàn tā le.
   There's no time for us to go and see him today.
3. **来回 láihuí** a return journey
   来回 有 多 远?
   Láihuí yǒu duō yuǎn?
   How far is it there and back?
4. **来往 láiwǎng** come and go
   街上 来往 的 人 很多。
   Jiēshang láiwǎng de rén hěnduō.
   There are many people coming and going on the streets.
5. **从来 cónglái** all along, never
   我 从来 没有 见过 他。
   Wǒ cónglái méiyǒu jiànguo tā.
   I've never seen him before.

The bottom horizontal stroke is longer than the one above. **7 strokes**



212

久 jiǔ a long time

The character represents the figure of a person supported from the rear for a long time. It means *after a long time.*

Radical: 丿 **'downward-left stroke'** **Index # 4**

Character component: 久 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **久 jiǔ** for a long time
   我们 久不 见面 了。
   Wǒmen jiǔ bú jiànmiàn le.
   We haven't seen each other for a long time.
2. **多久 duō jiǔ** how long?
   你来了 多 久?
   Nǐ láile duō jiǔ?
   How long have you been here?
3. **久等 jiǔděng** wait for a long time
   对不起 让 你 久等 了。
   Duìbuqǐ, ràng nǐ jiǔděng le.
   Sorry to have kept you waiting.
4. **久留 jiǔliú** stay a long time
   我 有 要事 在 身, 不能 久留。
   Wǒ yǒu yàoshì zài shēn, bùnéng jiǔliú.
   I can't stay long because I have some important business to attend to.
5. **不久 bùjiǔ** not very long time
   回家 不久 就 下 大雨了。
   Huíjiā bùjiǔ jiù xià dàyǔ le.
   Not long after I came home, it rained.

The last stroke tapers off. **3 strokes**

丿	ク	久										

213

已 **yǐ** already

This character *already* 已 looks similar to *self* 己 . The difference is it has a half-open gap on the top-left corner of the character while the latter is completely open.

Radical: 己 **'self'** **Index # 62**

Character component: 已 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

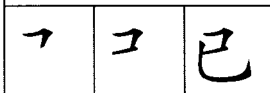
1. **已** **yǐ** already
   天 已 黑了。
   Tiān yǐ hēi le.
   It's already dark.

2. **已经** **yǐjīng** already
   问题 已经 解决 了。
   Wèntí yǐjīng jiějué le.
   The problem has already been solved.

3. **已往** **yǐwǎng** in the past
   已往 的 事 不要 再提了。
   Yǐwǎng de shì búyào zài tí le.
   Don't mention the past.

4. **而已** **éryǐ** that is all
   我 只 是个 学生 而已。
   Wǒ zhǐ shì ge xuésheng éryǐ.
   I'm just a student, that is all.

已 and 己 are easily confused. **3 strokes**



214

经 **jīng** classics; pass through

Full form

經

The full form combines *silk* 糸 and 巠 to suggest *a thing that runs straight* or a *good example.* It means *classics.*

Radical: 纟 **'silk'**

Index # 68

Character components: 纟 **+** 조

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **经** **jīng** pass through
   他经 新加坡 回 广州。
   Tā jīng Xīnjiāpō huí Guǎngzhōu.
   He returns to Guangzhou via Singapore.

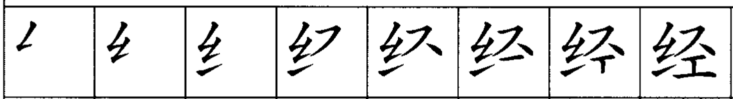
2. **经常** **jīngcháng** frequently
   他 经常 上 图书馆 去。
   Tā jīngcháng shàng túshūguǎn qù.
   He goes to the library regularly.

3. **经过** **jīngguò** pass
   这 路 车 经过 动物园 吗?
   Zhè lù chē jīngguò dòngwùyuán ma?
   Does this bus go past the zoo?

4. **经理** **jīnglǐ** manager
   她 在 一家 饭馆 当 经理。
   Tā zài yì jiā fànguǎn dāng jīnglǐ.
   She works as a manager in a restaurant.

5. **经验** **jīngyàn** experience
   他的 经验 很 丰富。
   Tāde jīngyàn hěn fēngfù.
   He's got a lot of experience.

The final vertical stroke does not go through the upper horizontal stroke. **8 strokes**



215

长 **cháng/zhǎng** long; grow

Full form

長

The full form depicted a long-haired old man with a walking stick, referring to a *long passage of time*. Another meaning is *grow*, pronounced *zhǎng*.

Radical: 丿 **'downward-left stroke'**

Index # 4

Character component: 长

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **长 cháng** long
   这 条 河 很 长。
   Zhè tiáo hé hěn cháng.
   This river is quite long.

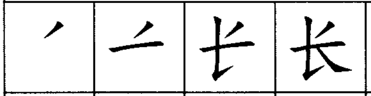
2. **长江 Chángjiāng** the Yangtze river (literally, long river)
   长江 是 世界 第三 长 河。
   Chángjiāng shì shìjiè dìsān cháng hé.
   The Yangtze is the third longest river in the world.

3. **长处 chángchù** strong points
   她 有 很多 长处。
   Tā yǒu hěnduō chángchù.
   She has many good qualities.

4. **长大 zhǎngdà** grow up
   他们的 孩子 长大 了。
   Tāmende háizi zhǎngdà le.
   Their children have grown up.

5. **长辈 zhǎngbèi** elder, senior
   对 长辈 要 有 礼貌。
   Duì zhǎngbèi yào yǒu lǐmào.
   Show respect for one's elders.

Write the downward-right stroke last. **4 strokes**



216

间 **jiān** space

Full form

間

The character combines *gate* 门 and *sun* 日 to indicate light shining through a space between the gates. It means *space.*

Radical: 门 **'door'**

Index # 37

Character components: 门 + 日

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **间 jiān** between, among
   朋友 之 间 不要 分得 太 清。
   Péngyou zhī jiān bùyào fēnde tài qīng.
   Among friends, there should not be clear-cut distinctions.

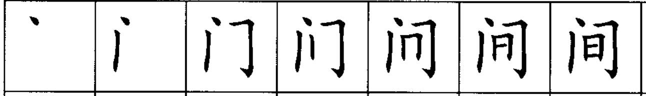
2. **时间 shíjiān** time
   现在 是 北京 时间 二十点 整。
   Xiànzài shì Běijīng shíjiān èrshídiǎn zhěng.
   The time now is 20 hours Beijing time.

3. **中间 zhōngjiān** middle
   他 是 我们 中间 最 年轻 的。
   Tā shì wǒmen zhōngjiān zuì niánqīng de.
   He's the youngest of us three.

4. **房间 fángjiān** room
   这 个 房间 又 大 又 亮。
   Zhè ge fángjiān yòu dà yòu liàng.
   This room is big and bright.

5. **夜间 yèjiān** at night
   很多 中国 城市 在 夜间 施工。
   Hěnduō Zhōngguó chéngshì zài yèjiān shīgōng.
   Many Chinese cities carry out construction work at night.

The initial dot stroke ends firmly to the right. **7 strokes**



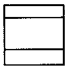
217

喜

xǐ happy

The upper part of 喜 represents a bowl filled with food. 口 of course means *mouth*. The idea of carrying food to the mouth means *rejoice*.

Radical: 士 **'scholar'** **Index # 41**
or 口 **'mouth'** **Index # 50**
Character components: 士 **+** 口 **+** 丷 **+** 口 **Character configuration:**



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **喜 xǐ** be happy
   笑在脸上，喜在心里。
   Xiāo zāi liǎnshang, xǐ zāi xīnli.
   With a smile on your face and joy in your heart.

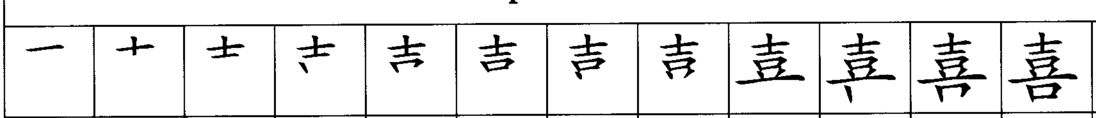
2. **喜爱 xǐ'ài** be fond of
   我喜爱户外活动。
   Wǒ xǐ'ài hùwāi huódòng.
   I'm keen on outdoor activities.

3. **喜欢 xǐhuan** be fond of
   我喜欢听中国音乐。
   Wǒ xǐhuan tīng Zhōngguó yīnyuè.
   I like Chinese music.

4. **欢喜 huānxǐ** joyful
   一家人欢欢喜喜地过春节。
   Yī jiā rén huānhuānxǐxǐde guō Chūnjiě.
   The whole family spent a joyful Chinese New Year.

5. **喜事 xǐshì** happy event
   你这么高兴，有什么喜事？
   Nǐ zhème gāoxìng, yǒu shénme xǐshì?
   You look so happy. What's the good news?

The short strokes in the middle do not protrude. **12 strokes**



218

欢 **huān** happy

Full form

歡

The full form combines *food* 雚 and *open mouth* 欠 to suggest facing food *happily* with the mouth open. It means *happy.*

Radical:	欠 **'owe'**	**Index # 104**
or	又 **'again'**	**Index # 24**
Character components:	又 + 欠	**Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **欢** **huān** joyous
   大家 欢天喜地 地 过 圣诞节。
   Dàjiā huāntiān-xǐdì de guò Shèngdànjié.
   Everyone was having a very happy Christmas.

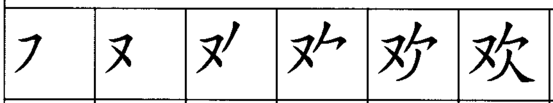
2. **欢喜** **huānxǐ** joyful
   一家 人 欢欢喜喜 地 过 春节。
   Yī jiā rén huānhuānxǐxǐ de guò Chūnjié.
   The whole family spent a joyful Chinese New Year.

3. **欢聚** **huānjù** happy reunion
   难得 有 机会 跟 老朋友 欢聚。
   Nánde yǒu jīhuì gēn lǎopéngyou huānjù.
   Old friends don't often get the chance to meet.

4. **欢乐** huānlè happy
   国庆 的 时候, 北京 一 片 欢乐 的
   Guóqìng de shíhou, Běijīng yí piàn huānlè de
   景象。
   jǐngxiàng.
   On National Day, Beijing is a scene of great joy.

5. **欢迎** **huānyíng** welcome
   欢迎 你 到 北京 来。
   Huānyíng nǐ dào Běijīng lái.
   Welcome to Beijing.

Note the difference between 久 and 欠. **6 strokes**



219

冷 **lěng** cold

The character combines *icy cold* 冫 and the phonetic 令 to give the sensation of *very cold.*

Radical: 冫 **'ice'**

Index # 7

Character components: 冫 **+** 令

Character configuration: ◫

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **冷** **lěng** cold
   今天 真 冷。
   Jīntiān zhēn lěng.
   It's really cold today.

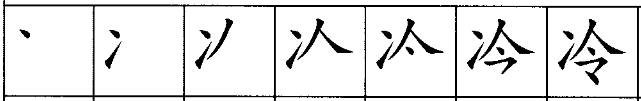
2. **冷静** **lěngjìng** calm (of people)
   请 你 冷静 一点儿。
   Qǐng nǐ lěngjìng yìdiǎnr.
   Please calm down.

3. **冷水** **lěngshuǐ** unboiled water
   喝 冷水 容易 得病。
   Hē lěngshuǐ róngyì débìng.
   If you drink unboiled water, you're likely to get sick.

4. **冷落** **lěngluō** treat coldly
   不要 冷落了 客人。
   Būyāo lěngluōle kēren.
   Don't leave the guest out in the cold.

5. **冷冰冰** **lěngbīngbīng** cold in manner
   他 对 人 冷冰冰 的。
   Tā duì rén lěngbīngbīng de.
   He has a cold manner.

The second dot lifts and has no bend. **7 strokes**



220

冬

dōng winter

The character was derived from a pictograph of two bags hanging from a rope with the two dots below representing ice, indicating that it was *cold.*

Radical: 夂 **'top of 冬'** **Index # 57**

Character components: 夂 **+** ⺀ **Character configuration:** ⿱

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **冬** **dōng** winter
   这 种 鸟 在哪里 过冬?
   Zhè zhǒng niǎo zài nǎli guòdōng?
   Where do these birds go in winter?

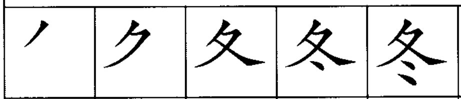
2. **冬天** **dōngtiān** winter
   上海 的 冬天 不 下雪。
   Shànghǎi de dōngtiān bū xiàxuě.
   It doesn't snow in Shanghai in winter.

3. **冬季** **dōngjì** winter
   上海 的 冬季 不 下雪。
   Shànghǎi de dōngjì bū xiàxuě.
   It doesn't snow in Shanghai in winter.

4. **冬菇** **dōnggū** dried mushrooms
   我 喜欢 吃 冬菇。
   Wǒ xǐhuan chī dōnggū.
   I like dried mushrooms.

5. **冬装** **dōngzhuāng** winter fashion
   今年 的 冬装 好看极了。
   Jīnnián de dōngzhuāng hǎokànjīle.
   This year's winter fashions are very pretty.

The last two dots end firmly. **5 strokes**



Quiz 22 (211–220)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and down the pinyin and meaning.

多	过	时	间
久	北	已	经
还	来	京	南
冬	喜	欢	长

	Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
(i)	多	久		duō jiǔ	how much time?
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Nǐ lǎi Běijīng duō jiǔ le?									
(ii)	Yǐjīng hěn cháng shǐjiān le.									
(iii)	Nǐ xǐhuan Běǰing ma?									
(iv)	Hǎi hǎo, dōngtiān lěng yìdiǎnr.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)		(ii)	
从来	grow up	时间	be fond of
来回	the Yangtze River	中间	happy
不久	all along	fāng 间	unboiled water
已经	pass through	喜欢	time
经常	a return journey	欢喜	winter
经过	not long	欢 yíng	room
长大	already	冷 shuǐ	middle
长 jiāng	often	冬天	welcome

221

海 **hǎi** sea

The character combines *water* 氵 and *every* 每 to suggest the idea that water always returns to the *sea.*

Radical: 氵 **'3 drops of water'** **Index # 32**

Character components: 氵 **+** 每 **Character configuration:** ◫

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **海 hǎi** sea
   台湾 四面 环海。
   Táiwān sìmiàn huánhǎi.
   Taiwan is surrounded by sea.

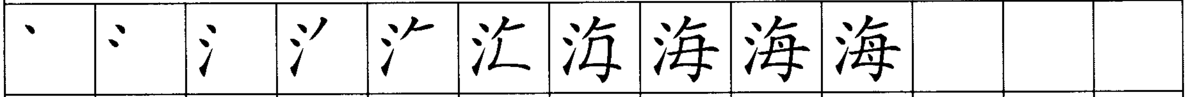
2. **海拔 hǎibá** above sea level
   这里的 山 比较 高， 平均 海拔
   Zhèlǐ de shān bǐjiào gāo, píngjūn hǎibá
   四千 米。
   sìqiān mǐ.
   The mountains here are quite high, averaging 4000 meters above sea level.

3. **海边 hǎibian** seaside
   我 常 去 海边 游泳。
   Wǒ cháng qù hǎibian yóuyǒng.
   I often go to the seaside to swim.

4. **海外 hǎiwài** overseas
   他 是 海外 华侨。
   Tā shì hǎiwài Huáqiáo.
   He is an overseas Chinese.

5. **上海 Shànghǎi** Shanghai
   她 是 上海人
   Tā shì Shànghǎirén.
   She's a native of Shanghai.

Write the horizontal stroke before the final two dots. **10 strokes**



222

夏 **xià** summer

The character was derived from a pictograph of a masked person dancing, perhaps in a *summer* festival.

Radical: 夂 **'top of 冬'**

Index # 57

Character components: 𦣻 + 夂

Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **夏 xià** summer
   这 种 树 冬 夏 常 青。
   Zhè zhǒng shù dōng xià cháng qīng.
   This type of trees is evergreen. (Literally, winter summer always green)

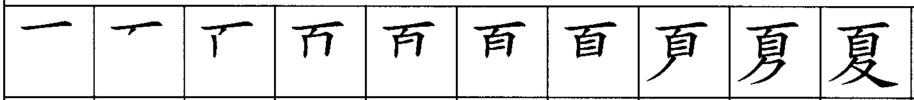
2. **夏天 xiàtiān** summer
   北京 的 夏天 比较 热。
   Běijīng de xiàtiān bǐjiào rè.
   Summer in Beijing is quite hot.

3. **夏令时 xiàlìngshí** daylight-saving
   明天 晚上 要 调 夏令时。
   Míngtiān wǎnshang yào tiáo xiàlìngshí.
   Adjust the clock for daylight-saving time tomorrow night.

4. **夏令营 xiàlìngyíng** summer camp
   这 个 暑假 我 参加了 夏令营。
   Zhè ge shǔjià wǒ cānjiāle xiàlìngyíng.
   This summer vacation I went to a summer camp.

5. **夏装 xiàzhuāng** summer fashion
   今年 的 夏装 很 好看。
   Jīnnián de xiàzhuāng hěn hǎokàn.
   The summer fashions this year are pretty.

Note the difference between 夂 and 又. **10 strokes**



223

热 **rè** hot

Full form

熱

The character combines *grasp* 执 and *fire* 灬 to suggest the sensation of heat. It means *hot.*

Radical: 灬 **‘4 dots of fire’**

Index # 71

Character components: 执 **+** 灬

Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **热** **rè** heat up
   请 把 汤 热一热。
   Qǐng bǎ tāng rèyirè.
   Please heat up the soup.

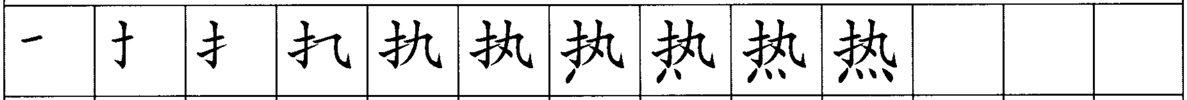
2. **热带** **rèdài** the tropics
   新加坡 地 处 热带。
   Xīnjiāpō dì chǔ rèdài.
   Singapore is situated in the tropics.

3. **热点** **rèdiǎn** hot spot
   那 是 个 旅游 热点。
   Nà shì ge lǚyóu rèdiǎn.
   That is a hot spot for tourists.

4. **热情** **rèqíng** enthusiasm
   那个 服务员 对 顾客 很 热情。
   Nà ge fúwùyuán duì gùkè hěn rèqíng.
   That waiter is friendly to the customers.

5. ... **热** **... rè** craze, fad
   卡拉OK 热 遍及 全 中国。
   Kǎlā’ōukēi-rè biànjí quán Zhōngguó.
   The karaoke craze has spread all over China.

The first dot goes to the left, the rest go to the right. **10 strokes**



224

较 jiào compare

Full form

較

The character combines *vehicle* 车 and *crossing* 交 possibly to suggest that careful *comparison* is necessary.

Radical: 车 **'vehicle'**

Index # 84

Character components: 车 + 交

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **较 jiào** relatively
   你的 汉语 有 较大 的 进步。
   Nǐde Hànyǔ yǒu jiàodà de jìnbù.
   You have made considerable progress in your Chinese.

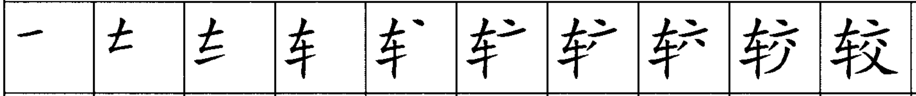
2. **比较 bǐjiào** comparatively
   我 最近 比较 忙。
   Wǒ zuìjìn bǐjiào máng.
   I've been rather busy recently.

3. **相较 xiāngjiào** compare
   相较 实力，我方 优于 对方。
   Xiānjiào shílì, wǒfāng yōuyú duìfāng.
   Using our strengths to compare, we are better than our opponent.

4. **较量 jiàoliàng** measure one's strength with
   你 还是 别 跟 这 个 小伙子 较量 了。
   Nǐ háishì bié gēn zhè ge xiǎohuǒzi jiàoliàng le.
   You'd be better off not to test your strength against this young guy.

5. **较为 jiàowéi** comparatively
   这 本 词典 较为 便宜。
   Zhè běn cídiǎn jiàowéi piányi.
   This dictionary is comparatively cheap.

The last stroke comes down from left to right. **10 strokes**



225

常

cháng common

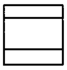
The character combines *jin* 巾 and the phonetic 龸 to mean *continue for a long time* or *often.*

Radical: 小 **'small'** **Index # 49**

or 巾 **'napkin'** **Index # 52**

Character components: 龸 **+** 口 **+** 巾

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **常** **cháng** constant

   这 种 树 冬 夏 常 青。

   Zhè zhǒng shù dōng xià cháng qīng.

   This type of trees is evergreen.

2. **常常** **chángcháng** often

   她 常常 工作 到 晚上 十二点。

   Tā chángcháng gōngzuò dào wǎnshang shí'èrdiǎn.

   She often works until 12:00 midnight.

3. **常见** **chángjiàn** common

   这儿 春天 风沙 是 常见 的。

   Zhèr chūntiān fēngshā shì chángjiàn de.

   Dust storms are common here in spring.

4. **常识** **chángshí** general knowledge

   我的 科学 常识 不够。

   Wǒde kēxué chángshí búgòu.

   My general knowledge in science is weak.

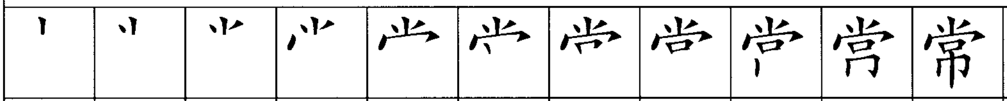
5. **平常** **píngcháng** common

   这 种 情况 很 平常。

   Zhè zhǒng qíngkuàng hěn píngcháng.

   This sort of thing is quite common.

Write the short vertical stroke first, then the two side dots. **11 strokes**



226

雨 **yǔ** rain

The character can be thought of as *heaven* 一 , *clouds* 冂 , and *rain falling* ⺗ . It means *rain.*

Radical: 雨 **'rain'** **Index # 172**

Character components: 一 + 冂 + ⺗ **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **雨** **yǔ** rain
   天气 预报 说 今天 有 雨。
   Tiānqì yùbào shuō jīntiān yǒu yǔ.
   Rain is forecast today.

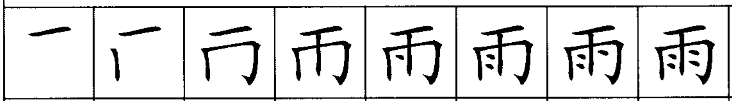
2. **阵雨** **zhènyǔ** showers
   今天 下午 有 阵雨。
   Jīntiān xiàwǔ yǒu zhènyǔ.
   There'll be showers this afternoon.

3. **下雨** **xiàyǔ** rain
   天气 预报 说 今天 下雨。
   Tiānqì yùbào shuō jīntiān xiàyǔ.
   Rain is forecast today.

4. **雨季** **yǔjì** rainy season
   五、六月 是 上海 的雨季。
   Wǔ、Liùyuè shì Shànghǎi de yǔjì.
   The time around May and June is the rainy season in Shanghai.

5. **雨伞** **yǔsǎn** umbrella
   我 忘了 带 雨伞。
   Wǒ wàngle dài yǔsǎn.
   I forgot to bring my umbrella.

The dots come down firmly to the right. **8 strokes**



227

游 yóu swim; tour

Full form

遊

When the phonetic 斿 is combined with *water* 氵, it means *swim.* However, the same character is used as the simplified form for *tour* or *play* 遊 with the *movement* 辶 radical, as illustrated in examples 3, 4 and 5.

Radical: 氵 **'3 drops of water'**

Index # 32

Character components: 氵 **+** 方 **+** 𠂉子

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **游** **yóu** swim
   这 条 河 太 宽， 我 游 不 过去。
   Zhè tiáo hé tài kuān, wǒ yóu bu guòqu.
   This river is too wide, I can't swim across it.

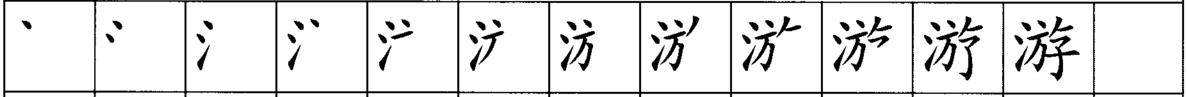
2. **游泳** **yóuyǒng** swim
   夏天 很多 人 去 海边 游泳。
   Xiàtiān hěnduō rén qù hǎibian yóuyǒng.
   Many people go to the seaside to swim in summer.

3. **游戏** **yóuxì** game
   孩子们 喜欢 玩 游戏。
   Háizimen xǐhuan wán yóuxì.
   Children love to play games.

4. **游人** **yóurén** tourist, traveler
   游人 止步。
   Yóurén zhǐbù
   No entrance. (literally, travelers stop)

5. **游览** **yóulǎn** go sight-seeing
   明天 我们 去 游览 故宫。
   Míngtiān wǒmen qù yóulǎn Gùgōng.
   Tomorrow we are touring the Imperial Palace.

The last stroke of 氵 goes up. **12 strokes**



228

泳 **yǒng** swim

The character combines *water* 氵 and the phonetic 永 to give the idea of a style of swimming. It means *swim.*

Radical: 氵 **'3 drops of water'** **Index # 32**

Character components: 氵 **+** 永 **Character configuration:** ◫

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **泳** **yǒng** swim
   夏天 很多 人 去 海边 游泳。
   Xiàtiān hěnduō rén qù hǎibian yóuyǒng.
   Many people go to the seaside to swim in summer.

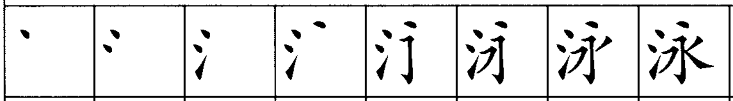
2. **游泳** **yóuyǒng** swim
   夏天 很多 人 去 海边 游泳。
   Xiàtiān hěnduō rén qù hǎibian yóuyǒng.
   Many people go to the seaside to swim in summer.

3. **蛙泳** **wāyǒng** breast stroke
   中国 赢过 蛙泳 金牌。
   Zhōngguó yíngguo wāyǒng jīnpái.
   China had won a gold medal for breast stroke.

4. **自由泳** **zìyóuyǒng** free style
   我的 自由泳 游得 不 好。
   Wǒde zìyóuyǒng yóude bù hǎo.
   My freestyle is not very good.

5. **泳道** **yǒngdào** lane (in swimming)
   他 游 的 是 第三 泳道。
   Tā yóu de shì dìsān yǒngdào.
   He swam in the third lane.

The last stroke tapers off to the right. **8 strokes**



229

池 **chí** pool, pond

The character combines *water* 氵 and the phonetic 也 to suggest a *pool* or *pond.*

Radical: 氵 **'3 drops of water'** **Index # 32**

Character components: 氵 **+** 也 **Character configuration:** ◫

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **池** **chí** pond
   我 家 后院 里 有 一个 养鱼池。
   Wŏ jiā hòuyuàn li yŏu yí ge yăngyúchí.
   We have a fishpond in our backyard.

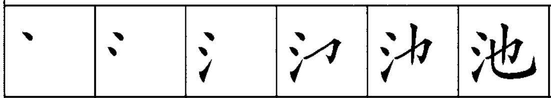
2. **游泳池** **yóuyŏngchí** swimming pool
   宾馆 里 有 游泳池。
   Bīnguăn li yŏu yóuyŏngchí.
   There's a swimming pool in the hotel.

3. **水池** **shuĭchí** sink
   我 在 水池 洗 菜。
   Wŏ zài shuĭchí xĭ cài.
   I washed the vegetables in the sink.

4. **浴池** **yùchí** public bathhouse
   他 喜欢 去 浴池 洗澡。
   Tā xĭhuan qù yùchí xĭzăo
   He likes to go to the bathhouse to bathe.

5. **池塘** **chítáng** pond
   池塘 里 种了 荷花儿。
   Chítáng li zhòngle héhuār.
   There are water lilies in the pond.

The last stroke ends with a hook. **6 strokes**



230

方 **fāng** direction

The character came from the sketch of a plough showing a handle on both sides of the shaft. Thus, it suggests the idea of extension to both sides or *direction.*

Radical: 方 **'direction'**

Index # 74

Character component: 方

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **方** **fāng** method
   他 母亲 教导 有 方。
   Tā mǔqin jiàodǎo yǒu fāng.
   His mother taught him the right way to do it.

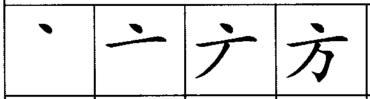
2. **方便** **fāngbiàn** convenient
   什么 时候 方便， 什么 时候 来。
   Shénme shíhou fāngbiàn, shénme shíhou lái.
   Drop in whenever it's convenient.

3. **方向** **fāngxiàng** direction
   他 往 学校 的 方向 走 了。
   Tā wǎng xuéxiào de fāngxiàng zǒu le.
   He went in the direction of the school.

4. **方法** **fāngfǎ** method
   这 个 学习 方法 很 好。
   Zhè ge xuéxí fāngfǎ hěn hǎo.
   This is a good study method.

5. **方面** **fāngmiàn** aspect
   应该 考虑 各 方面 的 意见。
   Yīnggāi kǎolǜ gè fāngmiàn de yìjiàn.
   One should consider opinions from different quarters.

The last stroke bends and ends with a hook. **4 strokes**



Quiz 23 (221–230)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

游	多	下	雨
泳	比	较	过
池	热	地	万
夏	常	方	海

	Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
(i)	游	泳	池	yóuyǒngchí	swimming pool
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Shànghǎi xiàtiān rè bu rè?									
(ii)	Bǐjiào rè, búguò cháng xiàyǔ.									
(iii)	Shànghǎi yóuyǒngchí duō bu duō?									
(iv)	Bùshǎo, hěnduō dìfang dōu yǒu.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

海边	direction
海外	seaside
夏 lìng 时	aspect
热 qíng	comparatively
比较	overseas
方 xiàng	summer time
方 fǎ	enthusiastic
方面	method

(ii)

常见	rainy season
常常	common
下雨	swim
雨 jì	game
zhèn 雨	tour
游泳	often
游 xì	rain
游 lǎn	showers

231

周 **zhōu** week

Full form

週

The character is used both as a full character (examples 4 and 5), and the simplified form for 週. The full form combines *field* 周 and *movement* 辶 to suggest the idea of making a circuit. It came to mean *cycle of time,* and then *week.*

Radical: 冂 **'border'**

Index # 16

Character components: 冂 + 土 + 口

Character configuration: ⿵

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **周** **zhōu** week
   上周 我 有 事儿, 没 去 跳舞。
   Shàngzhōu wǒ yǒu shìr, méi qù tiàowǔ.
   Last week I was busy, so I didn't go dancing.

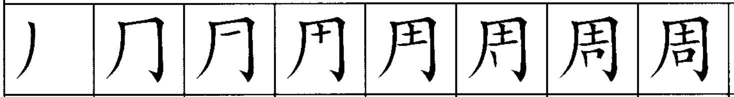
2. **周日** **zhōurì** Sunday
   周日 晚上 我 都 没 空儿。
   Zhōurì wǎnshang wǒ dōu méi kòngr.
   I'm always busy on Sundays.

3. **周年** **zhōunián** anniversary
   今天 是 我 结婚 二十五 周年 纪念。
   Jīntiān shì wǒ jiéhūn èrshíwǔ zhōunián jìniàn.
   Today is my 25th wedding anniversary.

4. **周身** **zhōushēn** all over the body
   今天 我 觉得 周身 疼痛。
   Jīntiān wǒ juéde zhōushēn téngtòng.
   Today, my whole body aches.

5. **周围** **zhōuwéi** around
   这里 周围 环境 都 很 美。
   Zhèlǐ zhōuwéi huánjìng dōu hěn měi.
   The surroundings here are beautiful.

The second stroke ends with a hook. **8 strokes**



232

末 **mò** end

The character is a phonetic used as a character. It means *end.* It is important to write the second horizontal stroke shorter to avoid confusion with wèi 未 *'not yet'* .

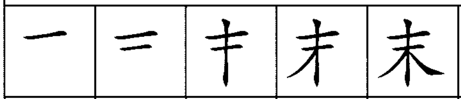
Radical: 木 **'tree'** **Index # 81**

Character components: 一 + 木 **Character configuration:** □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **末** **mò** end
   今天 是 学期 最 末 一天。
   Jīntiān shì xuéqī zuì mò yì tiān.
   Today is the last day of the semester.
2. **周末** **zhōumò** weekend
   周末 我 一般 都 出去 玩儿。
   Zhōumò wǒ yìbān dōu chūqu wánr.
   I generally go out during the weekends.
3. **末期** **mòqī** last phase
   我 是 第二次世界 大战 末期 出生 的。
   Wǒ shì dì'èr cì shìjiè dàzhàn mòqī chūshēng de.
   I was born during the last stage of the Second World War.
4. **末班车** **mòbānchē** last train/bus
   末班车 午夜 十二点 一刻开。
   Mòbānchē wǔyè shí'èrdiǎn yíkè kāi.
   The last bus leaves at 12:15 a.m.
5. **末日** **mòrì** doomsday
   核子 战争 将 导致 世界末日。
   Hézi zhànzhēng jiāng dǎozhì shìjiè mòrì.
   Nuclear wars will result in the end of the world.

The second stroke is shorter. **5 strokes**



233

活 **huó** live

The character combines *water* 氵 and *tongue* 舌 to symbolize *life*. It came to mean *active* or *vigorous*.

Radical: 氵 **'3 drops of water'**

Index # 32

Character components: 氵 **+** 舌

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **活 huó** live
   我爸爸 活到 八十五岁。
   Wǒ bāba huódào bāshíwǔ suì.
   My father lived to be eighty-five.

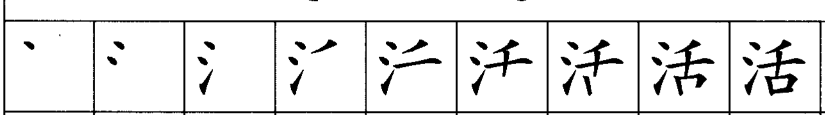
2. **活动 huódòng** activity
   这个 周末 你 有 什么 活动？
   Zhè ge zhōumò nǐ yǒu shénme huódòng?
   What activities have you planned for this weekend?

3. **活力 huólì** energy
   这个 小伙子 充满 活力。
   Zhè ge xiǎohuǒzi chōngmǎn huólì.
   This young man is full of energy.

4. **活泼 huópō** lively
   这个 孩子 真 活泼。
   Zhè ge háizi zhēn huópō.
   This child is really lively.

5. **生活 shēnghuó** life
   在 中国 生活 要 用 汉语。
   Zài Zhōngguó shēnghuó yào yòng Hànyǔ.
   You have to use Chinese if you live in China.

The fourth stroke sweeps down from right to left. **9 strokes**



234

动 **dòng** move

Full form

動

The full form combines *strength* 力 and *heavy* 重 to express the idea of *to budge something heavy* or *to move.*

Radical: 力 **'strength'**

Index # 31

Character components: 云 + 力

Character configuration: ◫

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **动** **dòng** move
   这 东西 一个 人 拿不动。
   Zhè dōngxi yí ge rén nábudòng.
   This thing can't be moved by one person.

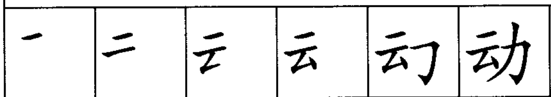
2. **动身** **dòngshēn** set out on a journey
   我们 明天 一 早 就 动身。
   Wǒmen míngtiān yì zǎo jiù dòngshēn.
   We'll leave early tomorrow.

3. **动人** **dòngrén** moving, touching
   这 个 电影 故事 很 动人。
   Zhè ge diànyǐng gùshi hěn dòngrén.
   The plot of this movie is very touching.

4. **动听** dòngtīng pleasant to listen to
   她 唱歌 很 动听。
   Tā chànggē hěn dòngtīng.
   She sings beautifully.

5. **动物园** **dòngwùyuán** zoo
   北京 动物园 有 大熊猫。
   Běijīng Dòngwùyuán yǒu dàxióngmāo.
   There are pandas in Beijing Zoo.

The last stroke tapers off. **6 strokes**



235

爱 ài love

Full form

愛

The full form combines *hand* 爫, *cover* 冖 , *heart* 心 and *stop* 夂 to express the idea of someone standing still while cherishing *love* in his heart. The simplified form uses the idea of *companionship* 友 to express *love.*

Radical: 爫 **'claw'**

Character components: 爫 + 冖 + 友

Index # 102

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **爱 ài** love
   他 爱上 她了。
   Tā àishang tā le.
   He has fallen in love with her.

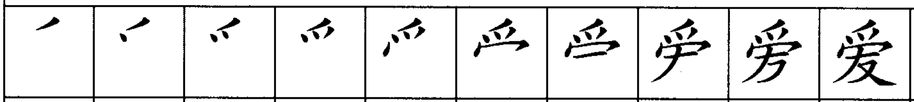
2. **爱情 àiqíng** love
   他们 之间 已经 有了 很 深 的爱情 了。
   Tāmen zhījiān yǐjīng yǒule hěn shēn de àiqíng le.
   They are deeply in love.

3. **爱护 àihù** take good care of
   请 爱护 公物。
   Qǐng àihù gōngwù.
   Please take care of public property.

4. **爱惜 àixī** value highly and use prudently
   他 不 知道 爱惜 东西。
   Tā bù zhīdao àixī dōngxi.
   He doesn't know how to look after things.

5. **爱好 àihào** hobby
   你 有 什么 爱好?
   Nǐ yǒu shénme àihào?
   What hobbies do you have?

The last stroke firms and tapers off. **10 strokes**



236

睡 **shuì** sleep

The character combines *eyes* 目 and the phonetic 垂 which means *hang down* to suggest the idea that when the eyelids droop, you go to *sleep*.

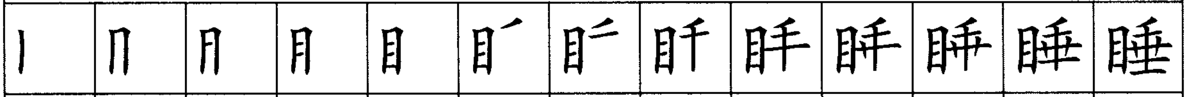
Radical: 目 **'eye'** **Index # 118**

Character components: 目 **+** 垂 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **睡** **shuì** sleep
   昨晚 我 睡了 八 小时。
   Zuówǎn wǒ shuìle bā xiǎoshí.
   I slept for eight hours last night.
2. **睡觉** **shuìjiào** sleep
   该 睡觉 了。
   Gāi shuìjiào le.
   It's time to go to sleep.
3. **午睡** **wǔshuì** afternoon nap
   中国人 有 午睡 的 习惯。
   Zhōngguórén yǒu wǔshuì de xíguàn.
   Chinese have the habit of taking an afternoon nap.
4. **睡眠** **shuìmián** sleep
   医生 说 我 睡眠 不足。
   Yīshēng shuō wǒ shuìmián bùzú.
   The doctor said that I don't have enough sleep.
5. **睡衣** **shuìyī** pyjamas
   我 忘了 带 睡衣。
   Wǒ wàngle dài shuìyī.
   I forgot to bring my pyjamas.

The last horizontal stroke is shorter. **13 strokes**



237

Full form

觉 **jiāo/juē** sleep; feel　　覺

The full form combines *feelings* 𦥯 and *see* or *perceive* 見 to mean *feel.* It is pronounced as *jué*. Its other meaning is *sleep,* pronounced as *jiào*.

Radical: 见 **'see'**

Index # 93

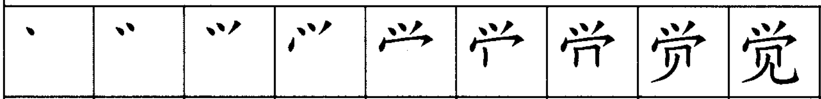
Character components: ⺍ + 见

Character configuration: ⿱

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **觉 jiāo** sleep
   一 觉 醒 来 已经 十点半 了。
   Yī jiāo xǐng lāi yǐjīng shídiǎnbān le.
   When I woke up it was already 10:30.
2. **睡懒觉 shuī lǎnjiāo** sleep in
   周末 我 喜欢 睡 懒觉。
   Zhōumō wǒ xǐhuan shuī lǎnjiāo.
   At the weekend, I like to sleep in.
3. **睡午觉 shuī wǔjiāo** afternoon nap
   中国人 有 睡 午觉 的 习惯。
   Zhōngguōrēn yǒu shuī wǔjiāo de xíguān.
   Chinese have the habit of taking an afternoon nap.
4. **觉得 juēde** feel
   我 觉得 我的 中文 进步了。
   Wǒ juēde wōde Zhōngwēn jìnbū le.
   I feel that my Chinese has improved.
5. **感觉 gǎnjuē** perception
   这 只是 我 个人 的感觉。
   Zhē zhǐ shī wǒ gērēn de gǎnjuē.
   This is only my personal feeling.

The last stroke is a vertical-bend hook. **9 strokes**



238

呢 **ne** [particle]

The character combines *mouth* 口 and *the phonetic* 尼 to give the idea of a *question particle.*

Radical: 口 **'mouth'** **Index # 50**

Character components: 口 **+** 尼 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **呢** **ne** particle (rhetorical question)
   我 怎么 能 不记得呢?
   Wǒ zěnme něng bú jǐde ne?
   How could I forget this?

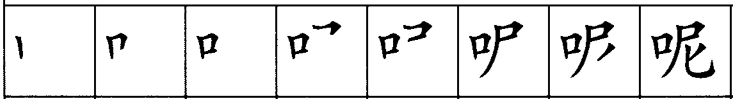
2. **呢** **ne** particle (declarative sentence)
   远 得 很呢。
   Yuǎn de hěn ne.
   It's a long way.

3. **呢** **ne** particle (to mark continuous action)
   他 还 在 睡觉 呢。
   Tā hái zài shuǐjiào ne.
   He's still asleep.

4. **呢** **ne** particle (to ask a return question)
   我 叫 大伟, 你呢?
   Wǒ jiào Dàwěi, nǐ ne?
   My name is David, what's yours?

5. **呢** **ne** particle (to mark a pause)
   不 下雨 呢, 就去; 下雨呢, 就 不 去。
   Bú xiàyǔ ne, jiù qù; xiàyǔ ne, jiù bú qù.
   If it doesn't rain, we'll go; if it rains, we won't go.

The last stroke sweeps from right to left. **8 strokes**



239

运 **yùn** transport

Full form

運

The full form combines *war chariot* 軍 and *movement* 辶 to mean *carry people in a vehicle* or *transport.* The simplified form uses the simpler phonetic 云 .

Radical: 辶 **'movement'**

Index # 38

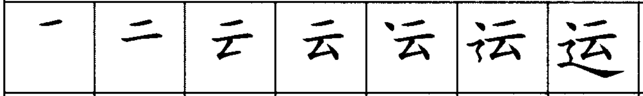
Character components: 云 + 辶

Character configuration: ⿺

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **运 yùn** luck
   祝 你 好运!
   Zhù nǐ hǎo yùn!
   Good luck!
2. **运气 yùnqi** luck
   我 最近 运气 不 太 好。
   Wǒ zuìjìn yùnqi bú tài hǎo.
   I've had some bad luck recently.
3. **幸运 xìngyùn** fortunate
   我 觉得 我 很 幸运。
   Wǒ juéde wǒ hěn xìngyùn.
   I think that I'm very fortunate.
4. **运动 yùndòng** sport
   游泳 是 我 喜爱的 运动。
   Yǒuyǒng shì wǒ xǐ'ài de yùndòng.
   Swimming is my favorite sport.
5. **运用 yùnyòng** utilize
   她 把 学过 的 东西 运用 在 生活 里。
   Tā bǎ xuéguo de dōngxi yùnyòng zài shēnghuó li.
   She applies what she learnt to everyday situations.

End the last stroke of 云 firmly. **7 strokes**



240

得 **dé/de/děi** obtain; [particle]; must

The character is pronounced *dé* when it means *obtain*; in the neutral tone *de* when it functions as *verbal particle*; and *děi* when it means *must.*

Radical: 彳 **'double person'** **Index # 54**

Character components: 彳 + 日 + 寸 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **得** **dé** obtain
   他 考试 得了第一 名。
   Tā kǎoshì déle dìyī míng.
   He came first in the exam.

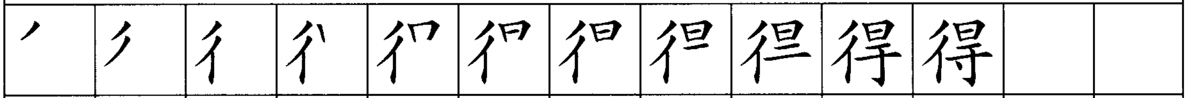
2. verb + **得** verb + de verbal particle
   她 乒乓球 打得 不错。
   Tā pīngpāngqiú dǎde búcuò.
   She plays table tennis quite well.

3. **得意** **déyì** proud of oneself
   我 对自己的 成绩 感到 得意。
   Wǒ duì zìjǐ de chéngjī gǎndào déyì.
   I was proud of my results.

4. **得罪** **dézuì** offend
   我的 话 把 他给得罪了。
   Wǒde huà bǎ tā gěi dézuìle.
   My words offended him.

5. **得** **děi** certainly will
   要不 快 走， 我们 就 得 迟到 了。
   Yàobù kuài zǒu, wǒmen jiù děi chídào le.
   We'll be late if we don't hurry.

The second horizontal stroke is longer. **11 strokes**



Quiz 24 (231–240)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

欢	活	喜	呢
运	动	周	末
步	睡	觉	跑
和	泳	游	爱

	Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
(i)	活	动		huódòng	activity/activities
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Zhōumò nǐ yǒu shénme huódòng?									
(ii)	Zhōumò wǒ ài shuì lǎnjiào.									
(iii)	Nǐ xǐhuan shénme yùndòng?									
(iv)	Wǒ xǐhuan yóuyǒng hé pǎobù.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)		(ii)	
周年	zoo	睡午觉	offend
周日	pleasant to listen to	睡 lǎn 觉	sports
生活	touching	睡衣	luck
动人	anniversary	觉得	sleep in
动 tīng	spouse	gǎn 觉	afternoon nap
动 wù 园	hobby	运动	perception
爱人	living	运 qi	pyjamas
爱好 (pron. hào)	Sunday	得 zuì	feel

241

可 **kě** can, may

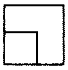
The character combines *mouth* 口 and the non-character 丁 which is sign of bending. The character may mean *to be acknowledged by hook or by crook.*

Radical: 一 **'horizontal stroke'** **Index # 2**

or 口 **'mouth'** **Index # 50**

Character components: 口 + 丁

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **可** **kě** (used for emphasis)
   可别 忘了。
   Kě biě wàng le.
   Mind you don't forget it.

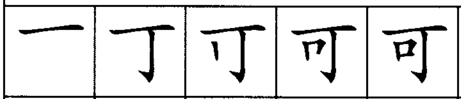
2. **可是** **kěshì** but
   我的 房间 比较 小，可是 很 舒适。
   Wǒde fángjiān bǐjiào xiǎo, kěshì hěn shūshì.
   My room is a bit small, but it's very comfortable.

3. **可爱** **kě'ài** lovable, lovely
   多么 可爱 的 孩子!
   Duōme kě'ài de háizi!
   What a cute child!

4. **可以** **kěyǐ** can, may
   这 间 屋子可以住 两 个人。
   Zhè jiān wūzi kěyǐ zhù liǎng ge rén.
   This room can accommodate two people.

5. **可能** **kěnéng** possible
   很 可能 他 已经 到 家了。
   Hěn kěnéng tā yǐjīng dào jiā le.
   He's most likely to be home by now.

The second stroke ends with a hook. **5 strokes**



242

以 yǐ with

The character combines *gather* 𠄌 and *people* 人 to represent the idea of *gathering people and their employment.* Later it came to mean *use* or *according to.*

Radical: 人 **'person'**

Index # 18

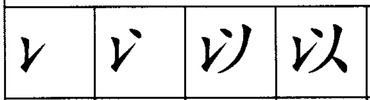
Character components: 𠄌 **+** 人

Character configuration: ◫

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **以 yǐ** with, by means of
   我们 不 应该 以 貌 取人。
   Wǒmen bù yīnggāi yǐ mào qǔ rén.
   We should not judge people solely by their appearance.
2. **以便 yǐbiàn** in order to
   作好 准备, 以便 明天 一 早 动身。
   Zuòhǎo zhǔnbèi, yǐbiàn míngtiān yì zǎo dòngshēn.
   Get ready so that we can start early tomorrow.
3. **以后 yǐhòu** afterwards
   以后 你 会 有 机会 去 的。
   Yǐhòu nǐ huì yǒu jīhuì qù de.
   You will have a chance to go later.
4. **以前 yǐqián** prior to, former
   她 是 我 以前 的 同事。
   Tā shì wǒ yǐqián de tóngshì.
   She's a former colleague of mine.
5. **以为 yǐwéi** consider
   他 以为 那样 做 比较 好。
   Tā yǐwéi nàyàng zuò bǐjiào hǎo.
   He thinks it's better to do it that way.

Both dots finish firmly. **4 strokes**



243

共 gòng together

The character represents the idea of two hands lifting an object. Thus, it came to mean *together*.

Radical: 八 **'eight'**

Index # 17

Character components: 龷 **+** 八

Character configuration: ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **共 gòng** public

   今天 很 高兴 能 有 机会 跟 老

   Jīntiān hěn gāoxìng néng yǒu jīhuì gēn lǎo

   朋友 共 聚一 堂。

   péngyou gòng jù yì táng.

   I'm very happy to have the opportunity to meet with old friends.

2. **共同 gōngtóng** common

   他们 之间 没有 共同 的 语言。

   Tāmen zhījiān méiyǒu gòngtóng de yǔyán.

   They don't have a common language.

3. **一共 yígòng** altogether

   你们 一共 多少 人?

   Nǐmen yígòng duōshao rén?

   How many people are there altogether in your group?

4. **公共 gōnggòng** public

   请 不要 在 公共 场所 吸烟。

   Qǐng búyào zài gōnggòng chǎngsuǒ xīyān.

   Please don't smoke in public places.

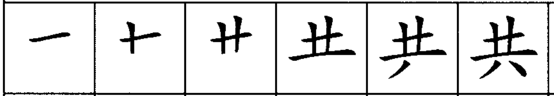
5. **共和国 gònghéguó** republic

   中华 人民 共和国。

   Zhōnghuá Rénmín Gònghéguó.

   The People's Republic of China.

The last stroke ends firmly. **6 strokes**



244

汽 qì steam

The character combines *water* 氵 and *gas* 气 to suggest the idea of *watery air* or *vapor.*

Radical: 氵 **'3 drops of water'**

Index # 32

Character components: 氵 **+** 气

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **汽** **qì** vapor
   汽船 用 蒸汽 开动。
   Qìchuán yòng zhēngqì kāidòng.
   Steamships are driven by steam.

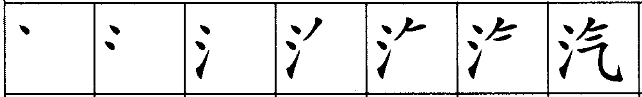
2. **汽油** **qìyóu** petrol
   最近 汽油 涨价 了。
   Zuìjìn qìyóu zhǎngjià le.
   Recently the price of gasoline has risen.

3. **汽水** **qìshuǐ** soft drinks
   这 是 什么 汽水？
   Zhè shì shénme qìshuǐ?
   What is this soft drink?

4. **汽车** **qìchē** automobile
   路上 有 很多 汽车。
   Lùshang yǒu hěnduō qìchē.
   There are lots of cars on the road.

5. **汽船** **qìchuán** steamship
   现在 很少 有 汽船 了。
   Xiànzài hěnshǎo yǒu qìchuán le.
   Nowadays steamships are rare.

The last stroke slants to the right. **7 strokes**



245

或 **huò** or; perhaps

The character combines *spear* 戈, *border* 口 and *approximation* 一 to suggest the idea that the border is an approximation. Thus, it came to mean *perhaps*.

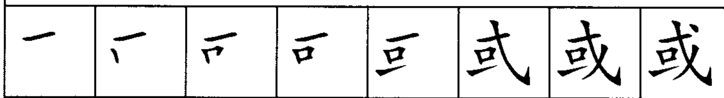
Radical: 戈 **'spear'** **Index # 85**

Character components: 戈 + 口 + 一 **Character configuration:**

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **或 huò** or
   无论 唱歌 或 跳舞，她 都 行。
   Wúlùn chànggē huò tiàowǔ, tā dōu xíng.
   She is good at both singing and dancing.
2. **或是 huòshì** or
   无论 唱歌 或是 跳舞，她 都 行。
   Wúlùn chànggē huòshì tiàowǔ, tā dōu xíng.
   She is good at both singing and dancing.
3. **或者 huòzhě** either ... or
   你 早上 或者 下午 来 都可以。
   Nǐ zǎoshang huòzhě xiàwǔ lái dōu kěyǐ.
   You may come either in the morning or in the afternoon.
4. **或许 huòxǔ** perhaps, maybe
   他 或许 没有 赶上 火车。
   Tā huòxǔ méiyǒu gǎnshàng huǒchē.
   Perhaps he has missed the train.

The bottom horizontal stroke goes up slightly. **8 strokes**



246

者 **zhě** -er, -ist

This character functions as a particle. It is often used after a verb, adjective or noun to indicate a class of persons or things. In 或者, it means *perhaps.*

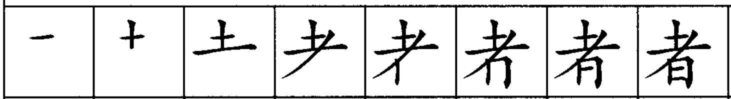
Radical: 曰 **'speech'** **Index # 91**

Character components: 耂 **+** 日 **Character configuration:** ⊟

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **者 zhě** one of those who; the thing or things which
   独身主义者。
   Dúshēnzhǔyìzhě.
   One who prefers to be single.
2. **作者 zuòzhě** author
   他 是 这 本 书 的 作者。
   Tā shì zhè běn shū de zuòzhě.
   He's the author of this book.
3. **读者 dúzhě** reader
   这 本 书 的 读者 很 广。
   Zhè běn shū de dúzhě hěn guǎng.
   This book has a wide readership.
4. **记者 jìzhě** reporter
   他 是 当 记者的。
   Tā shì dāng jìzhě de.
   He is a reporter.
5. **旁观者 pángguānzhě** onlooker
   旁观者 清。
   Pángguānzhě qīng.
   The spectator sees most clearly.

The top horizontal stroke is shorter. **8 strokes**



247

火 huǒ fire

The character is a pictograph of a blazing flame.

Radical: 火 **'fire'**

Index # 75

Character component: 火

Character configuration: □

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **火** **huǒ** fire
   不要 让 小孩子 玩火。
   Búyào ràng xiǎoháizi wánhuǒ.
   Don't let children play with fire.

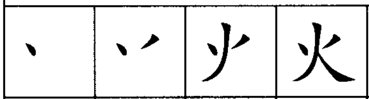
2. **火车** **huǒchē** train
   她 明天 坐 火车 去 西安。
   Tā míngtiān zuò huǒchē qù Xī'ān.
   She will be taking a train to Xian tomorrow.

3. **火柴** **huǒchái** matches
   请问， 有 没有 火柴?
   Qǐngwèn, yǒu méiyǒu huǒchái?
   Excuse me, do you have a match?

4. **火候** **huǒhou** duration and degree of heating
   炒菜 的 时候， 掌握 火候 很 重要。
   Chǎocài de shíhou, zhǎngwò huǒhou hěn zhòngyào.
   Heat control is very important in stir-frying.

5. **火气** **huǒqì** temper
   他的 火气 很 大。
   Tāde huǒqì hěn dà.
   He has a bad temper.

The last stroke tapers off. **4 strokes**



248

站 **zhàn** stand

The character combines *stand* 立 and *occupy* 占 to express the meaning of *stand* or *station.*

Radical: 立 **'stand'**

Index # 111

Character components: 立 **+** 占

Character configuration: ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **站** **zhàn** train/bus stop
我 下个 站 下车。
Wǒ xià ge zhàn xiàchē.
I get off at the next stop.

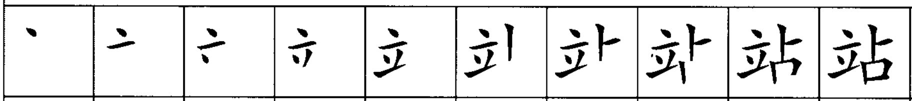
2. **火车站** **huǒchēzhàn** train station
我 家离 火车站 不 远。
Wǒ jiā lí huǒchēzhàn bù yuǎn.
My house is not far from the railway station.

3. **站立** **zhànlì** be on one's feet
他 腿 疼, 不能 站立。
Tā tuǐ téng, bùnéng zhànlì.
His leg was so sore that he couldn't stand up.

4. **站稳** **zhànwěn** come to a stop
等 车 站稳了 再下。
Děng chē zhànwěnle zài xià.
Wait till the bus/train stops completely before getting out.

5. **站住** **zhànzhù** stop, halt
风 刮得 人 都 站不住 了。
Fēng guāde rén dōu zhànbuzhù le.
The wind was so strong that you could hardly stand.

The fifth stroke lifts slightly. **10 strokes**



249

知 **zhī** know

The character combines *arrow* 矢 and *mouth* 口 to suggest words flying like arrows from the mouth. To speak fast means the speaker *knows* the subject well.

Radical: 矢 **'arrow'** **Index # 123**
or 口 **'mouth'** **Index # 50**
Character components: 矢 **+** 口 **Character configuration:** ⿰

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **知** **zhī** be aware of, know
   这 话 不 知 是 谁 说 的。
   Zhè huà bù zhī shì shéi/shuí shuō de.
   I don't know who said this.

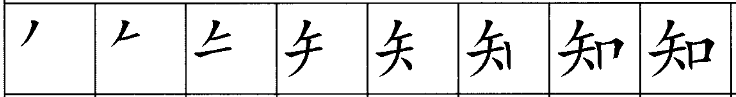
2. **知道** **zhīdao** know
   你 知道 邮局 在哪儿吗?
   Nǐ zhīdao yóujú zài nǎr ma?
   Do you know where the post office is?

3. **知己** **zhījǐ** bosom friend
   人生 难得 有 个知己。
   Rénshēng nándé yǒu ge zhījǐ.
   It is difficult to find a true friend.

4. **知音** **zhīyīn** an understanding friend
   难得 有 个 知音。
   Nándé yǒu ge zhīyīn.
   It is difficult to find someone who really understands you.

5. **知识** **zhīshi** knowledge
   王 老师 的 知识 渊博。
   Wáng lǎoshī de zhīshi yuānbó.
   Teacher Wang is very knowledgeable.

The fifth stroke ends firmly. **8 strokes**



250

道 dāo road

The character combines *movement* 辶 and *main* 首 to suggest going along a main path. It means *road.*

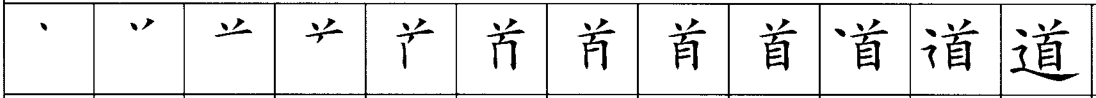
Radical: 辶 'movement' **Index # 38**

Character components: 首 + 辶 **Character configuration: ⿺**

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **道** **dāo** way, method
   他对 养生 之道 很 有 研究。
   Tā duì yǎngshēng zhī dāo hěn yǒu yánjiū.
   He's very knowledgeable about staying healthy.
2. **道路** **dāolū** road
   走 前人 没有 走过 的道路。
   Zǒu qiánrén méiyǒu zǒuguo de dāolū.
   Explore paths none have taken before.
3. **道理** **dāoli** reason
   你的 话 很 有 道理。
   Nǐde huā hěn yǒu dāoli.
   What you said is quite reasonable.
4. **道歉** **dāoqiān** apologize
   我 得 向 你 道歉。
   Wǒ děi xiāng nǐ dāoqiān.
   I owe you an apology.
5. **道义** **dāoyī** morality and justice
   我们 应该 给他道义 上 的 支持。
   Wǒmen yīnggāi gěi tā dāoyī shang de zhīchí.
   We should give him moral support.

The top horizontal stroke is longer. **12 strokes**



Quiz 25 (241–250)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

在	儿	哪	火
共	公	汽	车
知	道	或	站
可	以	者	也

	Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
(i)	火	车	站	huǒchēzhàn	train station
(ii)					
(iii)					
(iv)					

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Dào Zhōngguó Fàndiàn zěnme zǒu?									
(ii)	Kěyǐ zuò gōnggòngqìchē qù.									
(iii)	Huòzhě zuò huǒchē yě kěyǐ.									
(iv)	Wǒ zhīdao chēzhàn zài nǎr.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

可爱	altogether
可能	know
以前	reason
公共	cute
一共	apologize
知道	possible
道 li	before
道 qiàn	public

(ii)

汽车	gasoline
汽 yóu	railway station
汽 shuǐ	automobile
或 xǔ	temper
作者	soft drinks
火 chái	matches
火 qì	perhaps, maybe
火车站	author, writer

CHARACTER BUILDING 5 (201–250)

A. Memorize each of the following radicals and their English names. As a review exercise, write the pinyin and meaning of each example.

1. [一] ‘horizontal stroke’
来 (________) ______________; 万 (________) ______________.
面 (________) ______________.

2. [丨] ‘vertical stroke’
北 (________) ______________;

3. [丿] ‘downward-left stroke’
久 (________) ______________; 长 (________) ______________;

4. [亠] ‘top of 六’
京 (________) ______________; 就 (________) ______________.

5. [十] ‘ten’
南 (________) ______________; 直 (________) ______________;

6. [八] ‘eight’
共 (________) ______________; 典 (________) ______________;
前 (________) ______________; 公 (________) ______________.

7. [人] ‘person’
从 (________) ______________; 以 (________) ______________;

8. [亻] ‘upright person’
住 (________) ______________; 作 (________) ______________;

9. [又] ‘again’
欢 (________) ______________; 对 (________) ______________;

10. [力] ‘strength’
动 (________) ______________; 助 (________) ______________;

11. [氵] ‘3 drops of water’
游 (________) ______________; 泳 (________) ______________;
池 (________) ______________; 海 (________) ______________;
活 (________) ______________; 汽 (________) ______________;

12. [门] ‘door’
间 (________) ______________; 问 (________) ______________.

13. [辶] ‘movement’
运 (________) ______________; 道 (________) ______________;

14. [土] ‘earth’
坐 (________) ______________; 地 (________) ______________;

15. [口] 'mouth'
呢 (________) ____________; 和 (________) ____________;
可 (________) ____________.

16. [巾] 'napkin'
常 (________) ____________; 帮 (________) ____________.

17. [夂] 'top of 夂'
冬 (________) ____________; 夏 (________) ____________.

18. [纟] 'silk'
经 (________) ____________; 练 (________) ____________;

19. [灬] '4 dots of fire'
热 (________) ____________; 点 (________) ____________.

20. [方] 'direction'
方 (________) ____________; 旁 (________) ____________.

21. [木] 'wood'
末 (________) ____________; 本 (________) ____________;

22. [车] 'vehicle'
车 (________) ____________; 较 (________) ____________.

23. [戈] 'spear'
或 (________) ____________; 我 (________) ____________.

24. [见] 'see'
觉 (________) ____________; 见 (________) ____________.

B. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters classified under the following radicals.

1. [冫] 'ice' 冷 (________) ____________
2. [冂] 'three-sided frame, closed top' 周 (________) ____________
3. [刂] 'upright knife' 到 (________) ____________
4. [士] 'scholar' 喜 (________) ____________
5. [己] 'self' 已 (________) ____________
6. [火] 'fire' 火 (________) ____________
7. [曰] 'speech' 者 (________) ____________
8. [爪] 'claw' 爱 (________) ____________
9. [立] 'stand' 站 (________) ____________
10. [目] 'eye' 睡 (________) ____________
11. [矢] 'arrow' 知 (________) ____________
12. [雨] 'rain' 雨 (________) ____________

C. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters which share the following components. (Note that these components are not necessarily used as radicals.)

1. [也] 池 (________) ______________; 地 (________) ______________.
2. [匕] 老 (________) ______________; 北 (________) ______________.
3. [日] 间 (________) ______________; 晚 (________) ______________.
4. [友] 友 (________) ______________; 爱 (________) ______________;

REVIEW 5 (201–250)

The following are words and phrases classified under parts of speech. Write the pinyin and meaning.

Nouns 地方 (________) ______________; 地下 (________) ______________;
地铁 (________) ______________; 铁路 (________) ______________;
车 (________) ______________; 汽车 (________) ______________;
火车 (________) ______________; 火车站 (________) ______________;
北方 (________) ______________; 南方 (________) ______________;
时间 (________) ______________; 冬天 (________) ______________;
海边 (________) ______________; 海外 (________) ______________;
夏天 (________) ______________; 泳道 (________) ______________;
游泳池 (________) ______________; 方面 (________) ______________;
周 (________) ______________; 周日 (________) ______________;
周末 (________) ______________; 周年 (________) ______________;
末期 (________) ______________; 活动 (________) ______________;
生活 (________) ______________; 爱好 (________) ______________;
爱人 (________) ______________; 午睡 (________) ______________;
运动 (________) ______________; 汽油 (________) ______________;
作者 (________) ______________; 读者 (________) ______________;
站 (________) ______________; 道路 (________) ______________;
知识 (________) ______________.

Proper nouns 北京 (________) ______________; 南京 (________) ______________;
东京 (________) ______________; 上海 (________) ______________;

Verbs 住 (________) ______________; 到 (________) ______________;
到期 (________) ______________; 坐 (________) ______________;
来 (________) ______________; 经过 (________) ______________;
长大 (________) ______________; 喜爱 (________) ______________;

喜欢 (________) ____________ ; 下雨 (________) ____________ ;
游泳 (________) ____________ ; 活 (________) ____________ ;
爱 (________) ____________ ; 睡觉 (________) ____________ ;
觉得 (________) ____________ ; 知道 (________) ____________ .

Auxiliary verbs 可以 (________) ____________ .

Adjectives 喜欢 (________) ____________ ; 热 (________) ____________ ;
常见 (________) ____________ ; 动人 (________) ____________ ;
可爱 (________) ____________ ; 到家 (________) ____________ ;
公共 (________) ____________ ; 公用 (________) ____________ .

Location words 南边 (________) ____________ ; 中间 (________) ____________ ;
前面 (________) ____________ ; 后面 (________) ____________ ;

Time words (Adverbs) 久 (________) ____________ ; 不久 (________) ____________ ;
以前 (________) ____________ ; 以后 (________) ____________ .

Adverbs 从前 (________) ____________ ; 从来 (________) ____________ ;
已经 (________) ____________ ; 经常 (________) ____________ ;
常常 (________) ____________ ; 比较 (________) ____________ ;

Conjunction 和 (________) ____________ ; 以便 (________) ____________ ;
或 (________) ____________ ; 或者 (________) ____________ ;

Prepositions 从 (________) ____________ ; 从...到 (________) ____________ .

Particles 呢 (________) ____________ .

WORD/SENTENCE PUZZLE 5

Find and CIRCLE words, phrases or sentences hidden in the puzzle. They can be found horizontally from left to right or vertically. The lines across and down are indicated by numbers. Write down the meaning next to the pinyin. The first one is done for you.

ACROSS (left to right)

2. Wǒ juéde wǒde Zhōngwén jìnbù le. *I think my Chinese has improved.*
6. Huǒchē zài tiělù shàng zǒu. ____________________
7. qìchēzhàn. ____________________
8. dúzhě. ____________________
9. (i) Zhōumò huódòng tài duō le. ____________________
9. (ii) xiàyǔ ____________________

11. cōnglāi
13. Zhè zhī māo hěn kě'ài.

DOWN

1. yì zhōunián.
2. Wǒ cháng qù yōuyǒng.
3. (i) shuìjiào
3. (ii) huódào yībǎi-líng-yī
4. huǒchē
5. Wǒ jiā lí huǒchēzhàn bú tài yuǎn.
7. (i) zhōngjiān
7. (ii) dìtiě
9. Nǐ zǎoshang huòzhě xiàwǔ lái dōu kěyǐ.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
1	买	西	睡	旁	早	看	见	做	起	母	明
2	每	我	觉	得	我	的	中	文	进	步	了
3	东	常	亲	它	家	旁	间	知	工	共	公
4	买	去	城	边	离	吃	面	条	你	期	进
5	起	游	呢	和	火	北	地	京	早	到	道
6	走	泳	南	火	车	在	铁	路	上	走	面
7	床	亲	汽	车	站	典	明	毛	或	在	现
8	一	者	方	比	不	睡	爱	读	者	经	长
9	周	末	活	动	太	多	了	晚	下	雨	饭
10	年	觉	到	岁	远	到	坐	早	午	就	久
11	卖	亲	一	池	住	冷	冬	从	来	已	做
12	往	能	百	离	太	狗	钱	路	都	店	面
13	千	用	零	远	这	只	猫	很	可	爱	现
14	时	街	一	较	夏	还	大	欢	以	喜	往

Alphabetical Index

A

ài	爱	235.1
àihào	爱好	235.5
àihù	爱护	235.3
àiqíng	爱情	235.4
àixī	爱惜	235.5

B

bā	八	8.1
bāchéng	八成	8.2
bāzhé	八折	8.3
bà	爸	65.1
bàba	爸爸	65.2
ba	吧	159.1
... ba, ...ba,	... 吧, ... 吧	159.5
bǎi	百	147.1
bǎifēndiǎn	百分点	147.3
bǎifēnzhībǎi	百分之百	147.2
bǎifēnzhīsānshí	百分之三十	105.5
bǎihuò	百货	147.4
bǎiwàn	百万	147.5/155.2
bàinián	拜年	126.5
bàn	半	107.1
bànxīn-bújiù	半新不旧	107.4
bàntiān	半天	107.5
bāng	帮	169.1
bāngdàománg	帮倒忙	169.5
bāngmáng	帮忙	100.5/169.4
bāngshǒu	帮手	169.3
bāngzhù	帮助	169.2/170.2
běi	北	208.1
běifāng	北方	208.2
Běijīng	北京	208.4/209.2
Běiměizhōu	北美洲	208.5
běn	本	167.1
běndì	本地	167.2
běnháng	本行	167.3
běnlái	本来	167.4
běnlǐng	本领	167.5
bǐ	比	94.1
bǐbushàng	比不上	94.5
bǐfāng	比方	94.4
bǐjiào	比较	94.2/224.2
bǐsài	比赛	94.3
biān	边	175.1
biān ... biān	边 ... 边	175.2
biàn	便	149.1
biànlì	便利	149.3
biàntiáo	便条	149.4/187.4
biǎoxiàn	表现	101.5
bú/bù	不	38.1
búcuò	不错	38.3
búguò	不过	186.5
búshì	不是	24.3
bùduō-bùshǎo	不多不少	38.2
bù hǎo yìsi	不好意思	38.4
bùjiǔ	不久	38.5/212.5
bùshǎo	不少	44.2
bùyí	不宜	150.2
bù	步	120.1
bùzhòu	步骤	120.2

C

cháng	长	215.1
Chángchéng	长城	137.5
chángchù	长处	215.3
Chángjiāng	长江	215.2
chángpǎo	长跑	119.5
chángyuǎn	长远	182.5
cháng	常	225.1
chángcháng	常常	225.2
chángjiàn	常见	225.3
chángshí	常识	225.4
chē	车	207.1
chēfèi	车费	207.2
chēhuò	车祸	207.5

chéng	城	137.1
chéngshì	城市	137.3
chéngxiāng	城乡	137
chī	吃	108.1
chībuxià	吃不下	108.4
chīdexià	吃得下	108.3
chīfàn	吃饭	108.2
chīkǔ	吃苦	108.5
chí	池	229.1
chítáng	池塘	229.5
chuáng	床	118.1
chuángshang	床上	118.2
chuángdān	床单	118.3
cí	词	165.1
cídiǎn	词典	165.2/166.4
cíhuìbiǎo	词汇表	165.5
cóng	从	203.1
cóng nàr qǐ	从那儿起	81.5
cóng ... dào	从 ... 到	203.2
cónglái	从来	203.3/211.5
cóngqián	从前	203.4
cóngxiǎo	从小	203.5

D

dà	大	91.1
dà xiōngdì	大兄弟	61.4
dàgài	大概	94.5
dàgē	大哥	55.3
dàjiā	大家	91.3
dàjiē	大街	188.3
dàshēng	大声	91.2
dàxiǎo	大小	91.4
dàxiě	大写	42.4
dàxuéshēng	大学生	99.4
dàxióngmāo	大熊猫	89.4
dāncí	单词	165.4
dānrénchuáng	单人床	118.4
dào	到	202.1
dàochù	到处	202.5
dàodǐ	到底	202.3
dàojiā	到家	202.4
dàoqī	到期	134.5/202.5
dào	道	250.1
dàoli	道理	250.3
dàolù	道路	250.2
dàoqiàn	道歉	250.4
dàoyì	道义	250.5
de	的	34.1
dé (verb)	得	240.1
de (verbal particle)	得	240.2
déyì	得意	240.3
dézuì	得罪	240.4
děi	得	240.5
Déguó	德国	26.3
dì	地	205.1
dìdao	地道	205.5
dìfang	地方	205.2
dìtiě	地铁	206.4
dìtú	地图	205.3
dìxià	地下	205.4
dì	弟	57.1
dìdi	弟弟	57.2
dìxí	弟媳	57.4
dìxiōng	弟兄	57.3
dìyī	第一	1.5
diǎn	点	103.1
diǎncài	点菜	103.4
diǎntóu	点头	103.5
diǎnzhōng	点钟	104.2
diǎn	典	166.1
diǎnlǐ	典礼	166.2
diǎnxíng	典型	166.3
diàn	电	129.1
diànhuà	电话	129.5
diànnǎo	电脑	129.4/151.4
diànshì	电视	129.3
diànyǐng	电影	129.2
diànyǐngyuàn	电影院	177.5

diàn	店	142.1
diànyuán	店员	142.5
dōng	东	139.1
dōngběi	东北	208.3
dōngbian	东边	139.2
Dōngjīng	东京	209.4
Dōngnányà	东南亚	139.3
dōngxi	东西	139.4
dōng	冬	220.1
dōnggū	冬菇	220.4
dōngjì	冬季	220.3
dōngtiān	冬天	220.2
dōngzhuāng	冬装	220.5
dòng	动	234.1
dòngshēn	动身	234.2
dòngrén	动人	234.3
dòngtīng	动听	234.4
dòngwùyuán	动物园	180.5/234.5
dōu	都	80.1
dòufu’nǎor	豆腐脑儿	151.5
dū	都	80
dūshì	都市	80.2
dú	读	161.1
dúběn	读本	161.4
dúshū	读书	161.2
dúzhě	读者	161.3/246.3
dúyī-wú’èr	独一无二	2.5
duì	对	176.1
duìbuqǐ	对不起	176.3
duìmiàn	对面	176.2
duìshǒu	对手	176.4
duìyú	对于	176.5
duō	多	43.1
duōbàn	多半	43.3
duō jiǔ	多久	212.2
duōme	多么	13.4/43.5
duōshao	多少	44.4
duōshù	多数	43.4
duōxiè	多谢	77.3

E

ér	儿	83.1
érgē	儿歌	83.4
érnǚ	儿女	83.3
értóng	儿童	83.5
érzi	儿子	83.2
éryǐ	而已	213.4
èr	二	2.1
Èryuè	二月	2.3
èrděng	二等	2.4
èrgē	二哥	2.2/55.4
èrjiě	二姐	56.2

F

fàn	饭	110.1
fàncài	饭菜	110.2
fàndiàn	饭店	110.4
fànguǎnr	饭馆儿	110.3
fāng	方	230.1
fāngbiàn	方便	149.2/230.2
fāngfǎ	方法	230.4
fāngkuàizì	方块字	148.5
fāngmiàn	方面	230.5
fāngxiàng	方向	230.5
fángdōng	房东	139.5
fángjiān	房间	216.4
fēn	分	105.1
fēnbié	分别	105.3
fēnbiàn	分辨	105.4
fēnzhōng	分钟	105.2
fúzhuāngdiàn	服装店	142.4
fù	父	74.1
fùmǔ	父母	74.3/75.3
fùqin	父亲	74.2/76.3
fùjìn	附近	191.5
fùnǚ	妇女	85.5

G

gǎnjué	感觉	237.5

gǎnxiè	感谢	77.4
gàn ma?	干吗?	30.4
gāngtiě	钢铁	206.2
gē	哥	55.1
gēge	哥哥	55.2
gērmen	哥儿们	51.5/55.5
gèbié	个别	45.5
gègè	个个	45.3
gèrén	个人	45.4
ge	个	45.1
gōng	工	96.1
gōngchǎng	工厂	96.5
gōngyè	工业	96.4
gōngzī	工资	96.3
gōngzuò	工作	96.2
gōng	公	179.1
gōnggòng	公共	179.2/243.5
gōnggòngqìchē	公共汽车	207.4
gōngjīn	公斤	179.4
gōnglǐ	公里	179.3
gōngshēng	公升	179.4
gōngyuán	公园	180.2
Gōngyuán	公元	156.4
Gōngyuánqián	公元前	156.5
gòng	共	243.1
gònghéguó	共和国	243.5
gòngtóng	共同	243.2
gǒu	狗	88.1
gǒupì	狗屁	88.5
gǒuxióng	狗熊	88.4
gūmā	姑妈	66.5
gǔdiǎn	古典	166.5
guì	贵	22.1
guìguó	贵国	22.3
guìxìng	贵姓	22.2
guó	国	26.1
guójì	国际	26.5
guójiā	国家	26.2
guóqìng	国庆	26.4
guò	过	186.1
guòmǐn	过敏	186.2
guòqù	过去	186.3
guòshí	过时	186.4
H		
hái	还	59.1
hái yǒu	还有	59.2
háishi	还是	24.5/59.3
hái	孩	87.1
háizi	孩子	84.2
háizihuà	孩子话	87.5
háiziqì	孩子气	87.4
hǎi	海	221.1
hǎibá	海拔	221.2
hǎibian	海边	175.5/221.3
hǎiwài	海外	221.4
Hàn	汉	46.1
Hànxué	汉学	46.5
Hànyǔ	汉语	46.2
Hànzì	汉字	15.5/46.3
Hànzú	汉族	46.4
hǎo	好	17.1
hǎo ma?	好吗?	30.1
hǎobàn	好办	17.2
hǎochī	好吃	17.3
hǎochù	好处	17.4
hǎokàn	好看	17.5
hǎoxiàng shì ... ba	好像是... 吧	159.4
hé	和	54.1
héhǎo	和好	54.2
hémù	和睦	54.4
hépíng	和平	54.3
héqì	和气	54.5
héyǐng	合影	130.5
hěn	很	71.1
hěnduō	很多	71.4
hěn hǎo	很好	71.2
hěn huài	很坏	71.3
hěn jìn	很近	71.5
hòu	后	172.1

hòubà	后爸	65.3
hòuguǒ	后果	172.4
hòumā	后妈	66.3
hòumian	后面	172.2
hòutiān	后天	172.3
hòu	候	112.1
húshuō-bādào	胡说八道	8.4
huāyuán	花园	180.3
huāyàng	花样	73.5
huān	欢	218.1
huānjù	欢聚	218.3
huānlè	欢乐	218.4
huānxǐ	欢喜	217.4/218.2
huānyíng	欢迎	218.5
huán	还	59.4
huánjià	还价	59.5
huì	会	41.1/41.2
huì ... ba	会 ... 吧	159.3
huìhuà	会话	41.4
huìyì	会议	41.5
huó	活	233.1
huódòng	活动	233.2
huólì	活力	233.3
huópō	活泼	233.4
huǒ	火	247.1
huǒchái	火柴	247.3
huǒchē	火车	207.3/247.2
huǒchēzhàn	火车站	248.2
huǒhou	火候	247.4
huǒqì	火气	247.5
huò	或	245.1
huòshì	或是	245.2
huòzhě	或者	245.3
huòxǔ	或许	245.4

J

jǐ	几	63.1
jǐ cì	几次	63.3
jǐ ge	几个	63.2
jǐfēn	几分	63.5
jǐshí	几时	63.4
jìfù	继父	74.3
jìzhě	记者	246.4
jiā	家	62.1
jiāchángcài	家常菜	62.3
jiātíng	家庭	62.2
jiāwùshì	家务事	62.4
jiàqī	假期	134.3
jiān	间	216.1
jiàn	见	190.1
jiànmiàn	见面	190.2
jiànshi	见识	190.3
jiànxiào	见笑	190.4
jiàn	件	145.1
jiǎobù	脚步	120.3
jiào	叫	11.1
jiàohǎn	叫喊	11.4
jiàomén	叫门	11.3
jiàozuò	叫座	11.5
jiàozuò	叫做	11.2
jiào	觉	237.1
jiào	校	178.1
jiàoduì	校对	178.2
jiào	较	224.1
jiàoliàng	较量	224.4
jiàowéi	较为	224.5
jiē	街	188.1
jiēdào	街道	188.2
jiě	姐	56.1
jiěfu	姐夫	56.4/58.4
jiějie	姐姐	56.3
jiěmèi	姐妹	58.5
jīn	今	121.1
jīnhòu	今后	121.5
jīnnián	今年	121.4
jīntiān	今天	121.2
jīnwǎn	今晚	121.3
jìn	进	136.1
jìnbù	进步	120.3/136.3
jìnchéng	进城	137.4

jìnchūkǒu 进出口 136.4
jìnlai 进来 136.2
jìnxíng 进行 136.5
jìn 近 191.1
jìnbiàn 近便 191.4
jìnlái 近来 191.2
jìnshì 近视 191.3
jīng 京 209.1
Jīngjù 京剧 209.5
jīng 经 214.1
jīngcháng 经常 214.2
jīngguò 经过 214.3
jīnglǐ 经理 214.4
jīngyàn 经验 214.5
jiǔ 九 9.1
jiǔjiǔbiǎo 九九表 9.2
jiǔjífēng 九级风 9.3
jiǔgōnggér 九宫格儿 9.4
Jiǔyīyī 九一一 9.5
jiǔ 久 212.1
jiǔděng 久等 212.3
jiǔliú 久留 212.4
jiù 就 158.1
jiùshì 就是 157.2
jiùshǒu 就手 158.3
jiùsuàn 就算 158.5
jiùyào 就要 158.4
jiù ... ba 就 ... 吧 159.2
juéde 觉得 237.4

K
kàn 看 128.1
kàn diànyǐng 看电影 128.2
kànjiàn 看见 128.4
kànlái 看来 128.5
kànshū 看书 128.3
kě 可 241.1
kě’ài 可爱 241.3
kěnéng 可能 241.5
kěshì 可是 241.2
kěyǐ 可以 241.4
kōng 空 127.1
kōngqì 空气 127.2
kōngtiáo 空调 127.3
kòngr 空儿 127.4
kòngxián 空闲 127.5
kǒu 口 64.1
kǒufú 口福 64.2
kǒuqì 口气 64.4
kǒuwèi 口味 64.3
kǒuyīn 口音 64.5
kuài 块 148.1

L
là de 辣的 34.2
lái 来 211.1
láibují 来不及 211.2
láihuí 来回 211.3
láiwǎng 来往 211.4
lǎo 老 69.1
lǎopéngyou 老朋友 35.5
lǎobǎixìng 老百姓 23.4
lǎodà 老大 69.2
lǎopo 老婆 69.3
lǎoshī 老师 70.2
lǎoshi 老实 69.5
lǎowài 老外 69.4
lǎoxiōng 老兄 61.2
le 了 106.1/106.2/106.3
lěng 冷 219.1
lěngbīngbīng 冷冰冰 219.5
lěngjìng 冷静 219.2
lěngluò 冷落 219.4
lěngshuǐ 冷水 219.3
lí 离 181.1
líbié 离别 181.4
líkāi 离开 181.3
líhūn 离婚 181.2
lítí 离题 181.5
lǐ 里 82.1

lǐbian 里边 82.4
lǐtou 里头 82.5
liàn 练 162.1
liànwǔ 练武 162.5
liànxí 练习 162.2
liànxíběn 练习本 162.3
liànxítí 练习题 162.4
liǎng 两 60.1
liǎng cì 两次 60.3
liǎng ge 两个 60.2/45.2
liǎng suì 两岁 60.4
liǎngbànr 两半儿 60.5
liǎngpáng 两旁 174.3
líng 零 160.1
língjiàn 零件 145.3
língqián 零钱 146.4/160.4
língsuì 零碎 160.3
língxià 零下 160.2
língyòngqián 零用钱 160.5
liù 六 6.1
Liùyī 六一 6.4
Liùyuè 六月 6.2
lù 路 194.1
lùbiāo 路标 194.2
lùkǒu 路口 194.4
lùshang 路上 194.3
lùxiàn 路线 194.5
luànqībāzāo 乱七八糟 8.5
lǜshī 律师 70.5

M

mā 妈 66.1
māma 妈妈 66.2
mǎ 马 193.1
mǎhu 马虎 193.3
Mǎlāsōng 马拉松 193.5
mǎlù 马路 193.2
mǎshàng 马上 193.4
ma 吗 30.1
mǎi 买 138.1
mǎibudào 买不到 138.5
mǎibuqǐ 买不起 138.3
mǎideqǐ 买得起 138.2
mǎimài 买卖 138.4/153.5
mài 卖 153.1
màilì 卖力 153.2
màinòng 卖弄 153.4
màizuò 卖座 153.3
máng 忙 100.1
mánglù 忙碌 100.3
mángzhe 忙着 100.2
máng ma? 忙吗? 30.3
mángrén 忙人 100.4
māo 猫 89.1
māotóuyīng 猫头鹰 89.5
máo 毛 143.1
máobǐ 毛笔 143.3
máobìng 毛病 143.4
máoyī 毛衣 143.2/144.2
me 么 13.1
méi 没 53.1
méiyǒu 没有 53.2
méi guānxi 没关系 53.3
méi yìsi 没意思 53.4
méiwán-méiliǎo 没完没了 53.5
měi 美 29.1
Měiguó 美国 29.5
měihǎo 美好 29.3
měihuà 美化 29.4
měilì 美丽 29.2
Měiyuán 美元 156.2
měi 每 135.1
měi ge xīngqī 每个星期 135.4
měiměi 每每 135.5
měinián 每年 135.3
měitiān 每天 135.2
mèi 妹 58.1
mèifu 妹夫 58.4

men	们	51.0
mǐfàn	米饭	110.5
miàn	面	173.1
miànji	面积	173.4
miànmào	面貌	173.2
miànshú	面熟	173.3
miàntiáo	面条	187.5
miànzi	面子	173.5
míng	名	14.1
míngpái	名牌	14.3
míngpiàn	名片	14.4
míngshèng	名胜	14.5
míngzi	名字	14.2
míng	明	123.1
míngbai	明白	123.2
míngtiān	明天	123.3
míngxiǎn	明显	123.4
míngzhī	明知	123.5
mò	末	232.1
mòbānchē	末班车	232.4
mòqī	末期	232.3
mòrì	末日	232.5
mǔ	母	75.1
mǔgǒu	母狗	88.3
mǔmāo	母猫	89.2
mǔqin	母亲	75.2/76.4
mǔxiào	母校	178.5
mǔyǔ	母语	75.4

N

nǎ	哪	25.1
nǎguórén	哪国人	25.5
nǎli	哪里	25.3/82.2
nǎr	哪儿	25.2
nǎxiē	哪些	25.4
nà	那	81.1
nà ge	那个	81.2
nàbian	那边	81.4
nàme	那么	13.2/81.3
náqù	拿去	132.5
nán	男	86.1
nán cèsuǒ	男厕所	86.5
nán’gāoyīn	男高音	86.4
nánháir	男孩儿	86.2
nánpéngyou	男朋友	35.3/86.3
nánshìmen	男士们	51.4
nán	南	210.1
Nánbànqiú	南半球	210.5
nánbian	南边	210.2
nánbù	南部	210.3
nánfāng	南方	210.4
Nánjīng	南京	209.3
nǎo	脑	151.1
nǎojīn	脑筋	151.2
nǎozhī	脑汁	151.3
ne	呢	238.1-238.5
néng	能	195.1
nénggàn	能干	195.3
nénggòu	能够	195.2
nénglì	能力	195.4
néngyuán	能源	195.5
nǐ	你	16.1
nǐ hǎo!	你好	16.2
nǐmen	你们	16.3/51.1
nǐmen hǎo!	你们好	16.4
nǐmende	你们的	16.5
nián	年	126.1
niánjì	年纪	126.3
niánqīng	年轻	126.4
niánsuì	年岁	93.3
nín	您	21.1
nín hǎo!	您好！	21.2
nín zǎo!	您早！	21.3
nǚ	女	85.1
nǚ’ér	女儿	85.2
nǚháizi	女孩子	87.3
nǚqiángrén	女强人	85.3
nǚshēng	女生	85.4

nǚpéngyou	女朋友	35.4
nǚshìmen	女士们	51.3

P

páng	旁	174.1
pángbiān	旁边	174.2
pángguānzhě	旁观者	174.4/246.5
pángtīng	旁听	174.5
pǎo	跑	119.1
pǎobù	跑步	119.2
pǎodào	跑道	119.3
pèijiàn	配件	145.4
péng	朋	35.1
péngyou	朋友	35.2
piányi	便宜	149.5/150.4
píngcháng	平常	225.5
píngguǒyuán	苹果园	180.4

Q

qī	七	7.1
qī tiān	七天	7.2
Qīyuè	七月	7.3
qīqībābā	七七八八	7.4
qīshàng-bāluò	七上八落	7.5
qīzi	妻子	84.5
qī	期	134.1
qījiān	期间	134.2
qítā	其他 / 其它	31.5/168.4
qǐ	起	117.1
qǐchuáng	起床	117.2
qǐdòng	起动	117.3
qǐmǎ	起码	117.4
qìhòu	气候	112.4
qì	汽	244.1
qìchē	汽车	244.4
qìchuán	汽船	244.5
qìshuǐ	汽水	244.3
qìyóu	汽油	244.2
qiān	千	154.1
qiānfāng-bǎijì	千方百计	154.4
qiānlǐ	千里	154.2
qiān piān yī lǜ	千篇一律	154.5
qiānwàn	千万	154.3
qián	前	171.1
qiánbian	前边	171.3
qiánmian	前面	171.2
qiántiān	前天	171.4
qiántú	前途	171.5
qián	钱	146.1
qiánbāo	钱包	146.2
qīn	亲	76.1
qīnqi	亲戚	76.5
qīnrén	亲人	76.2
qǐng	请	19.1/19.2
qǐngjiào	请教	19.5
qǐng jìnlai	请进来	19.4
qǐngwèn	请问	19.3
qù	去	132.1
qùchù	去处	132.2
qùnián	去年	126.2/132.4
qùshì	去世	132.3

R

rè	热	223.1/223.5
rèdài	热带	223.2
rèdiǎn	热点	223.3
rèqíng	热情	223.4
rén	人	27.1
rénjia	人家	62.5
rénkǒu	人口	27.4
rénmen	人们	27.2
rénshān-rénhǎi	人山人海	27.5
rèn	认	47.1
rènshi	认识	47.2
rènzì	认字	47.3
rènde	认得	47.4
rènzhēn	认真	47.5
rì	日	125.1
Rìběn	日本	125.5
rìcháng	日常	125.4

rìjì	日记	125.3
rìqī	日期	125.2
ruǎnjiàn	软件	145.2

S

sàipǎo	赛跑	119.4
sān	三	3.1
sān ge yuè	三个月	3.3
sānjiǎoxíng	三角形	3.2
sānmèi	三妹	58.2
sāntóu-liùbì	三头六臂	6.5
sānxīn-èryì	三心二意	3.5
shāng	商	141.1
shāngdiàn	商店	141.3
shāngliang	商量	141.5
shāngrén	商人	141.2
shāngyè	商业	141.4
shàng	上	113.1/113.2
shàng ge yuè	上个月	124.3
shàng xīngqī	上星期	133.4
shàngbian	上边	175.1
Shànghǎi	上海	221.5
shàngjiē	上街	188.4
shàngmian	上面	113.3
shàngwǔ	上午	113.4
shàngxué	上学	113.5
shǎo	少	44.1
shǎoshù	少数	44.3
shàonián	少年	44.5
shéi	谁	33.1
shéi zhīdao	谁知道	33.3
shéide	谁的	33.2
shēn	身	78.1
shēncái	身材	78.4
shēn’gāo	身高	78.5
shēnshang	身上	78.3
shēntǐ	身体	78.2/79.2
shén	什	12.0
shénme	什么	12.1
shénme?	什么？	12.2
shénmede	什么的	12.3
shēng	生	99.1
shēngchǎn	生产	99.5
shēngcí	生词	99.3/165.3
shēnghuó	生活	233.5
shēngrì	生日	99.2
shī	师	70.1
shīfu	师父	70.3
shīmǔ	师母	70.4
shí	十	10.1
shífēn	十分	10.2
shíquán-shíměi	十全十美	10.5
shízì lùkǒu	十字路口	10.4
shízú	十足	10.3
shí	时	111.1
shíhou	时候	111.3
shíjī	时机	111.4
shíjiān	时间	111.2/216.2
shímáo	时髦	111.5
shí	识	48.1
shíbié	识别	48.2
shíhuò	识货	48.3
shízì	识字	48.4
shízài	实在	102.5
shì	是	24.1
shìde	是的	24.2
shìbushì	是不是	24.4
shìyí	适宜	150.5
shǒudū	首都	80.3
shǒu	手	199.1
shǒuqì	手气	199.3
shǒuxù	手续	199.5
shǒuyì	手艺	199.4
shǒuzhǐ	手纸	199.2
shū	书	164.1
shūbāo	书包	164.2
shūdiàn	书店	142.2/164.3
shūfǎ	书法	164.5
shūjià	书架	164.4
shūxiě	书写	42.5

shuāngrénchuáng	双人床	118.5
shuí	谁	33.1
shuí zhīdao	谁知道	33.3
shuíde	谁的	33.2
shuǐchí	水池	229.3
shuì	睡	236.1
shuì lǎnjiào	睡懒觉	237.2
shuì wǔjiào	睡午觉	237.3
shuìjiào	睡觉	236.2
shuìmián	睡眠	236.4
shuìyī	睡衣	236.5
shuō	说	49.1
shuōbudìng	说不定	49.4
shuōfú	说服	49.5
shuōhuà	说话	49.2
shuōhuǎng	说谎	49.3
sì	四	4.1
Sìchuān	四川	4.4
sìfāng	四方	4.2
sìjì	四季	4.3
sìtōng-bādá	四通八达	4.5
suì	岁	93.1
suìshù	岁数	93.2
suìyuè	岁月	93.4

T

tā	他	31.1
tāmāde	他妈的	31.4
tārén	他人	31.3
tā	她	32.1
tāde	她的	32.2
tāmen	他们	31.2
tāmen	她们	32.3
tāmende	他们的	32.4
tā	它	168.1
tāde	它的	168.2
tāmen	它们	168.3
tái	台	152.1
Táiběi	台北	152.4
táijiē	台阶	152.2
táiqiú	台球	152.5
Táiwān	台湾	152.3
tài	太	157.1
tàijíquán	太极拳	157.5
tàikōng	太空	157.3
Tàipíngyáng	太平洋	157.4
tàiyáng	太阳	157.2
Tángrénjiē	唐人街	188.5
tǐ	体	79.1
tǐlì	体力	79.4
tǐtiē	体贴	79.5
tǐwēn	体温	79.3
tiān	天	122.1
tiāncái	天才	122.2
tiānqì	天气	122.3
tiānrán	天然	122.4
tiānzhēn	天真	122.5
tiáo	条	187.1
tiáojiàn	条件	187.2
tiáolǐ	条理	187.3
tiě	铁	206.1
tiěfànwǎn	铁饭碗	206.5
tiělù	铁路	206.3
tóngxìng	同姓	23.5
túdì	徒弟	57.5

W

wāyǒng	蛙泳	228.3
wài	外	192.1
wàibian	外边	175.4
wàibiǎo	外表	192.3
wàiguórén	外国人	192.4
wàimian	外面	192.2
wàirén	外人	192.5
wàiyǔ	外语	50.2
wàizǔmǔ	外祖母	75.2
wǎn	晚	116.1
wǎnbān	晚班	116.4
wǎndiǎn	晚点	103.3/116.5
wǎnfàn	晚饭	116.3

wǎnshang	晚上	116.2
wàn	万	155.1
wànshì	万事	155.4
wànyī	万一	155.5
wǎng	往	184.1
wǎngcháng	往常	184.3
wǎngfǎn	往返	184.4
wǎnglǎi	往来	184.5
wǎngwǎng	往往	184.2
wén	文	40.1
wénhuà	文化	40.4
wénjiàn	文件	145.5
wénjùdiàn	文具店	142.3
wénxué	文学	40.5
wénzì	文字	40.3
wèn	问	20.1
wèndá	问答	20.2
wènhǎo	问好	20.4
wènhòu	问候	112.5
wèntí	问题	20.3
wǒ	我	18.1
wǒmen	我们	18.2
wǒmende	我们的	18.3
wǔ	五	5.1
wǔ diǎn líng qī fēn	五点零七分	103.2
wǔ ge yuè	五个月	5.3
Wǔyuè	五月	5.2
wǔ tǐ tóu dì	五体投地	5.4
wǔyán-liùsè	五颜六色	5.5
wǔ	午	115.1
wǔfàn	午饭	115.3
wǔjiān	午间	115.5
wǔshuì	午睡	115.4/236.3

X

xī	西	140.1
Xīcān	西餐	140.3
Xīfāng	西方	140.2
Xīshì	西式	140.5
Xīyào	西药	140.4
xí	习	163.1
xíguàn	习惯	163.2
xíqì	习气	163.4
xírǎn	习染	163.3
xísú	习俗	163.5
xǐ	喜	217.1
xǐ'ài	喜爱	217.2
xǐhuan	喜欢	217.3
xǐshì	喜事	217.5
xià	下	114.1
xià ge yuè	下个月	124.4
xiàbān	下班	114.3
xiàmian	下面	114.2
xiàwǔ	下午	114.4
xià xīngqī	下星期	133.5
xiàyǔ	下雨	114.5/226.3
xià	夏	222.1
xiàlìngshí	夏令时	222.3
xiàlìngyíng	夏令营	222.4
xiàtiān	夏天	222.2
xiàzhuāng	夏装	222.5
xiàn	现	101.1
xiànchéng	现成	104.4
xiànjīn	现金	101.3
xiànzài	现在	101.2
xiāngjiào	相较	224.3
xiǎo	小	92.1
xiǎochī	小吃	92.4
xiǎogǒu	小狗	92.3/88.2
xiǎojie	小姐	56.5
xiǎomāo	小猫	89.3
xiǎomèi	小妹	58.3
xiǎoshi	小时	92.2
xiǎoshīhou	小时候	92.3
xiǎoxiě	小写	42.4
xiǎoxīn	小心	92.5
xiào	校	178.1
xiàoyuán	校园	178.4
xiě	写	42.1
xiězuò	写作	42.2

xiè	谢	77.1
xiètiān-xièdì	谢天谢地	77.5
xièxie	谢谢	77.2
xīng	星	133.1
xīngqī	星期	133.2
Xīngqīliù	星期六	6.3
Xīngqīsān	星期三	3.4
xìngyùn	幸运	239.3
xìng	姓	23.1
xìngmíng	姓名	23.2
xìngshì	姓氏	23.3
xiōng	兄	61.1
xiōngdì	兄弟	61.2
xué	学	37.1
xuéfèi	学费	37.5
xuéqī	学期	134.4
xuésheng	学生	37.2
xuéshí	学识	48.5
xuéwèn	学问	20.5
xuéxí	学习	37.3
xuéxiào	学校	37.4/178.3

Y

yāsuìqián	压岁钱	146.5
yàng	样	73.1
yàngzi	样子	73.3
yàome	要么	13.5
.. yěba, ... yěba	也罢 ... 也罢	68.5
yě	也	68.1
yě ... yě	也 ... 也	68.2
yěhǎo	也好	68.5
yěxǔ	也许	68.3
yèjiān	夜间	216.5
yī	一	1.1
yī qiānwàn	一千万	155.3
yí cì	一次	1.4
yí ge	一个	1.2
yí kèzhōng	一刻钟	104.3
yíbàn	一半	107.2
yígòng	一共	243.3
yíhuìr	一会儿	41.3
yí kuài qián	一块钱	148.3
yíkuàir	一块儿	148.4
yíyàng	一样	73.4
yì běn (shū)	一本（书）	1.3
yì máo (qián)	一毛（钱）	143.5
yìqǐ	一起	117.5
yìzhí	一直	183.2
yī	衣	144.1
yīfu	衣服	144.3
yījià	衣架	144.5
yīliào	衣料	144.4
yī	医	98.1
yīkē	医科	98.5
yīshēng	医生	98.2
yīwùsuǒ	医务所	98.3
yīyuàn	医院	98.4/177.3
yí	宜	150.1
yírén	宜人	150.3
yímā	姨妈	66.4
yǐ	已	213.1
yǐjīng	已经	213.2
yǐwǎng	已往	213.3
yǐ	以	242.1
yǐbiàn	以便	242.2
yǐhòu	以后	172.5/242.3
yǐqián	以前	242.4
yǐwéi	以为	242.5
yīng	英	39.1
Yīngguó	英国	39.3
yīngjùn	英俊	39.2
yīnglǐ	英里	39.5
Yīngwén	英文	40.2
Yīngyǔ	英语	39.4
yǐng	影	130.1
yǐngmí	影迷	130.2
yǐngxiǎng	影响	130.4
yǐngyìn	影印	130.3
yǒng	泳	228.1
yǒngdào	泳道	228.5

yòng	用	196.1
yòngchù	用处	196.2
yònggōng	用功	196.3
yònglì	用力	196.4
yòngxīn	用心	196.5
yóu	游	227.1
yóulǎn	游览	227.5
yóurén	游人	227.4
yóuxì	游戏	227.3
yóuyǒng	游泳	227.2/228.2
yóuyǒngchí	游泳池	229.2
yǒu	友	36.1
yǒuhǎo	友好	36.4
yǒuqíng	友情	36.2
yǒuyì	友谊	36.3
yǒu	有	52.1
yǒu shíhou	有时候	112.3
yǒu yìsi	有意思	52.4
yǒude	有的	34.3
yǒuhài	有害	52.5
yǒumíng	有名	52.2
yǒuqián	有钱	52.3/146.3
yòu	右	198.1
yòubian	右边	198.2
yòucè	右侧	198.3
yòushǒu	右手	198.4
yǔ	雨	226.1
yǔjì	雨季	226.4
yǔsǎn	雨伞	226.5
yǔ	语	50.1
yǔfǎ	语法	50.3
yǔkuài	鱼块	148.2
yǔqì	语气	50.5
yǔyán	语言	50.4
yùchí	浴池	229.4
yuán	元	156.1
Yuándàn	元旦	156.3
yuán	园	180.1
yuǎn	远	182.1
yuǎndà	远大	182.4
yuǎnchù	远处	182.2
yuǎnjìn	远近	182.3
yuàn	院	177.1
yuànzi	院子	177.2
yuè	月	124.1
yuèdú	阅读	161.5
yuèliang	月亮	124.5
yùn	运	239.1
yùnqì	运气	239.2
yùndòng	运动	239.4
yùnyòng	运用	239.5

Z

zài	在	102.1
zài jiā	在家	102.2
zàinèi	在内	102.3
zàiwài	在外	102.4
zài	再	189.1
zàicì	再次	189.2
zàijiàn	再见	189.3/190.5
zàisān	再三	189.4
zàishuō	再说	189.5
zánmen	咱们	51.2
zǎo	早	109.1
zǎochén	早晨	109.4
zǎofàn	早饭	109.2
zǎorì	早日	109.5
zǎoshang	早上	109.3
zěn	怎	72.1
zěnme	怎么	13.3/72.2
zěnmeyàng	怎么样	72.4/73.2
zěnyàng	怎样	72.3
zhàn	站	248.1
zhànlì	站立	248.3
zhànwěn	站稳	248.4
zhànzhù	站住	248.5
zhǎngdà	长大	215.4
zhǎngbèi	长辈	215.5
zhè	这	67.1
zhè ge	这个	67.2

zhè ge yuè	这个月	124.2
zhè ge xīngqī	这个星期	133.3
zhèlǐ	这里	82.3
zhème	这么	13.1
zhèr	这儿	67.3
zhèxiē	这些	67.4
zhèyàng	这样	67.5
zhě	者	246.1
zhènyǔ	阵雨	226.2
zhī	只	90.1
zhī	知	249.1
zhīdao	知道	249.2
zhījǐ	知己	249.3
zhīshi	知识	249.5
zhīyīn	知音	249.4
zhí	直	183.1
zhídào	直到	183.3
zhíjiē	直接	183.4
zhílái-zhíqù	直来直去	183.5
zhǐbù	止步	120.5
zhǐ	只	200.1
zhǐgù	只顾	200.2
zhǐshì	只是	200.3
zhǐyào ... jiù	只要 ... 就	200.4
zhǐyǒu	只有	200.5
zhōng	中	28.1
Zhōngcān	中餐	28.5
Zhōngguó	中国	28.3
Zhōngguórén	中国人	27.3
zhōngjí	中级	28.2
zhōngjiān	中间	216.3
Zhōngwén	中文	28.4
zhōngwǔ	中午	115.2
zhōng	钟	104.1
zhōngqíng	钟情	104.5
zhōngtóu	钟头	104.4
zhōu	周	231.1
zhōumò	周末	232.2
zhōunián	周年	231.3
zhōurì	周日	231.2
zhōushēn	周身	231.4
zhōuwéi	周围	231.5
zhù	住	201.1
zhùchù	住处	201.2
zhùhù	住户	201.3
zhùyuàn	住院	177.2/201.4
zhùzhái	住宅	201.5
zhù	助	170.1
zhùshǒu	助手	170.3
zhùxìng	助兴	170.4
zhùxuéjīn	助学金	170.5
zǐ	子	84.1
zǐnǚ	子女	84.3
zǐsūn	子孙	84.4
zì	字	15.1
zìdiǎn	字典	15.2
zìmǔ	字母	15.3
zìmù	字幕	15.4
zìwǒ	自我	18.4
zìyóuyǒng	自由泳	228.4
zǒu	走	185.1
zǒu-qīn fǎng-yǒu	走亲访友	36.5
zǒudòng	走动	185.3
zǒulù	走路	185.2
zǒushī	走失	185.4
zǒuyùn	走运	185.5
zǔfù	祖父	74.4
zuórì	昨日	131.3
zuótiān	昨天	131.1
zuótiānde	昨天的	34.3/131.2
zuówǎn	昨晚	131.4
zuóyè	昨夜	131.5
zuǒ	左	197.1
zuǒbian	左边	197.2
zuǒpiězi	左撇子	197.4
zuǒshǒu	左手	197.3
zuǒsī-yòuxiǎng	左思右想	198.5
zuǒyòu	左右	197.5
zuò	作	97.1
zuòjiā	作家	97.2

zuòwén	作文	97.3
zuòyè	作业	97.4
zuòyòng	作用	97.5
zuòzhě	作者	246.2
zuò	坐	204.1
zuò huǒchē	坐火车	204.2
zuòbān	坐班	204.5
zuòbuxià	坐不下	204.4
zuòwèi	坐位	204.3
zuò	做	95.1
zuò shēngyì	做生意	95.4
zuòcài	做菜	95.2
zuòmèng	做梦	95.5
zuòshì	做事	95.3

Radical Index

1 stroke

[一] #2

一	yī	1
七	qī	7
三	sān	3
下	xià	114
上	shàng	113
万	wàn	155
天	tiān	122
不	bù	38
五	wǔ	5
可	kě	241
东	dōng	139
再	zài	189
百	bǎi	147
来	lái	211
两	liǎng	60
面	miàn	173
哥	gē	55

[丨] #3

中	zhōng	28
北	běi	208
电	diàn	129
师	shī	70

[丿] #4

九	jiǔ	9
千	qiān	154
么	me	13
久	jiǔ	212
午	wǔ	115
长	cháng/zhǎng	215
生	shēng	99
乐	lè/yuè	278
年	nián	126
后	hòu	172

[乙] (㇖ ㇆ 乚) #5

了	le	106
习	xí	163
也	yě	68
书	shū	164
电	diàn	129
买	mǎi	138

2 strokes

[亠] #6

六	liù	6
京	jīng	209
离	lí	181
商	shāng	140
就	jiù	158

[冫] #7

冷	lěng	219

[冖] #8

写	xiě	42

[讠] #9

认	rèn	47
识	shí	48
词	cí	165
说	shuō	49
语	yǔ	50
请	qǐng	19
谁	shéi/shuí	33
谢	xiè	77

[二] #10

二	èr	2
五	wǔ	5
元	yuán	156

[十] #11

十	shí	10
半	bàn	17
直	zhí	183
卖	mài	153
南	nán	210

[匚] #13

医	yī	98

[⺊] #14

外	wài	192

[刂] #15

到	dào	202

[冂] #16

周	zhōu	231

[八] #17

八	bā	8
公	gōng	179
分	fēn	106
半	bàn	107
只	zhī/zhǐ	90/200
共	gòng	243
弟	dì	57
前	qián	171
首	shǒu	271

[人] #18

人	rén	27
个	ge	45
今	jīn	121
从	cóng	203
以	yǐ	242
会	huì	18

[亻] #19
什 shén 12
们 men 51
他 tā 31
件 jiàn 146
住 zhù 201
体 tǐ 79
作 zuò 97
你 nǐ 16
便 biàn/pián 149
候 hòu 112
做 zuò 95

[儿] #21
儿 ér 83
元 yuán 156
兄 xiōng 61

[几] #22
几 jǐ 63

[厶] #23
么 me 13
去 qù 132
台 tái 152
能 néng 195

[又] #24
友 yǒu 36
对 duì 176
欢 huān 218

[阝] (left) #27
院 yuàn 177

[阝] (right) #28
那 nà 81
都 dōu/dū 80

[刀] #30
分 fēn 106

[力] #31
动 dòng 234
助 zhù 170
男 nán 86

3 strokes

[氵] #32
汉 Hàn 46
池 chí 229
汽 qì 244
没 méi 53
泳 yǒng 228
活 huó 233
海 hǎi 221
游 yóu 227

[忄] #33
忙 máng 100

[宀] #34
它 tā 168
字 zì 15
宜 yí 150
家 jiā 62

[广] #36
床 chuáng 118
店 diàn 142

[门] #37
问 wèn 20
间 jiān 216

[辶] #38
边 biān 175
过 guò 186
这 zhè 66
进 jìn 136
远 yuǎn 182
运 yùn 239
还 hái/huán 59
近 jìn 191
道 dào 250

[工] #39
工 gōng 96
左 zuǒ 197

[土] #40
去 qù 132
在 zài 101
地 dì 205
坐 zuò 204
块 kuài 148
城 chéng 137

[士] #41
喜 xǐ 217

[艹] #42
英 yīng 39

[大] #43
太 tài 157
天 tiān 122
美 měi 29

[寸] #46
对 duì 176

[小 (⺌)] #49
小 xiǎo 92
少 shǎo 44
常 cháng 225

[口] #50
口 kǒu 64
右 yòu 198
可 kě 241

只	zhī/zhǐ	90/200
兄	xiōng	61
台	tái	152
叫	jiào	11
吃	chī	108
后	hòu	172
名	míng	14
吗	ma	30
吧	ba	159
知	zhī	249
和	hé	54
呢	ne	238
哪	nǎ	25
哥	gē	55
喜	xǐ	217

[囗] #51

四	sì	4
因	yīn	297
园	yuán	180
国	guó	26

[巾] #52

常	cháng	225
师	shī	70
帮	bāng	169

[山] #53

岁	suì	93

[彳] #54

很	hěn	71
往	wǎng	73
得	dé/de/děi	240
街	jiē	188

[彡] #55

影	yǐng	130

[夕] #56

名	míng	14
岁	suì	93
多	duō	43

[夂] #57

冬	dōng	220
条	tiáo	187
夏	xià	222

[犭] #58

狗	gǒu	88
猫	māo	89

[饣] #59

饭	fàn	110

[己] #62

已	yǐ	213

[女] #65

女	nǚ	85
她	tā	32
好	hǎo	17
妈	mā	66
妹	mèi	58
姐	jiě	56
姓	xìng	23

[子] #67

子	zǐ	84
学	xué	37
孩	hái	87

[纟] #68

练	liàn	162
经	jīng	214

[马] #69

马	mǎ	193

4 strokes

[灬] #71

点	diǎn	104
热	rè	223

[文] #73

文	wén	40

[方] #74

方	fāng	230
旁	páng	174

[火] #75

火	huǒ	247

[心] #76

怎	zěn	72
您	nín	21

[王] #79

现	xiàn	101

[木] #81

本	běn	167
末	mò	232
床	chuáng	118
条	tiáo	187
校	xiào	178
样	yàng	73

[车] #84

车	chē	207
较	jiào	224

[戈] #85

我	wǒ	18
或	huò	245

[比] #86

比	bǐ	94

[止] #88
步 bù 120

[日] #90
日 rì 125
早 zǎo 109
时 shí 111
明 míng 123
是 shì 24
星 xīng 133
昨 zuó 131
晚 wǎn 116

[曰] #91
者 zhě 246

[贝] #92
贵 guì 22

[见] #93
见 jiàn 190
现 xiàn 101
觉 jué 237

[父] #94
父 fù 74
爸 bà 65

[手] #96
手 shǒu 199

[毛] #97
毛 máo 143

[气] #98
气 qì 98

[爪(妥)] #102
爱 ài 235

[月] #103
月 yuè 124
有 yǒu 52
朋 péng 35
脑 nǎo 151
期 qī 134

[欠] #104
欢 huān 218

[母] #108
母 mǔ 75
每 měi 135

5 strokes

[穴] #110
空 kōng/kòng 127

[立] #111
站 zhàn 248
亲 qīn 76

[目] #118
目 mù 128
睡 shuì 236

[田] #119
男 nán 86

[钅] #122
钟 zhōng 104
钱 qián 122
铁 tiě 206

[矢] #123
知 zhī 249

[禾] #124
和 hé 54

[白] #125
百 bǎi 147
的 de 34

[用] #128
用 yòng 196

6 strokes

[衣] #132
衣 yī 144

[羊] #133
美 měi 29

[老] #136
老 lǎo 69

[西] #139
西 xī 140

7 strokes

[走] #156
走 zǒu 185
起 qǐ 117

[里] #163
里 lǐ 82

[足] #164
跑 pǎo 119
路 lù 194

[身] #168
身 shēn 78

8 strokes

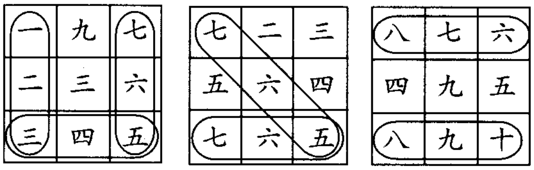
[其] #171
期 qī 134

[雨] #172
零 líng 160

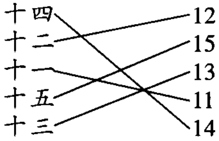
KEY

Quiz 1 (1–10)

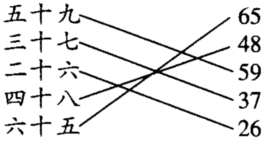
A.


一 九 七
二 三 六
三 四 五
七 二 三
五 六 四
七 六 五
八 七 六
四 九 五
八 九 十

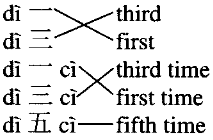
B. (i)


十四
十二
十一
十五
十三
12
15
13
11
14

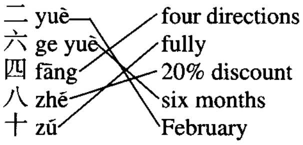
(ii)


五十九
三十七
二十六
四十八
六十五
65
48
59
37
26

C. (i)


dì 一
dì 三
dì 一 cì
dì 三 cì
dì 五 cì
third
first
third time
first time
fifth time

(ii)


二 yuè
六 ge yuè
四 fāng
八 zhé
十 zú
four directions
fully
20% discount
six months
February

D. (i)

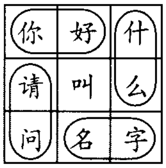
1. dì 七
2. 四 jì
3. 七 chéng
4. 十 zú
5. 二 děng

(ii)

6. xīngqī 四
7. 九 zhé
8. 九九 biǎo
9. 五 yān 六 sè
10. 三 xīn 二 yì

Quiz 2 (11–20)

A.

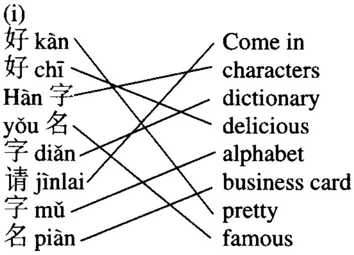


Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i) 你好	Nǐ hǎo	Hello!
(ii) 请问	Qǐngwèn . . .	May I ask . .
(iii) 什么	shénme	what
(iv) 名字	míngzi	name

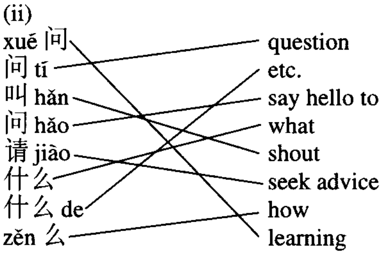
B.

Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i) Wǒ wèn nǐ.	我问你。	I ask you.
(ii) Nǐ wèn wǒ shénme?	你问我什么?	What did you ask me?
(iii) Wǒ jiào shénme míngzi?	我叫什么名字?	What's my name?

C. (i)

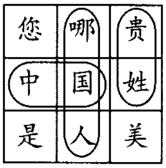

好 kàn
好 chī
Hàn 字
yǒu 名
字 diǎn
请 jìnlai
字 mǔ
名 piàn
Come in
characters
dictionary
delicious
alphabet
business card
pretty
famous

(ii)


xué 问
问 tí
叫 hǎn
问 hǎo
请 jiào
什么
什么 de
zěn 么
question
etc.
say hello to
what
shout
seek advice
how
learning

Quiz 3 (21–30)

A.

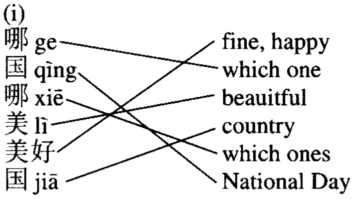


Word or phrase	Pinyin	Translation
(i) 贵姓	Guìxìng	What's your name?
(ii) 哪国人	nǎguórén	which nationality
(iii) 中国	Zhōngguó	China

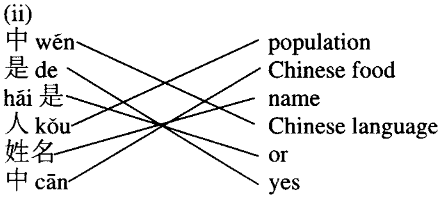
B.

Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i) Qǐngwèn, nín guìxìng?	请问，您贵姓?	Excuse me, may I ask your name?
(ii) Qǐngwèn, guìguó shì nǎguó?	请问，贵国是哪国?	Excuse me, which country do you come from?
(iii) Qǐngwèn, nǐ shì nǎguórén?	请问，你是哪国人?	Excuse me, what nationality are you?

C. (i)


哪 ge
国 qìng
哪 xiē
美 lì
美好
国 jiā
fine, happy
which one
beauitful
country
which ones
National Day

(ii)


中 wén
是 de
hái 是
人 kǒu
姓名
中 cān
population
Chinese food
name
Chinese language
or
yes

Quiz 4 (31–40)

A.

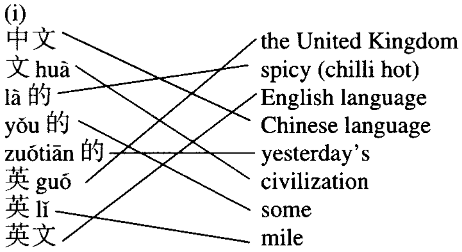
她	朋	友
学	英	文
不	谁	的

	Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i)	朋友	péngyou	friend/s
(ii)	学英文	xué Yīngwén	learn English
(iii)	谁的	shuí/shéi'de	whose

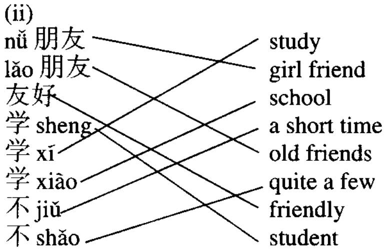
B.

	Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i)	Shuí/shéi de péngyou?	谁的朋友?	Whose friend is this?
(ii)	Tā xué bù xué Zhōngwén	她/他学不学中文?	Does she/he study Chinese?
(iii)	Bù, tā xué Yīngwén.	不，她/他学英文。	No, she/he studies English.

C. (i)


中文
文 huà
là 的
yǒu 的
zuótiān 的
英 guó
英 lǐ
英文
the United Kingdom
spicy (chilli hot)
English language
Chinese language
yesterday's
civilization
some
mile

(ii)


nǚ 朋友
lǎo 朋友
友好
学 sheng
学 xí
学 xiào
不 jiǔ
不 shǎo
study
girl friend
school
a short time
old friends
quite a few
friendly
student

Quiz 5 (41–50)

A.

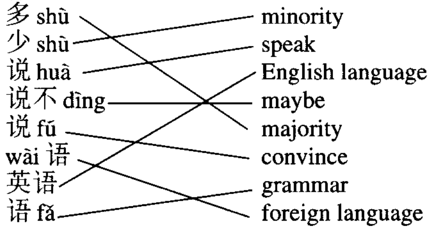
多	少	说
写	会	汉
认	识	语

	Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i)	多少	duōshao	how many/much
(ii)	说汉语	shuō Hànyǔ	speak Chinese
(iii)	认识	rènshi	recognize

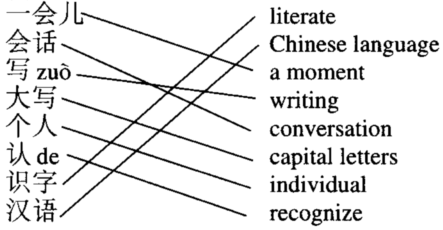
B.

	Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i)	Nǐ huì shuō Hànyǔ ma?	你会说汉语吗?	Can you speak Chinese?
(ii)	Nǐ huì bùhuì xiě Hànzì?	你会不会写汉字?	Can you write Chinese characters?
(iii)	Nǐ huì xiě duōshao Hànzì?	你会写多少汉字?	How many Chinese characters can you write?
(iv)	Tā bùhuì xiě Hànzì.	他/她不会写汉字。	He/she can't write Chinese characters.

C. (i)


多 shù
少 shù
说 huà
说不 dìng
说 fú
wài 语
英语
语 fǎ
minority
speak
English language
maybe
majority
convince
grammar
foreign language

(ii)


一会儿
会话
写 zuò
大写
个人
认 de
识字
汉语
literate
Chinese language
a moment
writing
conversation
capital letters
individual
recognize

Character Building 1 (1–50)

A. 1. [一] 一 *yī*, one; 三 *sān*, three; 五 *wǔ*, five; 七 *qī*, seven; 不 *bù*, not.
2. [丿] 九 *jiǔ*, nine; 么 *me*, particle.
3. [讠] 请 *qíng*, please; 谁 *shéi/shuí*, who; 认 *rên*, recognize; 识 *shí*, know; 语 *yǔ*, language; 说 *shuō*, speak.
4 [人] 人 *rén*, person, people; 个 *ge*, classifier; 会 *huì*, be able to.
5. [亻] 你 *nǐ*, you (singular); 他 *tā*, he, him; 什 *shén*, head word for *shénme*, what.
6. [口] 叫 *jiào*, be called; 哪 *nǎ*, which; 名 *míng*, given name; 吗 *ma*, question particle.
7. [囗] 四 *sì*, four; 国 *guó*, country.
8. [女] 好 *hǎo*, good, well; 她 *tā*, she, her; 姓 *xìng*, be surnamed.

B. 1. [丨] 中 *zhōng*, middle
2. [八] 八 *bā*, eight
3. [冖] 写 *xiě*, write
4. [二] 二 *èr*, two
5. [亠] 六 *liù*, six
6. [十] 十 *shí*, ten
7 [又] 友 *yǒu*, friend
8 [氵] 汉 *Hàn*, ethnic Han race
9 [艹] 英 *yīng*, hero
10. [小] 少 *shǎo*, few
11. [夕] 多 *duō*, many/much
12. [文] 文 *wén*, script
13. [心] 您 *nín*, you (polite)
14. [戈] 我 *wǒ*, I, me
15. [日] 是 *shì*, to be
16. [贝] 贵 *guì*, expensive
17. [白] 白 *bái*, white
18. [羊] 美 *měi*, beautiful

C 1 [夕] 名 *míng*, given name;
多 *duō*, many, much
2 [口] 名 *míng*, given name
问 *wèn*, ask
3 [中] 中 *zhōng*, middle
贵 *guì*, honorific, expensive
4 [子] 好 *hǎo*, good, well;
学 *xué*, learn, study,
字 *zì*, character
5. [又] 汉 *Hàn*, ethnic Chinese;
友 *yǒu*, friend
6. [也] 他 *tā*, he, him;
她 *tā*, she, her
7. [人] 人 *rén*, people, person;
认 *rèn*, recognize
8. [小] 你 *nǐ*, you (singular);
少 *shǎo*, few, less

Review 1 (1–50)

A.

Pronouns
我 *wǒ*, I, me; 我的 *wǒde*, my, mine;
你 *nǐ*, you (singular); 你的 *nǐde*, your (singular);
他 *tā*, he, him; 他的 *tāde*, his;
她 *tā*, she, her; 她的 *tāde*, her, hers

Interrogative pronouns
什么 *shénme*, what; 哪 *nǎ*, which;
谁 *shéi/shuí*, who; 多少 *duōshao*, how many/much

Nouns
人 *rén*, person, people;
朋友 *péngyou*, friend;
中文 *Zhōngwén*, Chinese language;
英文 *Yīngwén*, English language;
汉语 *Hànyǔ*, Chinese language;
英语 *Yīngyǔ*, English language;
汉字 *Hànzì*, Chinese character;
中国 *Zhōngguó*, China;
英国 *Yīngguó*, the United Kingdom;
美国 *Měiguó*, the United States

Verbs
叫 *jiào*, be called; 姓 *xìng*, be surnamed;
是 *shì*, to be; 问 *wèn*, ask; 学 *xué*, learn, study;
写 *xiě*, write; 会 *huì*, be able to, can;
认识 *rènshi*, recognize

Numbers
一 *yī*, one; 二 *èr*, two; 三 *sān*, three; 四 *sì*, four; 五 *wǔ*, five; 六 *liù*, six; 七 *qī*, seven; 八 *bā*, eight; 九 *jiǔ*, nine; 十 *shí*, ten

Classifiers
个 *ge*, classifier

Noun phrases
中文名字 *Zhōngwén míngzi*, Chinese name;
英文名字 *Yīngwén míngzi*, English name;
中国朋友 *Zhōngguó péngyou*, Chinese friend;
英国朋友 *Yīngguó péngyou*, English friend;
美国朋友 *Měiguó péngyou*, American friend;
谁的朋友 *shéi/shuí'de péngyou*, whose friend;
哪国人 *nǎguórén*, which nationality

Word/Sentence Puzzle 1

ACROSS (left to right)

2. (i) Chinese friend/s
   (ii) can write
3. do/does not say
4. How many characters do you know?
8. Which is your country (polite)?

DOWN

1. What nationality are you?
2. United Kingdom
3. (i) become literate
   (ii) What's your surname (polite)?
5. (i) quite a lot
   (ii) yes
6. Can you speak Chinese?
7. American

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1		英				你	
2	中	国	朋	友		会	写
3					不	说	
4	你	认	识	多	少	汉	字
5	是		字			语	
6	哪					吗	
7	国		您				美
8	人		贵	国	是	哪	国
9			姓		的		人

Quiz 6 (51–60)

A.

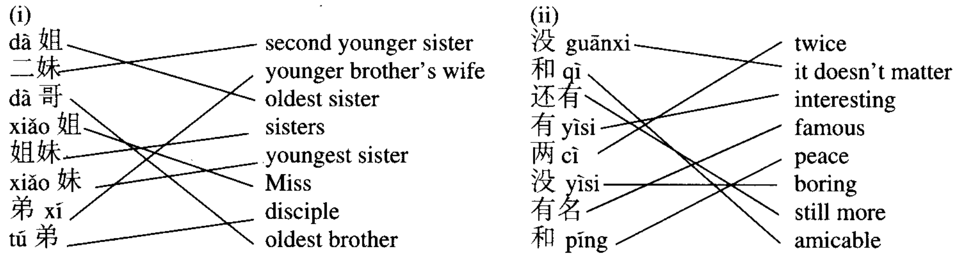
姐	个	妹	弟
美	她	们	和
国	还	是	两
人	没	有	哥

Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i) 美国人	Měiguórén	American/s
(ii) 她们	tāmen	they (females)
(iii) 还是	háishi	or
(iv) 没有	méiyǒu	not have, none

B.

Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i) Wǒ yǒu liǎng ge mèimei.	我有两个妹妹。	I have two younger sisters.
(ii) Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu jiějie?	你有没有姐姐?	Do you have an older sister (or older sisters)?
(iii) Tāmen shì Měiguórén.	她们是美国人。	They are Americans. (females)
(iii) Tā yǒu gēge hé dìdi.	他有哥哥和弟弟。	He has an older brother (or older brothers) and a younger brother (or younger brothers).

C.


(i)
dà 姐
二妹
dà 哥
xiǎo 姐
姐妹
xiǎo 妹
弟 xí
tú 弟
second younger sister
younger brother's wife
oldest sister
sisters
youngest sister
Miss
disciple
oldest brother
(ii)
没 guānxi
和 qì
还有
有 yìsi
两 cì
没 yìsi
有名
和 píng
twice
it doesn't matter
interesting
famous
peace
boring
still more
amicable

Quiz 7 (61–70)

A.

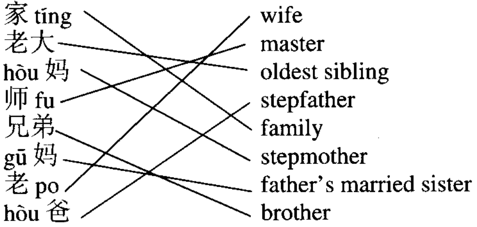
家	口	姐	人
和	兄	妹	还
老	弟	爸	有
师	几	妈	哥

Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i) 老师	lǎoshī	teacher
(ii) 兄弟	xiōngdì	brothers
(iii) 姐妹	jiěmèi	sisters
(iv) 还有	hái yǒu	still more

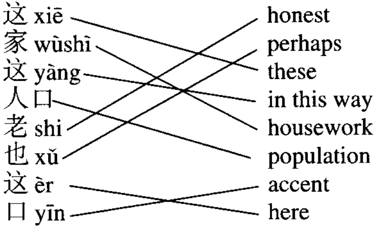
B.

Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i) Wǒ jiā yǒu sì kǒu rén.	我家有四口人。	There are four of us in our family.
(ii) Bàba, māma, jiějie hé wǒ.	爸爸、妈妈、姐姐和我。	My father, mother, older sister and myself.
(iii) Wǒ māma shì lǎoshī.	我妈妈是老师。	My mother is a teacher.
(iv) Nǐ yǒu jǐ ge xiōngdì jiěmèi?	你有几个兄弟姐妹？	How many brothers and sisters do you have?

C. (i)


家 tíng
老大
hòu 妈
师 fu
兄弟
gū 妈
老 po
hòu 爸
wife
master
oldest sibling
stepfather
family
stepmother
father's married sister
brother

(ii)


这 xiē
家 wùshì
这 yàng
人口
老 shi
也 xǔ
这 èr
口 yīn
honest
perhaps
these
in this way
housework
population
accent
here

Quiz 8 (71–80)

A.

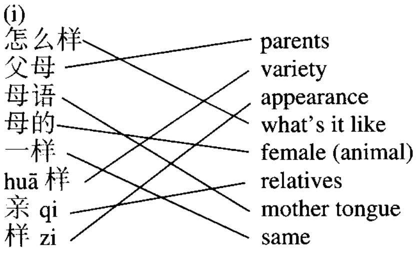
怎	很	都	谢
样	爸	身	这
父	母	体	家
语	亲	还	汉

Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i) 怎样	zěnyàng	how
(ii) 父母	fùmǔ	parents
(iii) 母亲	mǔqin	mother
(iv) 身体	shēntǐ	health

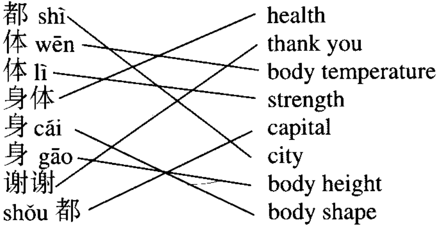
B.

Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i) Nǐ fùmǔ shēntǐ hǎo ma?	你父母身体好吗？	How are your parents (in terms of their health)?
(ii) Tāmen dōu hěn hǎo, xièxie.	他们都很好，谢谢。	They are fine, thank you.
(iii) Nǐde Hànyǔ zěnmeyàng?	你的汉语怎么样？	How is your Chinese?
(iii) Hái hǎo, xièxie.	还好，谢谢。	(I'm managing) all right, thank you.

C. (i)


怎么样
父母
母语
母的
一样
huā 样
亲 qi
样 zi
parents
variety
appearance
what's it like
female (animal)
relatives
mother tongue
same

(ii)


都 shì
体 wēn
体 lì
身体
身 cái
身 gāo
谢谢
shǒu 都
health
thank you
body temperature
strength
capital
city
body height
body shape

Quiz 9 (81–90)

A.

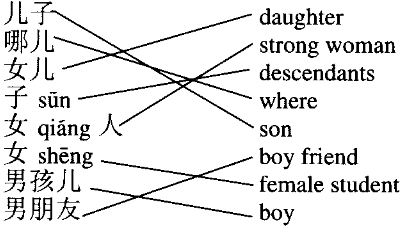
猫	女	哥	两
男	孩	那	有
母	里	儿	没
只	狗	子	家

Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i) 男孩	nánhái	boy
(ii) 女孩	nǚhái	girl
(iii) 那儿	nàr	there
(iv) 儿子	érzi	son

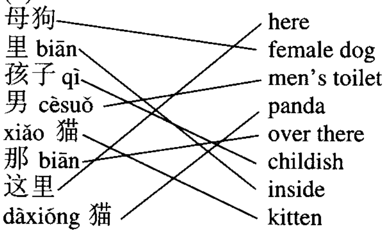
B.

Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i) Nǐ gēge yǒu méiyǒu háizi?	你哥哥有没有孩子？	Does your older brother have any children?
(ii) Wǒ gēge yǒu liǎng ge nǚ'ér.	我哥哥有两个女儿。	My older brother has two daughters.
(iii) Nǐ jiā yǒu méiyǒu gǒu?	你家有没有狗？	Do you have a dog in your household?
(iii) Méiyǒu, wǒ jiā yǒu yì zhī māo.	没有，我家有一只猫。	No, we don't. We have a cat.

C. (i)

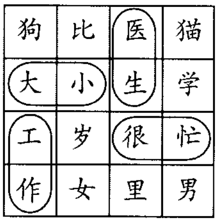

儿子
哪儿
女儿
子 sūn
女 qiāng 人
女 shēng
男孩儿
男朋友
daughter
strong woman
descendants
where
son
boy friend
female student
boy

(ii)


母狗
里 biān
孩子 qì
男 cèsuǒ
xiǎo 猫
那 biān
这里
dàxióng 猫
here
female dog
men's toilet
panda
over there
childish
inside
kitten

Quiz 10 (91–100)

A.



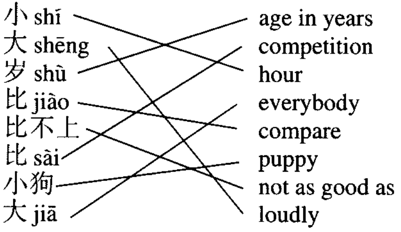
狗	比	医	猫
大	小	生	学
工	岁	很	忙
作	女	里	男

Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i) 大小	dàxiǎo	size
(ii) 工作	gōngzuò	work
(iii) 医生	yīshēng	doctor
(iv) 很忙	hěn máng	very busy

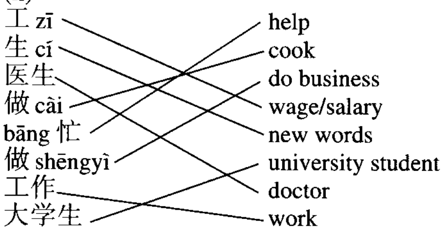
B.

Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i) Nǐ jiějie zuò shénme gōngzuò?	你姐姐做什么工作?	What work does your older sister do?
(ii) Tāde gōngzuò máng bu máng?	她的工作忙不忙?	Is her work very busy?
(iii) Nǐ gēge bǐ nǐ dà jǐ suì?	你哥哥比你大几岁?	What's the age difference between you and your older brother?
(iii) Nǐ mèimei bǐ nǐ xiǎo jǐ suì?	你妹妹比你小几岁?	What's the age difference between you and your younger sister?

C. (i)


小 shí
大 shēng
岁 shù
比 jiào
比不上
比 sài
小狗
大 jiā
age in years
competition
hour
everybody
compare
puppy
not as good as
loudly

(ii)


工 zī
生 cí
医生
做 cài
bāng 忙
做 shēngyì
工作
大学生
help
cook
do business
wage/salary
new words
university student
doctor
work

Character Building 2 (51–100)

A. 1. [一] 哥 *gē*, older brother; 两 *liǎng*, two (of something).

2. [丿] 生 *shēng*, birth, life; 九 *jiǔ*, nine; 么 *me*, particle .

3. [讠] 谢 *xiè*, thank; 谁 *shéi/shuí*, who; 语 *yǔ*, language; 说 *shuō*, speak;
认 *rèn*, recognize; 识 *shí*, know.

4. [八] 八 *bā*, eight; 弟 *dì*, younger brother.

5. [亻] 们 *-men*, plural suffix; 作 *zuò*, do; 体 *tǐ*, body; 做 *zuò*, make.

6. [阝] 那 *nà*, that; 都 *dōu*, all.

7. [氵] 没 *méi*, not have; 汉 *Hàn*, ethnic Chinese.

8. [宀] 家 *jiā*, home; 字 *zì*, character, script.

9. [辶] 这 *zhè*, this; 还 *hái*, still.

10. [小] 小 *xiǎo*, small; 少 *shǎo*, few.

11. [口] 口 *kǒu*, mouth; 只 *zhī*, classifier; 兄 *xiōng*, older brother (formal); 名 *míng*, given name.

12. [犭] 狗 *gǒu*, dog; 猫 *māo*, cat.

13. [女] 女 *nǚ*, female; 妈 *mā*, mother; 她 *tā*, she/her; 姐 *jiě*, older sister; 妹 *mèi*, younger sister.

14. [子] 子 *zǐ*, son/child; 学 *xué*, study learn; 孩 *hái*, child.

15. [心] 怎 *zěn*, how; 您 *nín*, you (polite).

16. [父] 父 *fù*, father (formal); 爸 *bà*, father.

17. [月] 有 *yǒu*, to have, to exist; 朋 *péng*, friend.

B. 1. [乛] 也 *yě*, also
2. [匚] 医 *yī*, treat, cure
3. [儿] 儿 *ér*, son
4. [几] 几 *jǐ*, how many
5. [力] 男 *nán*, male
6. [忄] 忙 *máng*, busy
7. [工] 工 *gōng*, work
8. [巾] 师 *shī*, teacher
9. [山] 岁 *suì*, age in years
10. [彳] 很 *hěn*, very
11. [木] 样 *yàng*, appearance
12. [匕] 比 *bǐ*, compare to
13. [立] 亲 *qin*, kin
14. [母] 母 *mǔ*, mother (formal)
15. [老] 老 *lǎo*, old
16. [身] 身 *shēn*, body
17. [里] 里 *lǐ*, inside

C. 1. [子] 子 *zǐ*, child; 学 *xué*, study; 字 *zì*, character; 孩 *hái*, child; 好 *hǎo*, good.
2. [儿] 儿 *ér*, son; 兄 *xiōng*, older brother (formal).
3. [也] 也 *yě*, also; 她 *tā*, she/her; 他 *tā*, he/him.

Review 2 (51–100)

A.

Pronouns
我们 *wǒmen*, we/us; 我们的 *wǒmende*, our/ours; 你们 *nǐmen*, you/your (plural); 你们的 *nǐmende*, your/yours; 他们 *tāmen*, they (including females); 他们的 *tāmende*, their/theirs (including female); 她们*tāmen*, they (female); 她们的*tāmende*, their/theirs (females).

Demostrative pronouns
这 *zhè*, this; 这些 *zhêxiē*, these; 这儿 *zhèr*, here; 这里 *zhèlǐ*, here; 那 *nâ*, that; 那些 *nǎxiē*, those; 那儿 *nâr*, there; 那里 *nâli*, there.

Interrogative pronouns
谁的 *shéi/shuí'de*, whose; 哪儿 *nǎr*, where; 哪里 *nǎli*, where; 怎么 *zěnme*, how; 怎样 *zěnyâng*, how, what; 怎么样 *zěnmeyâng*, what's it like; 几 *jǐ*, how many; 几个 *jǐ ge*, how many of (something).

Nouns
父亲 *fùqin*, father (formal); 母亲 *mǔqin*, mother (formal); 父母 *fùmǔ*, parents (formal); 哥哥 *gēge*, older brother; 姐姐 *jiějie*, older sister; 弟弟 *dìdi*, younger brother; 妹妹 *mèimei*, younger sister; 兄弟 *xiōngdì*, brothers; 姐妹 *jiěmèi*, sisters; 家 *jiā*, family, home; 国家 *guójiā*, nation; 大家 *dàjiā*, everybody; 人家 *rénjia*, other people; 孩子 *háizi*, child; 儿子 *érzi*, son; 女儿 *nǚ ér*, daughter; 身体 *shēntǐ*, health; 老师 *lǎoshī*, teacher; 医生 *yīshēng*, doctor; 学生 *xuésheng*, student; 狗 *gǒu*, dog; 猫 *māo*, cat; 岁 *suì*, age in years; 工作 *gōngzuò*, work.

Verbs
有 *yǒu*, have; 没有 *méiyǒu*, not have; 谢 *xiè*, thank; 做 *zuò*, do, make.

Adjectives
男 *nán*, male; 女 *nǚ*, female; 大 *dà*, big; 小 *xiǎo*, small; 忙 *máng*, busy.

Adverbs
很 *hěn*, very; 比 *bǐ*, compare.

Conjunctions
还 *hái*, still; 也 *yě*, also; 都 *dōu*, all

Numbers
两 *liǎng*, a couple

Classifiers
口 *kǒu* (for family members);
只 *zhī* (for animals, birds etc.).

Noun phrases
中国人口 *Zhōngguó rénkǒu*, population of China; 美国人口 *Měiguó rénkǒu*, population of the United States; 英国人口 *Yīngguó rénkǒu*, population of the United Kingdom; 小学生 *xiǎoxuésheng*, primary school pupil; 中学生 *zhōngxuésheng*, secondary school pupil; 大学生 *dàxuésheng*, university student; 好学生 *hǎo xuésheng*, good student; 好朋友 *hǎo péngyou*, good friend; 老朋友 *lǎo péngyou*, old friend; 男朋友 *nánpéngyou*, boy friend; 女朋友 *nǚpéngyou*, girl friend.

Word/Sentence Puzzle 2

ACROSS (left to right)

2. How many brothers and sisters do you have?
5. He speaks Chinese better than me.
7. (i) no
7. (ii) two jobs
9. boy
10. many primary school pupils and secondary school students
12. This dog is big.
13. kitten

DOWN

1. His parents are in good health.
3. Can you speak Chinese
4. female student
6. I have two cats and a dog.
8. second youngest brother
9. (i) male student;
   (ii) size
10. youngest sister

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
1								二		小
2			你	有	几	个	兄	弟	姐	妹
3			会							
4			说							
5	他	说	汉	语	比	我	说	的	好	
6	父		语			有				
7	母		不	是		两	个	工	作	
8	身		会			只				
9	体			女		猫			男	孩
10	很	多	小	学	生	和	中	学	生	
11	好			生		一				
12					这	只	狗	很	大	
13						狗			小	猫

Quiz 11 (101–110)

A.

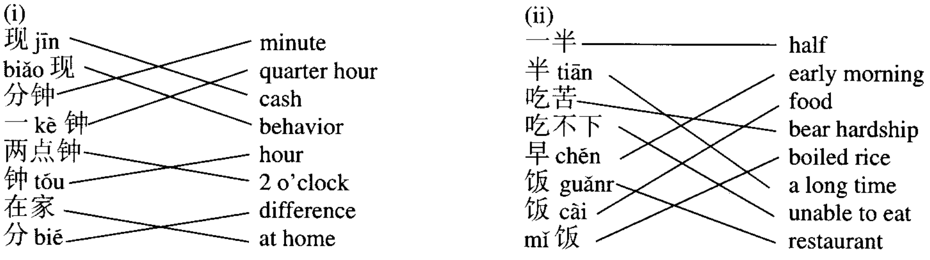
工	忙	作	吃
少	多	了	早
现	在	分	饭
几	点	钟	半

	Word or phrase	**Pinyin**	**English meaning**
(i)	现在	xiànzài	now
(ii)	几点钟	Jĭ diănzhōng	What time is it?
(iii)	分钟	fēnzhōng	minute
(iv)	吃早饭	chī zăofàn	eat breakfast

B.

Pinyin	**Characters**	**Translation**
(i) Xiànzài jĭ diănzhōng le?	现在几点钟了？	What's the time now?
(ii) Xiànzài liùdiănbàn le.	现在六点半了。	It's now 6:30.
(iii) Nĭmen jĭ diăn chī zăofàn?	你们几点吃早饭？	When do you eat (your) breakfast?
(iii) Wŏmen qīdiănbàn chī zăofàn.	我们七点半吃早饭。	We eat breakfast at 7:30.

C.


(i) (ii)
现 jīn
biăo 现
分钟
一 kè 钟
两点钟
钟 tóu
在家
分 bié
minute
quarter hour
cash
behavior
hour
2 o'clock
difference
at home
一半
半 tiān
吃苦
吃不下
早 chén
饭 guănr
饭 cài
mĭ 饭
half
early morning
food
bear hardship
boiled rice
a long time
unable to eat
restaurant

Quiz 12 (111–120)

A.

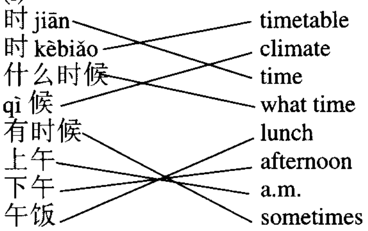
起	时	跑	步
床	晚	上	早
工	现	午	下
在	候	里	分

	Word or phrase	**Pinyin**	**English meaning**
(i)	起床	qĭchuáng	get ouf of bed
(ii)	跑步	păobù	jog
(iii)	晚上	wănshang	evening
(iv)	上午	shàngwŭ	a.m.

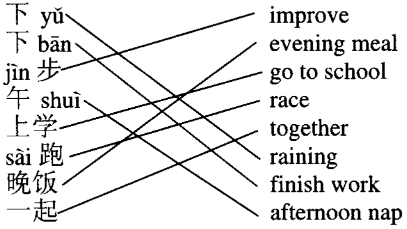
B.

	Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i)	Nǐ shénme shíhou qǐchuáng?	你什么时候起床？	What time do you get up?
(ii)	Wǒ qīdiǎnzhōng qǐchuáng.	我七点钟起床。	I get up at 7 o'clock.
(iii)	Nǐ pǎo bu pǎobù?	你跑不跑步？	Do you jog?
(iv)	Pǎo, yǒu shíhou pǎo.	跑，有时候跑。	Yes, I do. Sometimes I jog.

C. (i)


时 jiān
时 kèbiǎo
什么时候
qì 候
有时候
上午
下午
午饭
timetable
climate
time
what time
lunch
afternoon
a.m.
sometimes

(ii)


下 yǔ
下 bān
jìn 步
午 shuì
上学
sài 跑
晚饭
一起
improve
evening meal
go to school
race
together
raining
finish work
afternoon nap

Quiz 13 (121–130)

A.

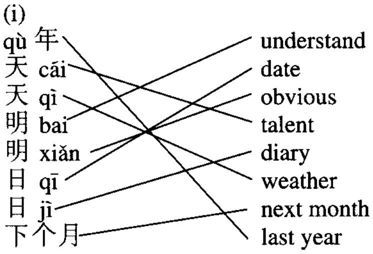
日	今	晚	吃
明	天	月	看
有	空	儿	电
做	作	生	影

	Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i)	今晚	jīnwǎn	tonight
(ii)	明天	míngtiān	tomorrow
(iii)	有空儿	yǒu kòngr	have free time
(iv)	看电影	kàn diànyǐng	see a movie

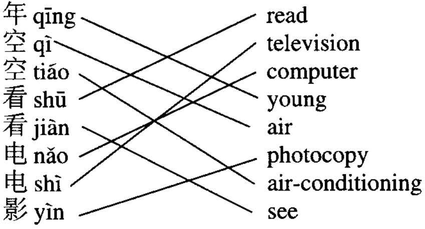
B.

	Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i)	Jīntiān shì Jiǔyuè-shíwǔrì.	今天是九月十五日。	Today is September 15th.
(ii)	Míngtiān shì wǒde shēngrì.	明天是我的生日。	Tomorrow is my birthday.
(iii)	Jīnwǎn nǐ yǒu kòngr ma?	今晚你有空儿吗？	Do you have free time tonight?
(iii)	Wǒmen kàn diànyǐng zěnmeyàng?	我们看电影怎么样？	What if we see a movie?

C. (i)


qù 年
天 cái
天 qì
明 bai
明 xiǎn
日 qī
日 jì
下个月
understand
date
obvious
talent
diary
weather
next month
last year

(ii)


年 qīng
空 qì
空 tiáo
看 shū
看 jiàn
电 nǎo
电 shì
影 yìn
read
television
computer
young
air
photocopy
air-conditioning
see

Quiz 14 (131–140)

A.

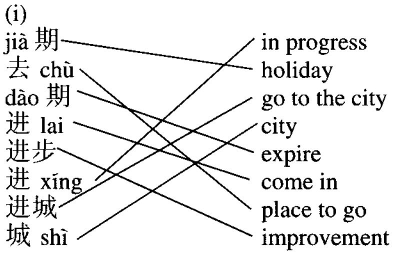
星	每	都	做
期	昨	晚	买
了	去	天	东
进	城	里	西

	Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i)	星期	xīngqī	week
(ii)	昨晚	zuówǎn	last night
(iii)	买东西	mǎi dōngxi	do shopping
(iv)	进城	jìnchéng	go to the city

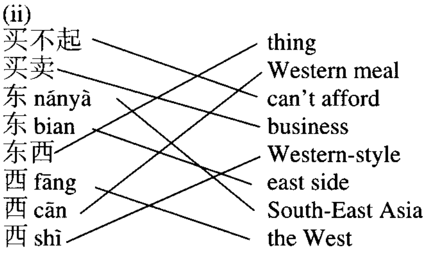
B.

	Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i)	Zuótiān wǒ jìnchéng le.	昨天我进城了。	Yesterday I went to the city.
(ii)	Nǐ jìnchéng zuò shénme le?	你进城做什么了？	What did you do in the city?
(iii)	Wǒ qù mǎi dōngxi le.	我去买东西了。	I did some shopping.
(iii)	Měi Xīngqīliù wǒ dōu jìnchéng.	每星期六我都进城。	Every Saturday I go to the city.

C. (i)


jià 期
去 chù
dāo 期
进 lai
进步
进 xīng
进城
城 shì
in progress
holiday
go to the city
city
expire
come in
place to go
improvement

(ii)


买不起
买卖
东 nányà
东 bian
东西
西 fāng
西 cān
西 shì
thing
Western meal
can't afford
business
Western-style
east side
South-East Asia
the West

Quiz 15 (141–150)

A.

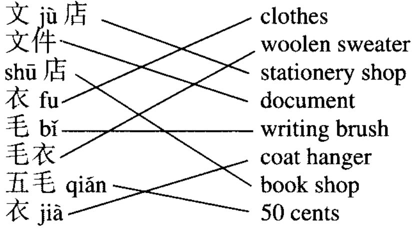
一	百	城	进
钱	商	便	宜
件	店	块	毛
西	东	生	衣

Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i) 一百	yībǎi	one hundred
(ii) 商店	shāngdiān	shop
(iii) 便宜	piānyi	inexpensive
(iv) 毛衣	máoyī	woolen sweater

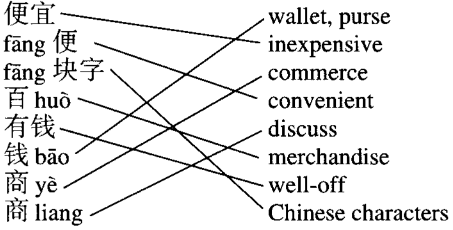
B.

Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i) Chéngli shāngdiān dōngxi guì ma?	城里商店东西贵吗?	Are the shops in the city expensive?
(ii) Zhè jiān máoyī hěn piányi.	这件毛衣很便宜。	This woolen sweater is inexpensive.
(iii) Liǎngbǎi kuài qián yí jiàn, guì ma?	两百块钱一件贵吗?	Is it expensive to pay $200 (for a garment)?
(iii) Wǒ mǎi liǎng jiàn, piányi diǎnr?	我买两件便宜点儿?	Would it be cheaper if I bought two?

C. (i)


文 jù 店
文件
shū 店
衣 fu
毛 bǐ
毛衣
五毛 qián
衣 jià
clothes
woolen sweater
stationery shop
document
writing brush
coat hanger
book shop
50 cents

(ii)


便宜
fāng 便
fāng 块字
百 huò
有钱
钱 bāo
商 yè
商 liang
wallet, purse
inexpensive
commerce
convenient
discuss
merchandise
well-off
Chinese characters

Character Building 3 (101–150)

A. 1. [一] 上 *shàng,* above; 下 *xià,* below; 东 *dōng,* east; 百 *bǎi,* hundred.

2. [丿] 午 *wǔ,* noon; 年 *nián,* year.

3. [乛] 了 *le,* particle; 买 *mǎi,* buy.

4. [乚] 电 *diàn,* electricity; 也 *yě,* also.

5. [亠] 商 *shāng,* merchant; 六 *liù,* six.

6. [八] 半 *bàn,* half; 分 *fēn,* minute.

7. [人] 人 *rén,* people; 今 *jīn,* present, now; 会 *huì,* be able to, would; 个 *ge,* classifier.

8. [亻] 候 *hòu,* wait; 件 *jiàn,* classifier; 便 *biàn,* convenient; 们 *-men,* plural suffix.

9. [口] 吃 *chī,* eat; 哪 *nǎ,* which; 名 *míng,* name; 吗 *ma,* question particle.

10. [宀] 宜 *yí,* appropriate; 字 *zì,* character, script.

11. [广] 床 *chúang,* bed; 店 *diàn,* shop.

12. [辶] 进 *jìn,* enter; 还 *hái/huán,* still/return; 这 *zhè,* this.

13. [土] 在 *zài,* at; 城 *chéng,* city; 块 *kuài,* classifier.

14. [日] 日 *rì,* day; 早 *zǎo,* early; 明 *míng,* bright; 晚 *wǎn,* evening; 昨 *zuó,* yesterday; 星 *xīng,* star; 时 *shí,* time.

15. [月] 月 *yuè,* month; 期 *qī,* period.

16. [钅] 钟 *zhōng,* clock; 钱 *qián,* money.

17. [母] 每 *měi,* every; 母 *mǔ,* mother (formal).

B. 1. [厶] 去 *qù,* go
2. [饣] 饭 *fàn,* meal
3. [大] 天 *tiān,* day
4. [彡] 影 *yǐng,* shadow
5. [止] 步 *bù,* step
6. [毛] 毛 *máo,* hair
7. [穴] 空 *kōng,* empty
8. [衣] 衣 *yī,* clothing
9. [西] 西 *xī,* west
10. [目] 看 *kàn,* see
11. [足] 跑 *pǎo,* run
12. [走] 起 *qǐ,* rise

C. 1. [工] 工 *gōng*, work; 空 *kōng/kòng*, empty/leisure time.
2. [土] 去 *qù*, go; 在 *zài*, at.
3. [木] 床 *chúang*, bed; 样 *yàng*, appearance.
4. [日] 早 *zǎo*, early; 影 *yǐng*, shadow; 星 *xīng*, star.
5. [月] 期 *qī*, period; 明 *míng*, bright.
6. [且] 宜 *yí*, appropriate; 姐 *jiě*, older sister.
7. [乍] 昨 *zuó*, yesterday; 怎 *zěn*, how.

Review 3 (101–150)

Interrogative pronouns
什么时候 *shénme shíhou*, what time.

Nouns
天 *tiān*, day; 日 *rì*, day; 星期 *xīngqī*, week; 月 *yuè*, month; 年 *nián*, year; 钱 *qián*, money; 床 *chuáng*, bed; 城 *chéng*, city; 学期 *xuéqī*, semester; 日期 *rìqī*, date; 商店 *shāngdiàn*, shop; 东西 *dōngxi*, thing; 文件 *wénjiàn*, document; 毛衣 *máoyī*, woolen sweater; 电影 *diànyǐng*, movie; 空儿 *kòngr*, free time; 小时 *xiǎoshí*, hour; 分钟 *fēnzhōng*, minute.

Verbs
吃 *chī*, eat; 买 *mǎi*, buy; 看 *kàn*, see; 去 *qù*, go; 跑步 *pǎobù*, jog; 起床 *qǐchuáng*, get out of bed.

Numbers
半 *bàn*, half; 百 *bǎi*, hundred.

Classifiers
块 *kuài*, piece; 毛 *máo*, ten cents unit; 件 *jiàn*, item.

Adjectives
早 *zǎo*, early; 晚 *wǎn*, late; 好吃 *hǎochī*, delicious; 有钱 *yǒuqián*, rich; 便宜 *piányi*, inexpensive; 空 *kōng*, empty.

Time words (Adverbs)
现在 *xiànzài*, now; 昨天 *zuótiān*, yesterday; 今天 *jīntiān*, today; 明天 *míngtiān*, tomorrow; 上午 *shàngwǔ*, a.m.; 下午 *xiàwǔ*, afternoon; 早上 *zǎoshang*, morning; 晚上 *wǎnshang*, evening; 每天 *měitiān*, every day; 今年 *jīnnián*, this year; 去年 *qùnián*, last year; 明年 *míngnián*, next year; 有时候 *yǒu shíhou*, sometimes; 上 (个) 星期 *shàng (ge) xīngqī*, last week; 这 (个) 星期 *zhè (ge) xīngqī*, this week; 下 (个) 星期 *xià (ge) xīngqī*, next week.

Adverbs
一起 *yìqǐ*, together; 一块儿 *yīkuàir*, together.

Prepositions
在 *zài*, at.

Particles
了 *le*, particle.

Word/Sentence Puzzle 3

ACROSS (left to right)

1. Today is September 25th.
3. What do you do in the evening?
5. We go to the city every Sunday.
8. What time do you get up every day?
10. I'm doing some shopping tomorrow.

DOWN

1. I'm free this evening.
2. Do you go jogging every day?
4. Did you see a movie yesterday?
5. week
6. Things are very cheap.
8. (i) $500 (ii) Where is the shop?
10. How much are woolen sweaters in the city?

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
1	今	天	是	九	月	二	十	五	日	
2	天							百		
3	晚	上	你	做	什	么		块		
4	上									
5	我	们	每	个	星	期	天	都	进	城
6	有				期					里
7	空			昨						的
8		你	每	天	几	点	起	床		毛
9		每		你						衣
10	明	天	我	去	买	东	西			多
11		都		看		西		商		少
12		去		电		很		店		钱
13		跑		影		便		在		
14		步		了		宜		哪		
15		吗		吗				儿		

Quiz 16 (151–160)

A.

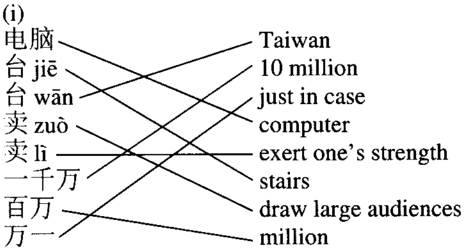
元	太	贵	了
千	卖	怎	买
电	万	么	东
脑	就	样	西

Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i) 太贵了	Tài guì le!	It's too expensive!
(ii) 电脑	diànnǎo	computer
(iii) 怎么样	zěnmeyàng	How is it?
(iv) 买东西	mǎi dōngxi	shopping

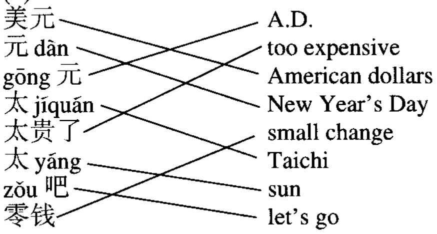
B.

Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i) Zhè tái diànnǎo mài duōshao qián?	这台电脑卖多少钱？	How much is this computer?
(ii) Yīwàn-èrqiān yuán	一万二千元。	It's ¥12,000 (Chinese dollars).
(iii) Tài guì le, jiù yīwàn kuài ba.	太贵了，就一万块吧。	That's too expensive, what about ¥10,000?
(iii) Yīwàn-líng-bābǎi, zěnmeyàng?	一万零八百怎么样？	What about ¥10,800?

C. (i)


电脑
台 jiē
台 wān
卖 zuò
卖 lì
一千万
百万
万一
Taiwan
10 million
just in case
computer
exert one's strength
stairs
draw large audiences
million

(ii)


美元
元 dàn
gōng 元
太 jíquán
太贵了
太 yáng
zǒu 吧
零钱
A.D.
too expensive
American dollars
New Year's Day
small change
Taichi
sun
let's go

Quiz 17 (161–170)

A.

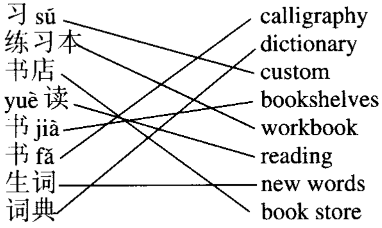
帮	脑	卖	生
助	零	词	典
它	练	学	就
本	习	读	书

Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i) 帮助	bāngzhù	help
(ii) 词典	cídiǎn	dictionary
(iii) 练习	liànxí	practice
(iv) 读书	dúshū	study

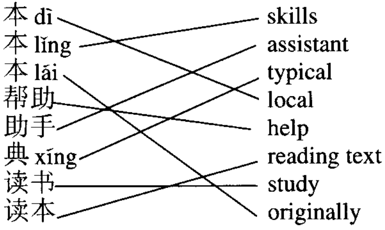
B.

Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i) Zhè shì yì běn shénme shū?	这是一本什么书？	What type of book is this?
(ii) Zhè búshì shū, yě búshì cídiǎn.	这不是书，也不是词典。	This is neither a book nor a dictionary.
(iii) Zhè shì Hànzì dú-xiě liànxíběn.	这是汉字读写练习本。	This is a character workbook.
(iii) Tā bāngzhù wǒ xué Hànzì.	它帮助我学汉字。	It helps me to learn characters.

C. (i)


习 sú
练习本
书店
yuè 读
书 jià
书 fǎ
生词
词典
calligraphy
dictionary
custom
bookshelves
workbook
reading
new words
book store

(ii)


本 dì
本 lǐng
本 lái
帮助
助手
典 xíng
读书
读本
skills
assistant
typical
local
help
reading text
study
originally

Quiz 18 (171–180)

A.

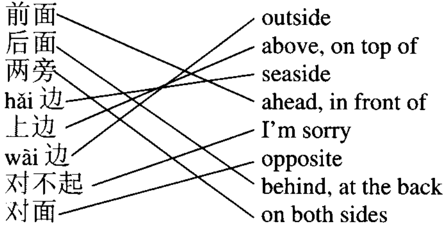
院	前	对	父
旁	边	母	面
公	后	校	园
西	家	生	学

Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i) 前边	qiánbian	in front of, ahead
(ii) 旁边	pángbiān	next to, adjacent
(iii) 母校	mǔxiào	Alma Mater
(iv) 校园	xiàoyuán	campus

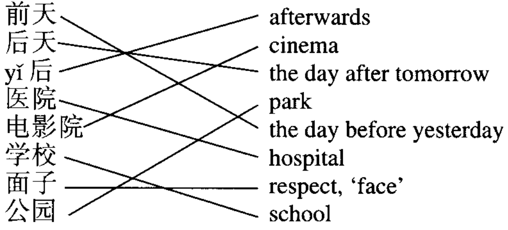
B.

Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i) Qiǎnmian shì yīyuàn.	前面是医院。	There's a hospital ahead.
(ii) Xuēxiào hòumian shì gōngyuán.	学校后面是公园。	At the back of the school is a park.
(iii) Diànyǐngyuàn zài nǎr?	电影院在哪儿?	Where's the cinema?
(iii) Diànyǐngyuàn zài xuéxiào duìmiàn.	电影院在学校对面。	The cinema is opposite the school.

C. (i)


前面
后面
两旁
hǎi 边
上边
wài 边
对不起
对面
outside
above, on top of
seaside
ahead, in front of
I'm sorry
opposite
behind, at the back
on both sides

(ii)


前天
后天
yǐ 后
医院
电影院
学校
面子
公园
afterwards
cinema
the day after tomorrow
park
the day before yesterday
hospital
respect, 'face'
school

Quiz 19 (181–190)

A.

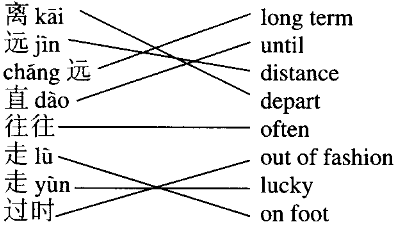
两	条	街	离
习	就	一	远
边	过	直	再
往	前	走	见

Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i) 两条街	liǎng tiáo jiē	two streets
(ii) 一直走	yìzhí zǒu	go straight ahead
(iii) 再见	zàijiàn	goodbye
(iv) 往前走	wǎng qián zǒu	go straight ahead

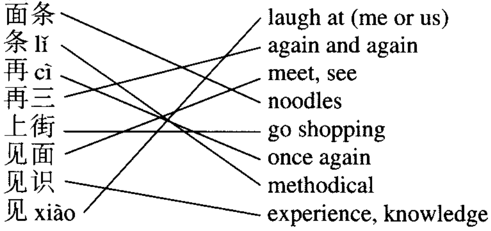
B.

Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i) Qǐngwèn, qù yīyuàn zěnme zǒu?	请问，去医院怎么走?	Excuse me, how do you get to the hospital?
(ii) Yìzhí wǎng qián zǒu.	一直往前走。	Go straight from here.
(iii) Lí zhèr yuǎn ma?	离这儿远吗?	Is it far from here?
(iv) Bù yuǎn, guò liǎng tiáo jiē jiù shì.	不远，过两条街就是。	It's not far, cross two streets and you are there.

C. (i)


离 kāi
远 jìn
cháng 远
直 dào
往往
走 lù
走 yùn
过时
long term
until
distance
depart
often
out of fashion
lucky
on foot

(ii)


面条
条 lǐ
再 cì
再三
上街
见面
见识
见 xiào
laugh at (me or us)
again and again
meet, see
noodles
go shopping
once again
methodical
experience, knowledge

Quiz 20 (191–200)

A.

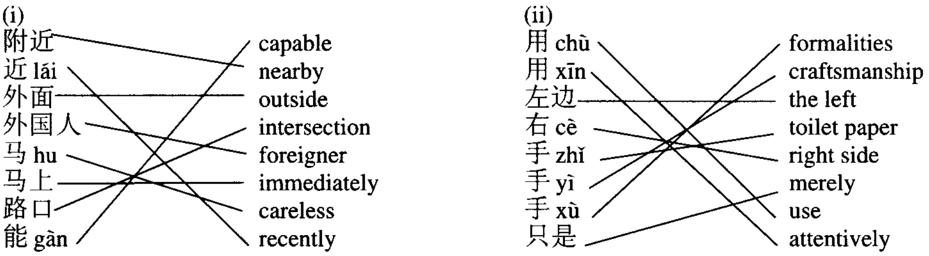
能	过	右	手
过	左	手	里
近	用	进	马
远	外	面	路

Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i) 右手	yòushǒu	right hand
(ii) 左手	zuǒshǒu	left hand
(iii) 马路	mǎlù	road
(iv) 外面	wàimian	outside

B.

Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i) Xuéxiào lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?	学校离这儿远不远?	Is the school far from here?
(ii) Hěn jìn, guòle mǎlù jiù shì.	很近，过了马路就是。	It's very near, after you cross the road, you're there.
(iii) Nǐ néng yòng zuǒshǒu xiězì ma?	你能用左手写字吗?	Can you write with your left hand?
(iv) Bù néng, wǒ zhǐ néng yòng yòushǒu.	不能，我只能用右手。	No, I can't. I can only write with my right hand.

C.


(i)
附近
近 lāi
外面
外国人
马 hu
马上
路口
能 gān
capable
nearby
outside
intersection
foreigner
immediately
careless
recently
(ii)
用 chū
用 xīn
左边
右 cè
手 zhǐ
手 yì
手 xù
只是
formalities
craftsmanship
the left
toilet paper
right side
merely
use
attentively

Character Building 4 (151–200)

A. 1. [一] 再 *zài,* again; 万 *wàn,* ten thousand; 面 *miàn,* surface.

2. [丿] 千 *qiān,* thousand; 后 *hòu,* behind.

3. [乛] 习 *xí,* practice; 书 *shū,* book.

4. [亠] 离 *lí,* distance from; 就 *jiù,* then.

5. [讠] 读 *dú,* read; 词 *cí,* word.

6. [二] 二 *èr,* two; 元 *yuán,* dollar.

7. [十] 直 *zhí,* straight; 卖 *mài,* sell.

8. [八] 典 *diǎn,* standard; 前 *qián,* in front of; 公 *gōng,* public.

9. [厶] 能 *néng,* can; 去 *qù,* go.

10. [又] 对 *duì,* correct; 友 *yǒu,* friend.

11. [力] 助 *zhù,* assistance; 男 *nán,* male.

12. [宀] 它 *tā,* it; 字 *zì,* character, script.

13. [辶] 远 *yuǎn,* far; 过 *guò,* pass; 边 *biān,* side; 近 *jìn,* near.

14. [工] 工 *gōng,* work; 左 *zuǒ,* the left.

15. [大] 太 *tài,* extreme; 天 *tiān,* day.

16. [口] 台 *tái,* platform; 右 *yòu,* the right.

17. [囗] 园 *yuán,* garden; 国 *guó,* country.

18. [巾] 帮 *bāng,* help; 师 *shī,* teacher.

19. [彳] 往 *wǎng,* toward; 街 *jiē,* street.

20. [木] 本 *běn,* root; 校 *xiào,* school.

21. [月] 脑 *nǎo,* brain; 期 *qī,* period.

22. [走] 走 *zǒu,* walk; 起 *qǐ,* rise.

23. [足] 路 *lù,* road; 跑 *pǎo,* run.

B. 1. [卜] 外 *wài,* outside
2. [阝] 院 *yuàn,* courtyard
3. [夂] 条 *tiáo,* classifier
4. [纟] 练 *liàn,* practice
5. [马] 马 *mǎ,* horse
6. [方] 旁 *páng,* next to
7. [手] 手 *shǒu,* hand
8. [用] 用 *yòng,* use
9. [雨] 雨 *yǔ,* rain

C. 1. [卖] 卖 *mài,* sell; 读 *dú,* read
2. [寸] 对 *duì,* correct; 过 *guò,* pass
3. [力] 边 *biān,* side; 助 *zhù,* assist
4. [月] 脑 *nǎo,* brain; 明 *míng,* bright
5. [巴] 吧 *ba,* suggestion particle; 爸 *bà,* father
6. [口] 右 *yòu,* the right; 名 *míng,* name

REVIEW 4 (151–200)

Pronouns
它 *tā,* it; 它们 *tāmen,* they.

Nouns
脑 *nǎo,* brain; 电脑 *diànnǎo,* computer; 零钱 *língqián,* small change; 读本 *dúběn,* reading text; 练习本 *liànxíběn,* workbook; 书 *shū,* book; 书店 *shūdiàn,* book store; 词 *cí,* word; 生词 *shēngcí,* new words; 词典 *cídiǎn,* dictionary; 帮手 *bāngshǒu,* assistant; 助手 *zhùshǒu,* assistant; 面子 *miànzi,* face (respect); 医院 *yīyuàn,* hospital; 电影院 *diànyǐngyuàn,* cinema; 学校 *xuéxiào,* school; 校园 *xiàoyuán,* campus; 母校 *mǔxiào,* Alma Mater; 公里 *gōnglǐ,* kilometer; 公园 *gōngyuán,* park; 远近 *yuǎnjìn,* distance; 面条 *miàntiáo,* noodles; 街 *jiē,* street; 见识 *jiànshi,* experience, knowledge; 外国人 *wàiguórén,* foreigner; 外人 *wàirén,* stranger; 路 *lù,* road; 马路 *mǎlù,* sealed road; 路口 *lùkǒu,* turning, intersection; 手 *shǒu,* hand.

Verbs
卖 *mài,* sell; 读 *dú,* read; 读书 *dúshū,* study; 练 *liàn,* practice; 练习 *liànxí,* practice; 学习 *xuéxí,* study; 帮 *bāng,* help; 帮助 *bāngzhù,* help; 帮忙 *bāngmáng,* help; 住院 *zhùyuàn,* be hospitalized; 走 *zǒu,* walk; 过 *guò,* pass; 上街 *shàngjiē,* go shopping; 见 *jiàn,* see; 见面 *jiànmiàn,* see; 用 *yòng,* use.

Auxiliary verbs
能 *néng,* possible.

Numbers
零 *líng,* zero; 千 *qiān,* thousand; 万 *wàn,* ten thousand;
百万 *bǎiwàn,* million; 一千万 *yìqiānwàn,* ten million.

Classifiers
台 *tái,* (for equipment); 元 *yuán* (for dollar unit);
件 *jiàn* (for clothing); 条 *tiáo* (for long and slender objects).

Adjectives
远 *yuǎn,* far; 直 *zhí,* straight; 近 *jìn,* near;
对 *duì,* correct; 过时 *guòshí,* be out of fashion.

Location words
前 *qián,* in front of; 后 *hòu,* behind;
前面 *qiánmian,* in front of; 后面 *hòumian,* behind;
前边 *qiánbian,* in front of; 两旁 *liǎngpáng,* on both sides;
旁边 *pángbiān,* next to; 上边 *shàngbian,* above;
外边 *wàibian,* outside; 对面 *duìmiàn,* opposite;
外面 *wàimian,* outside; 路上 *lùshang,* on the road or journey; 左 *zuǒ,* the left; 左边 *zuǒbian,* left hand side;
右 *yòu,* the right; 右边 *yòubian,* right hand side.

Time words (Adverbs)
前天 *qiántiān,* the day before yesterday; 后天 *hòutiān,* the day after tomorrow; 以后 *yǐhòu,* afterwards.

Adverbs
千万 *qiānwàn,* be sure to; 就 *jiù,* then; 一直 *yìzhí,* straight; 直到 *zhídào,* until; 往往 *wǎngwǎng,* often; 再 *zài,* again;
再三 *zàisān,* repeatedly; 马上 *mǎshàng,* immediately; 只 *zhǐ,* only; 只是 *zhǐshì,* merely.

Conjunction
不过 *búguò,* but, however.

Prepositions
离 *lí,* distance from.

Particles
吧 *ba,* (for suggestion).

Word/Sentence Puzzle 4

ACROSS (left to right)
1. She can't use a computer.
4. There's a big shop in front of my house.
7. (i) left hand side
7. (ii) Are you going to school today?
8. assistant
9. outside
10. dictionary
12. Is the cinema far from here?
14. eat noodles

DOWN
2. I can write with my left hand.
4. next to the hospital
5. I'm asking you for a favor.
6. She has a dog in her house
7. Where are we meeting tomorrow?
9. I'm sorry.
10. The shop is outside the school (campus).
11. bookshop

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
1						她	不	会	用	电	脑
2						家					
3						里					书
4		我	家	前	面	有	一	个	大	商	店
5		能				狗				店	
6		用			请		明			在	
7		左	边		你	今	天	去	学	校	吗
8	助	手			帮		我			园	
9		写			忙		们			外	面
10		字	典				在			边	
11				医			哪		对		
12		电	影	院	离	这	儿	远	不	远	
13				旁			见		起		
14				边		吃	面	条			

Quiz 21 (201–210)

A.

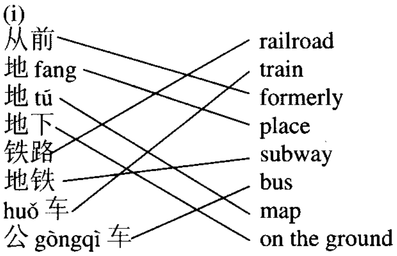
怎	么	走	里
中	到	下	车
国	坐	地	铁
城	住	从	上

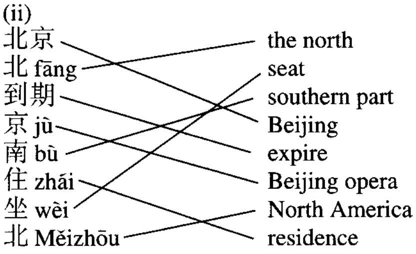
Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i) 怎么走	zěnme zǒu	How do you get to . . .?
(ii) 中国城	Zhōngguóchéng	Chinatown
(iii) 下车	xiàchē	get off from the bus/train
(iv) 坐地铁	zuò dìtiě	take the subway

B.

Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i) Wǒ zhù zài chéngli.	我住在城里。	I live in the city.
(ii) Dào nǐ jiā zěnme zǒu?	到你家怎么走?	How do I get to your house?
(iii) Nǐ cóng zhèr zuò dìtiě.	你从这儿坐地铁。	You take the subway from here.
(iv) Dào Zhōngguóchéng xiàchē jiù shì.	到中国城下车就是。	Get off at Chinatown (station) and you're there.

C.


(i)
从前
地 fang
地 tú
地下
铁路
地铁
huǒ 车
公 gōngqì 车
railroad
train
formerly
place
subway
bus
map
on the ground


(ii)
北京
北 fāng
到期
京 jù
南 bù
住 zhāi
坐 wèi
北 Měizhōu
the north
seat
southern part
Beijing
expire
Beijing opera
North America
residence

Quiz 22 (211–220)

A.

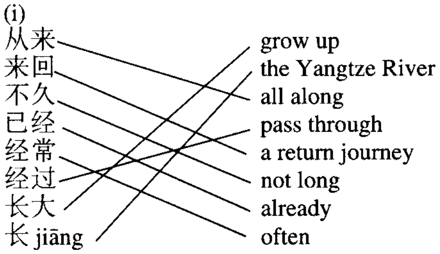
多	过	时	间
久	北	已	经
还	来	京	南
冷	喜	欢	长

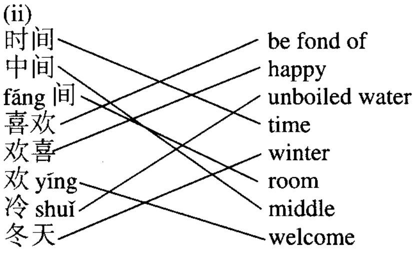
Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i) 多久	duō jiǔ	how long? (time)
(ii) 时间	shíjiān	time
(iii) 已经	yǐjīng	already
(iv) 喜欢	xǐhuan	be fond of

B.

Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i) Nǐ lái Běijīng duō jiǔ le?	你来北京多久了?	How long have you been in Beijing?
(ii) Yǐjīng hěn cháng shíjiān le.	已经很长时间了。	(I've) already been here for quite a long time.
(iii) Nǐ xǐhuan Běǰīng ma?	你喜欢北京吗?	Do you like Beijing?
(iv) Hái hǎo, dōngtiān lěng yìdiǎnr.	还好，冬天冷一点儿。	It's okay, (but) it's a bit cold in winter.

C.


(i)
从来
来回
不久
已经
经常
经过
长大
长 jiāng
grow up
the Yangtze River
all along
pass through
a return journey
not long
already
often


(ii)
时间
中间
fāng 间
喜欢
欢喜
欢 yíng
冷 shuǐ
冬天
be fond of
happy
unboiled water
time
winter
room
middle
welcome

Quiz 23 (221–230)

A.

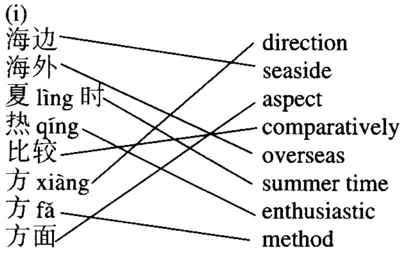
游	多	下	雨
泳	比	较	过
池	热	地	万
夏	常	方	海

Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i) 游泳池	yóuyǒngchí	swimming pool
(ii) 下雨	xiàyǔ	It's raining.
(iii) 比较	bǐjiào	rather
(iv) 地方	dìfang	place

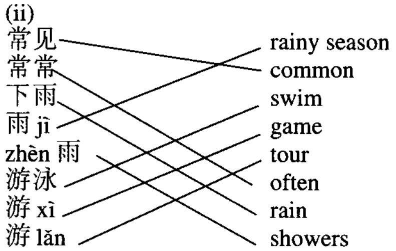
B.

	Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i)	Shànghǎi xiàtiān rè bu rè?	上海夏天热不热？	Is Shanghai hot in summer?
(ii)	Bǐjiào rè, búguò cháng xiàyǔ.	比较热，不过常下雨。	(It's) rather hot, but it rains often.
(iii)	Shànghǎi yóuyǒngchí duō bu duō?	上海游泳池多不多？	Are there many swimming pools in Shanghai?
(iv)	Bùshǎo, hěnduō dìfang dōu yǒu.	不少，很多地方都有。	Quite a few, many places have them.

C. (i)


海边
海外
夏 lìng 时
热 qíng
比较
方 xiàng
方 fǎ
方面
direction
seaside
aspect
comparatively
overseas
summer time
enthusiastic
method

(ii)


常见
常常
下雨
雨 jì
zhèn 雨
游泳
游 xì
游 lǎn
rainy season
common
swim
game
tour
often
rain
showers

Quiz 24 (231–240)

A.

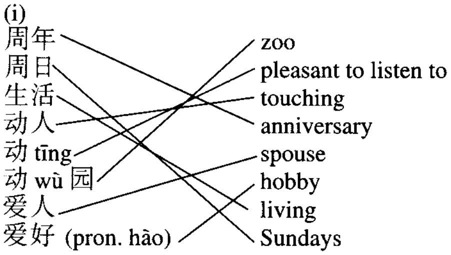
欢	活	喜	呢
运	动	周	末
步	睡	觉	跑
和	泳	游	爱

	Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i)	活动	huódòng	activity
(ii)	运动	yùndòng	sport
(iii)	周末	zhōumò	weekend
(iv)	睡觉	shuìjiào	sleep

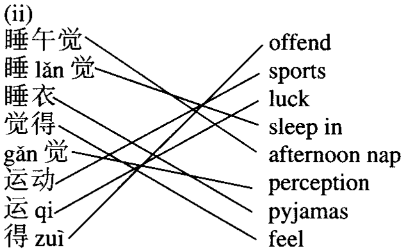
B.

	Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i)	Zhōumò nǐ yǒu shénme huódòng?	周末你有什么活动？	What do you do on the weekend?
(ii)	Zhōumò wǒ ài shuì lǎnjiào.	周末我爱睡懒觉。	During the weekend, I love to sleep in.
(iii)	Nǐ xǐhuan shénme yùndòng?	你喜欢什么运动？	What sports do you like?
(iv)	Wǒ xǐhuan yóuyǒng hé pǎobù.	我喜欢游泳和跑步。	I like swimming and jogging.

C. (i)


周年
周日
生活
动人
动 tīng
动 wù 园
爱人
爱好 (pron. hào)
zoo
pleasant to listen to
touching
anniversary
spouse
hobby
living
Sundays

(ii)


睡午觉
睡 lǎn 觉
睡衣
觉得
gǎn 觉
运动
运 qi
得 zuì
offend
sports
luck
sleep in
afternoon nap
perception
pyjamas
feel

Quiz 25 (241–250)

A.

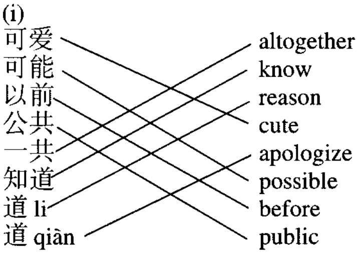
在	儿	哪	火
共	公	汽	车
知	道	或	站
可	以	者	也

	Word or phrase	Pinyin	English meaning
(i)	火车站	huǒchēzhàn	train station
(ii)	知道	zhīdao	be aware of something
(iii)	或者	huòzhě	or, perhaps
(iv)	可以	kěyǐ	can, possible

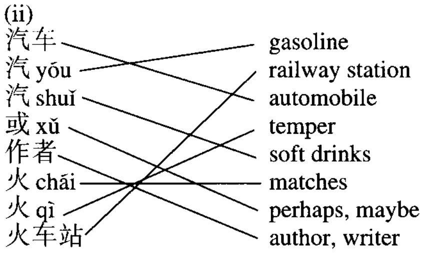
B.

	Pinyin	Characters	Translation
(i)	Dào Zhōngguó Fàndiàn zěnme zǒu?	到中国饭店怎么走？	How to get to the China Hotel?
(ii)	Kěyǐ zuò gōnggòngqìchē qù.	可以坐公共汽车去。	(You) can take the bus.
(iii)	Huòzhě zuò huǒchē yě kěyǐ.	或者坐火车也可以。	Alternatively, you can take the train.
(iv)	Wǒ zhīdao chēzhàn zài nǎr.	我知道车站在哪儿。	I know where the bus stop/train station is.

C. (i)


可爱
可能
以前
公共
一共
知道
道 li
道 qiàn
altogether
know
reason
cute
apologize
possible
before
public

(ii)


汽车
汽 yóu
汽 shuǐ
或 xǔ
作者
火 chái
火 qì
火车站
gasoline
railway station
automobile
temper
soft drinks
matches
perhaps, maybe
author, writer

Character Building 5 (201–250)

A. 1. [一] 来 *lái*, come; 万 *wàn*, ten thousand; 面 *miàn*, face.
2. [丨] 北 *běi*, north.
3. [丿] 久 *jiǔ*, a long time; 长 *cháng/zhǎng*, long/grow.
4. [亠] 京 *jīng*, capital; 就 *jiù*, then.
5. [十] 南 *nán*, south; 直 *zhí*, straight.
6. [八] 共 *gòng*, together; 典 *diǎn*, standard; 前 *qián*, in front of; 公 *gōng*, public.
7. [人] 从 *cóng*, from; 以 *yǐ*, with.
8. [亻] 住 *zhù*, live, stay; 作 *zuò*, work.
9. [又] 欢 *huān*, happy; 对 *duì*, correct, opposite.
10. [力] 动 *dòng* move; 助 *zhù*, help.
11. [氵] 游 *yóu*, swim; 泳 *yǒng*, style of swimming; 池 *chí*, pool, pond; 海 *hǎi*, sea; 活 *huó*, live, living; 汽 *qì*, air.
12. [门] 间 *jiān*, space; 问 *wèn*, ask.
13. [辶] 运 *yùn*, transport; 道 *dào*, road.
14. [土] 坐 *zuò*, sit; 地 *dì*, earth.
15. [口] 呢 *ne*, particle; 和 *hé*, and; 可 *kě*, possible.
16. [巾] 常 *cháng*, often; 帮 *bāng*, help.
17. [夂] 冬 *dōng*, winter; 夏 *xià*, summer.
18. [纟] 经 *jīng*, classic; 练 *liàn*, practice.
19. [灬] 热 *rè*, hot; 点 *diǎn*, dot.
20. [方] 方 *fāng*, direction; 旁 *páng*, next to.
21. [木] 末 *mò*, end; 本 *běn*, base, classifier.
22. [车] 车 *chē*, vehicle; 较 *jiào*, rather, compare.
23. [戈] 或 *huò*, or, perhaps; 我 *wǒ*, I, me.
24. [见] 觉 *jué/jiào*, feel/sleep; 见 *jiàn*, see.

B. 1. [冫] 冷 *lěng*, cold
2. [冂] 周 *zhōu*, week
3. [刂] 到 *dào*, arrive
4. [士] 喜 *xǐ*, be fond of
5. [己] 已 *yǐ*, already
6. [火] 火 *huǒ*, fire
7. [曰] 者 *zhě*, -er, -ist
8. [爪] 爱 *ài*, love
9. [立] 站 *zhàn*, stand; station
10. [目] 睡 *shuì*, sleep
11. [矢] 知 *zhī*, know
12. [雨] 雨 *yǔ*, rain

C. 1. [也] 池 *chí*, pool, pond; 地 *dì*, earth.
2. [匕] 老 *lǎo*, old; 北 *běi*, north.
3. [日] 间 *jiān*, space; 晚 *wǎn*, night.
4. [友] 友 *yǒu*, friend; 爱 *ài*, love.

Review 5 (201–250)

Nouns
地方 *dìfang*, place; 地下 *dìxià*, ground; 地铁 *dìtiě*, subway; 铁路 *tiělù*, railway; 车 *chē*, vehicle; 汽车 *qìchē*, vehicle; 火车 *huǒchē*, train; 火车站 *huǒchēzhàn*, train station; 北方 *běifāng*, north (of a country); 南方 *nánfāng*, south (of a country); 时间 *shíjiān*, time; 冬天 *dōngtiān*, winter; 海边 *hǎibian*, seaside; 海外 *hǎiwài*, overseas; 夏天 *xiàtiān*, summer; 泳道 *yǒngdào*, lane (in a swimming pool); 游泳池 *yóuyǒngchí*, swimming pool; 方面 *fāngmiàn*, aspect; 周 *zhōu*, week; 周日 *zhōurì*, Sunday; 周末 *zhōumò*, weekend; 周年 *zhōunián*, anniversary; 末期 *mòqī*, end of a period; 活动 *huódòng*, activity; 生活 *shēnghuó*, life; 爱好 *àihào*, hobby; 爱人 *àiren*, spouse (used in China only); 午睡 *wǔshuì*, afternoon nap; 运动 *yùndòng*, sport; 汽油 *qìyóu*, gasoline; 作者 *zuòzhě*, author, writer; 读者 *dúzhě*, reader; 站 *zhàn*, station; 道路 *dàolù*, road; 知识 *zhīshi*, knowledge.

Proper nouns
北京 *Běijīng,* Beijing; 南京 *Nánjīng,* Nanjing; 东京 *Dōngjīng,* Tokyo; 上海 *Shânghǎi,* Shanghai.

Verbs
住 *zhû,* live, stay; 到 *dâo,* arrive; 到期 *dâoqī,* expire;
坐 *zuô,* sit, ride on (bus, train, ferry, plane); 来 *lái,* come;
经过 *jīngguô,* pass through; 长大 *zhǎngdâ,* grow up;
喜爱 *xǐ'âi,* be fond of; 喜欢 *xǐhuan,* be fond of;
下雨 *xiâyǔ,* rain; 游泳 *yóuyǒng,* swim; 活 *huó,* live, alive;
爱 *âi,* love; 睡觉 *shuǐjiâo,* sleep; 觉得 *juéde,* feel;
知道 *zhīdao,* know.

Auxiliary verbs
可以 *kěyǐ,* can.

Adjectives
欢喜 *huānxǐ,* happy; 热 *rê,* hot; 常见 *chángjiân,* common; 动人 *dòngrén,* touching; 可爱 *kě'*âi cute;
到家 *dâojiā,* excellent; 公共 *gōnggông,* public;
公用 *gōngyông,* public.

Location words
南边 *nánbian,* southern side; 中间 *zhōngjiān,* middle;
前面 *qiánmian,* ahead; 后面 *hôumian,* behind.

Time words
久 *jiǔ,* long time; 不久 *bûjiǔ,* not a very long time;
以前 *yǐqián,* formerly, before; 以后 *yǐhôu,* afterwards.

Adverbs
从前 *cóngqián,* formerly; 从来 *cónglái,* all along;
已经 *yǐjīng,* already; 经常 *jīngcháng,* often;
常常 *chángcháng,* often; 比较 *bǐjiâo,* comparatively.

Conjunction
和 *hé,* and; 以便 *yǐbiân,* so as to; 或 *huô,* or;
或者 *huôzhě,* or/maybe.

Prepositions
从 *cóng,* from; 从…到 *cóng ... dâo,* from ... to.

Particles
呢 *ne,* particle.

Word/Sentence Puzzle 5

ACROSS (left to right)

2. I think my Chinese has improved.
6. The train is running on railway tracks.
7. bus stop.
8. reader (person)
9. (i) There are too many things to do on the weekend.
9. (ii) raining
11. all along
13. This cat is very cute

DOWN

1. first anniversary
2. I often go swimming.
3. (i) sleep
3. (ii) live up to 101
4. train
5. My house is not too far from the station
7. (i) the middle
7. (ii) subway
9. You can come either in the morning or in the afternoon.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
1			睡								
2		我	觉	得	我	的	中	文	进	步	了
3		常			家		间				
4		去			离				你		
5		游			火		地		早		
6		泳		火	车	在	铁	路	上	走	
7			汽	车	站				或		
8	一				不			读	者		
9	周	末	活	动	太	多	了		下	雨	
10	年		到		远				午		
11			一					从	来		
12			百						都		
13			零		这	只	猫	很	可	爱	
14			一						以		